Appendix to Precalculus

Version $4 - \epsilon$

by

Carl Stitz, Ph.D.
Lakeland Community College

Jeff Zeager, Ph.D.
Lorain County Community College

$\sigma o \phi \acute{\iota} \alpha$

Sophia Publishing
CHENNAI
https://sophia-publishing.github.io/

Table of Contents

Preface

Thank you for your interest in our book, but more importantly, thank you for taking the time to read the Preface. I always read the Prefaces of the textbooks which I use in my classes because I believe it is in the Preface where I begin to understand the authors - who they are, what their motivation for writing the book was, and what they hope the reader will get out of reading the text. Pedagogical issues such as content organization and how professors and students should best use a book can usually be gleaned out of its Table of Contents, but the reasons behind the choices authors make should be shared in the Preface. Also, I feel that the Preface of a textbook should demonstrate the authors' love of their discipline and passion for teaching, so that I come away believing that they really want to help students and not just make money. Thus, I thank my fellow Preface-readers again for giving me the opportunity to share with you the need and vision which guided the creation of this book and passion which both Carl and I hold for Mathematics and the teaching of it.

Carl and I are natives of Northeast Ohio. We met in graduate school at Kent State University in 1997. I finished my Ph.D in Pure Mathematics in August 1998 and started teaching at Lorain County Community College in Elyria, Ohio just two days after graduation. Carl earned his Ph.D in Pure Mathematics in August 2000 and started teaching at Lakeland Community College in Kirtland, Ohio that same month. Our schools are fairly similar in size and mission and each serves a similar population of students. The students range in age from about 16 (Ohio has a Post-Secondary Enrollment Option program which allows high school students to take college courses for free while still in high school.) to over 65. Many of the "non-traditional" students are returning to school in order to change careers. A majority of the students at both schools receive some sort of financial aid, be it scholarships from the schools' foundations, state-funded grants or federal financial aid like student loans, and many of them have lives busied by family and job demands. Some will be taking their Associate degrees and entering (or re-entering) the workforce while others will be continuing on to a four-year college or university. Despite their many differences, our students share one common attribute: they do not want to spend $200 on a College Algebra book.

The challenge of reducing the cost of textbooks is one that many states, including Ohio, are taking quite seriously. Indeed, state-level leaders have started to work with faculty from several of the colleges and universities in Ohio and with the major publishers as well. That process will take considerable time so Carl and I came up with a plan of our own. We decided that the best way to help our students right now was to write our own College Algebra book and give it away electronically for free. We were granted sabbaticals from our respective institutions for the Spring semester of 2009 and actually began writing the textbook on December 16, 2008. Using an open-source text editor called TexNicCenter and an open-source distribution of LaTeX called MikTex 2.7, Carl and I wrote and edited all of the text, exercises and answers and created all of the graphs (using Metapost within LaTeX) for Version $0.\overline{9}$ in about eight months. (We choose to create a text in only black and white to keep printing costs to a minimum for those students who prefer a printed edition. This somewhat Spartan page layout stands in sharp relief to the explosion of colors found in most other College Algebra texts, but neither Carl nor I believe the four-color print adds anything of value.) I used the book in three sections of College Algebra at Lorain County Community College in the Fall of 2009 and Carl's colleague, Dr. Bill Previts, taught a section of College Algebra at Lakeland with the book that semester as well. Students had the option of downloading the book as a .pdf file from our website www.stitz-zeager.com[1] or buying a low-cost printed version from our colleges' respective bookstores. (By

[1] http://www.stitz-zeager.com

giving this book away for free electronically, we end the cycle of new editions appearing every 18 months to curtail the used book market.) During Thanksgiving break in November 2009, many additional exercises written by Dr. Previts were added and the typographical errors found by our students and others were corrected. On December 10, 2009, Version $\sqrt{2}$ was released. The book remains free for download at our website and by using Lulu.com[2] as an on-demand printing service, our bookstores are now able to provide a printed edition for just under $19. Neither Carl nor I have, or will ever, receive any royalties from the printed editions. As a contribution back to the open-source community, all of the LaTeX files used to compile the book are available for free under a Creative Commons License on our website as well. That way, anyone who would like to rearrange or edit the content for their classes can do so as long as it remains free.

The only disadvantage to not working for a publisher is that we don't have a paid editorial staff. What we have instead, beyond ourselves, is friends, colleagues and unknown people in the open-source community who alert us to errors they find as they read the textbook. What we gain in not having to report to a publisher so dramatically outweighs the lack of the paid staff that we have turned down every offer to publish our book. (As of the writing of this Preface, we've had three offers.) By maintaining this book by ourselves, Carl and I retain all creative control and keep the book our own. We control the organization, depth and rigor of the content which means we can resist the pressure to diminish the rigor and homogenize the content so as to appeal to a mass market. A casual glance through the Table of Contents of most of the major publishers' College Algebra books reveals nearly isomorphic content in both order and depth. Our Table of Contents shows a different approach, one that might be labeled "Functions First." To truly use The Rule of Four, that is, in order to discuss each new concept algebraically, graphically, numerically and verbally, it seems completely obvious to us that one would need to introduce functions first. (Take a moment and compare our ordering to the classic "equations first, then the Cartesian Plane and THEN functions" approach seen in most of

[2] http://www.lulu.com/content/paperback-book/college-algebra/7513097

the major players.) We then introduce a class of functions and discuss the equations, inequalities (with a heavy emphasis on sign diagrams) and applications which involve functions in that class. The material is presented at a level that definitely prepares a student for Calculus while giving them relevant Mathematics which can be used in other classes as well. Graphing calculators are used sparingly and only as a tool to enhance the Mathematics, not to replace it. The answers to nearly all of the computational homework exercises are given in the text and we have gone to great lengths to write some very thought provoking discussion questions whose answers are not given. One will notice that our exercise sets are much shorter than the traditional sets of nearly 100 “drill and kill” questions which build skill devoid of understanding. Our experience has been that students can do about 15-20 homework exercises a night so we very carefully chose smaller sets of questions which cover all of the necessary skills and get the students thinking more deeply about the Mathematics involved.

Critics of the Open Educational Resource movement might quip that “open-source is where bad content goes to die,” to which I say this: take a serious look at what we offer our students. Look through a few sections to see if what we’ve written is bad content in your opinion. I see this open-source book not as something which is “free and worth every penny”, but rather, as a high quality alternative to the business as usual of the textbook industry and I hope that you agree. If you have any comments, questions or concerns please feel free to contact me at jeff@stitz-zeager.com or Carl at carl@stitz-zeager.com.

Jeff Zeager
Lorain County Community College
January 25, 2010

Appendix A

Algebra Review

One purpose of this Algebra Review Appendix is to support a "co-requisite" approach to teaching College Algebra or Precalculus.[1] Our goal is to provide instructors with supplemental material linked to the main textbook that can be used to support students who have minor gaps in their pre-college mathematical backgrounds. To that end, we have written a collection of somewhat independent sections designed to review the concepts, skills and vocabulary that we believe are prerequisite to a rigorous, college-level Precalculus course. This review is not designed to teach the material to students who have never seen it before so the presentation is more succinct and the exercise sets are shorter than those usually found in an Intermediate Algebra or high school Algebra II text. Some of this material (like adding fractions and plotting points) is used throughout the text but, where appropriate, we have referenced specific sections of the main body of the Precalculus text in an effort to assist faculty who would like to assign the Appendix as "just in time" review reading to their students. An outline of the chapter with short descriptions of each section is given below:

---

[1]Please read The New Preface for details as to why we decided to organize our book in order to support this pedagogy. Also, to us Precalculus = College Algebra + College Trigonometry without the formalization of limits. This distinction is not universally agreed upon so we felt the need to point it out.

Section A.1 (Basic Set Theory and Interval Notation) contains a brief summary of the set theory terminology used throughout the text including sets of real numbers and interval notation.

Section A.2 (Real Number Arithmetic) lists the properties of real number arithmetic.[2]

Section A.3 (The Cartesian Plane) discusses the basic notions of plotting points in the plane, reflections and symmetry. We then develop the Distance Formula and the Midpoint Formula.

Section A.4 (Linear Equations and Inequalities) focuses on solving linear equations and linear inequalities from a strictly algebraic perspective. The geometry of graphing lines in the plane is deferred until Section A.5 (Graphing Lines).

Section A.5 (Graphing Lines) starts by defining the slope of a line between two points and then develops the point-slope form and the slope-intercept form of equations for lines. Horizontal and vertical lines are discussed as are parallel and perpendicular lines. This material is required for Section **??** (Constant and Linear Functions).

Section A.6 (Systems of Two Linear Equations in Two Unknowns) is a review of the basic terminology and techniques related to solving systems of two linear equations that each have the same two variables in them. We start Chapter **??** (Systems of Equations and Matrices) assuming students know these techniques.

Section A.7 (Absolute Value Equations and Inequalities) begins with a definition of absolute value as a distance. Fundamental properties of absolute value are listed and then basic equations and inequalities involving absolute value are solved using the 'distance definition' and those properties. Absolute value is revisited in much greater depth in Section **??** (Absolute Value Functions).

Section A.8 (Polynomial Arithmetic) covers the addition, subtraction, multiplication and division of polynomials as well as the vocabulary which is

[2]You know, the stuff students mess up all of the time like fractions and negative signs. The collection is close to exhaustive and is definitely exhausting!

used extensively when the graphs of polynomials are studied in Chapter **??** (Polynomials).

Section A.9 (Basic Factoring Techniques) contains pretty much what it says: basic factoring techniques and how to solve equations using those techniques along with the Zero Product Property of Real Numbers.

Section A.10 (Quadratic Equations) discusses solving quadratic equations using the technique of 'completing the square' and by using the Quadratic Formula. Equations that are 'quadratic in form' are also discussed. This material is revisited in Section **??** (Quadratic Functions).

Section A.11 (Complex Numbers) covers the basic arithmetic of complex numbers and the solving of quadratic equations with complex solutions. It's required for Section **??** (Complex Zeros and the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra).

Section A.12 (Rational Expressions and Equations) starts with the basic arithmetic of rational expressions and the simplifying of compound fractions. Solving equations by clearing denominators and the handling of negative integer exponents are presented but the graphing of rational functions is deferred until Chapter **??** (Rational Functions).

Section A.13 (Radicals and Equations) covers simplifying radicals as well as the solving of basic equations involving radicals. Students should be familiar with this material before starting Chapter **??** (Root and Radical Functions).

Section A.14 (Variation) looks at a variety of equations from Science and Engineering. It's a self-contained section that can be covered at any time.

A.1 Basic Set Theory and Interval Notation

A.1.1 Some Basic Set Theory Notions

We begin this section with the definition of a concept that is central to all of Mathematics.

> **Definition A.1.1.** A **set** is a well-defined collection of objects which are called the elements of the set. Here, 'well-defined' means that it is possible to determine if something belongs to the collection or not, without prejudice.

For example, the collection of letters that make up the word "smolko" is well-defined and is a set, but the collection of the worst Math teachers in the world is **not** well-defined and therefore is **not** a set.[1]

In general, there are three ways to describe sets and those methods are listed in Box A.1.1.

> **Box A.1.1: Ways to Describe Sets**
>
> 1. **The Verbal Method:** Use a sentence to describe the elements in the set.
> 2. **The Roster Method:** Begin with a left brace '$\{$', list each element of the set *only once* and then end with a right brace '$\}$'.
> 3. **The Set-Builder Method:** A combination of the verbal and roster methods using a "dummy variable" such as x and conditions on that variable.

Let S be the set described *verbally* as the set of letters that make up the word "smolko". A *roster* description of S is $\{s, m, o, l, k\}$. Note that we listed 'o' only once, even though it appears twice in the word "smolko". Also, the order of the elements doesn't matter, so $\{k, l, m, o, s\}$ is also a

[1] For a more thought-provoking example, consider the collection of all things that do not contain themselves - this leads to the famous paradox known as Russell's Paradox[2].

roster description of S. A *set-builder* description of S is:

$$\{x \mid x \text{ is a letter in the word "smolko"}\}$$

The way to read this is 'The set of elements x such that x is a letter in the word "smolko".' In each of the above cases, we may use the familiar equals sign '=' and write $S = \{s, m, o, l, k\}$ or

$$S = \{x \mid x \text{ is a letter in the word "smolko"}\}$$

Notice that m is in S but many other letters, such as q, are not in S. We express these ideas of set inclusion and exclusion mathematically using the symbols $m \in S$ (read 'm is in S') and $q \notin S$ (read 'q is not in S'). More precisely, we have the following.

> **Definition A.1.2.** Let A be a set.
> - If x is an element of A then we write $x \in A$ which is read 'x is in A'.
> - If x is *not* an element of A then we write $x \notin A$ which is read 'x is not in A'.

Now let's consider the set $C = \{x \mid x \text{ is a consonant in the word "smolko"}\}$. A roster description of C is $C = \{s, m, l, k\}$. Note that by construction, every element of C is also in S. We express this relationship by stating that the set C is a **subset** of the set S, which is written in symbols as $C \subseteq S$. The more formal definition is given at the top of the next page.

> **Definition A.1.3.** Given sets A and B, we say that the set A is a **subset** of the set B and write '$A \subseteq B$' if every element in A is also an element of B.

In our previous example, $C \subseteq S$ yet not vice-versa since $o \in S$ but $o \notin C$. Additionally, the set of vowels $V = \{a, e, i, o, u\}$, while it does have an element in common with S, is not a subset of S. (As an added note, S is not a subset of V, either.) We could, however, *build* a set which contains both S and V as subsets by gathering all of the elements in both S and V together into a single set, say $U = \{s, m, o, l, k, a, e, i, u\}$. Then $S \subseteq U$ and $V \subseteq U$. The set U we have built is called the **union** of the sets S and V and is denoted $S \cup V$. Furthermore, S and V aren't completely *different* sets since they both contain the letter 'o.' The **intersection** of two sets is the set of elements (if any) the two sets have in common. In this case, the intersection of S and V is $\{o\}$, written $S \cap V = \{o\}$. We formalize these ideas below.

Definition A.1.4. Suppose A and B are sets.

- The **intersection** of A and B is $A \cap B = \{x \,|\, x \in A \text{ and } x \in B\}$
- The **union** of A and B is $A \cup B = \{x \,|\, x \in A \text{ or } x \in B \text{ (or both)}\}$

The key words in Definition A.1.4 to focus on are the conjunctions: 'intersection' corresponds to 'and' meaning the elements have to be in *both* sets to be in the intersection, whereas 'union' corresponds to 'or' meaning the elements have to be in one set, or the other set (or both). Please note that this mathematical use of the word 'or' differs than how we use 'or' in spoken English. In Math, we use the *inclusive or* which allows for the element to be in both sets. At a restaurant if you're asked "Do you want fries or a salad?" you must pick one and only one. This is known as the *exclusive or* and it plays a role in other Math classes. For our purposes it is good enough to say that for an element to belong to the union of two sets it must belong to *at least one* of them.

Returning to the sets C and V above, $C \cup V = \{s, m, l, k, a, e, i, o, u\}$.[3] Their intersection, however, creates a bit of notational awkwardness since C and V have no elements in common. While we could write $C \cap V = \{\}$, this sort of thing happens often enough that we give the set with no elements a name.

[3] Which just so happens to be the same set as $S \cup V$.

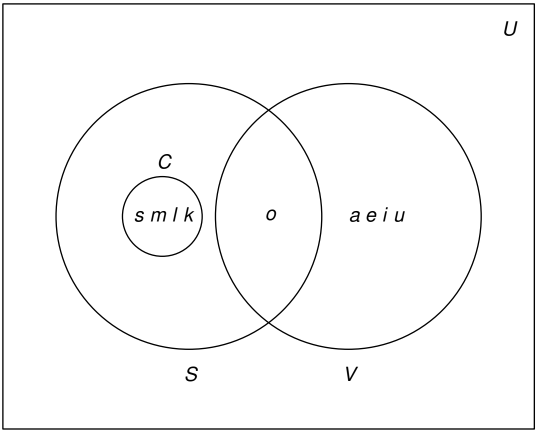


Figure A.1.1: Venn Diagram for S, C and V

> **Definition A.1.5.** The **Empty Set** is the set which contains no elements and is denoted $\emptyset$. That is,
>
> $$\emptyset = \{\} = \{x \mid x \neq x\}.$$

As promised, the empty set is the set containing no elements since no matter what 'x' is, '$x = x$.' Like the number '0,' the empty set plays a vital role in mathematics.[4] We introduce it here more as a symbol of convenience as opposed to a contrivance[5] because saying that $C \cap V = \emptyset$ is unambiguous whereas $\{\}$ looks like a typographical error.

A nice way to visualize the relationships between sets and set operations is to draw a **Venn Diagram**[6]. A Venn Diagram for the sets S, C and V is shown in Figure A.1.1.

In the Venn Diagram above we have three circles - one for each of the

---

[4] Sadly, the full extent of the empty set's role will not be explored in this text.

[5] Actually, the empty set can be used to generate numbers - mathematicians can create something from nothing!

[6] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Venn_diagram

sets C, S and V. We visualize the area enclosed by each of these circles as the elements of each set. Here, we've spelled out the elements for definitiveness. Notice that the circle representing the set C is completely inside the circle representing S. This is a geometric way of showing that $C \subseteq S$. Also, notice that the circles representing S and V overlap on the letter 'o'. This common region is how we visualize $S \cap V$. Notice that since $C \cap V = \emptyset$, the circles which represent C and V have no overlap whatsoever.

All of these circles lie in a rectangle labeled U for the 'universal' set. A universal set contains all of the elements under discussion, so it could always be taken as the union of all of the sets in question, or an even larger set. In this case, we could take $U = S \cup V$ or U as the set of letters in the entire alphabet. The reader may well wonder if there is an ultimate universal set which contains *everything*. The short answer is 'no' and we refer you once again to Russell's Paradox[7]. The usual triptych of Venn Diagrams indicating generic sets A and B along with $A \cap B$ and $A \cup B$ is given in Figure A.1.2.

The one major limitation of Venn Diagrams is that they become unwieldy if more than four sets need to be drawn simultaneously within the same universal set. This idea is explored in the Exercises.

[7] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Russell's_paradox

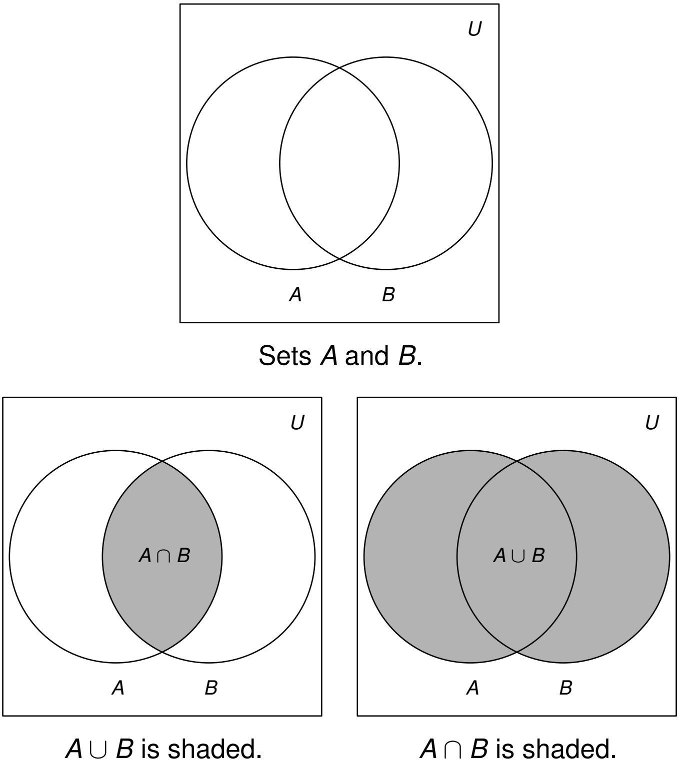


Figure A.1.2: Triptych of Venn Diagrams

A.1.2 Sets of Real Numbers

The playground for most of this text is the set of **Real Numbers**. Much of the "real world" can be quantified using real numbers: the temperature at a given time, the revenue generated by selling a certain number of products and the maximum population of Sasquatch which can inhabit a particular region are just three basic examples. A succinct, but nonetheless incomplete[8] definition of a real number is given below.

> **Definition A.1.6.** A **real number** is any number which possesses a decimal representation. The set of real numbers is denoted by the character $\mathbb{R}$.

Certain subsets of the real numbers are worthy of note and are listed in Box A.1.2. In fact, in more advanced texts,[9] the real numbers are *constructed* from some of these subsets.

Note that every natural number is a whole number which, in turn, is an integer. Each integer is a rational number (take $b = 1$ in the above definition for $\mathbb{Q}$) and since every rational number is a real number[10] the sets $\mathbb{N}$, $\mathbb{W}$, $\mathbb{Z}$, $\mathbb{Q}$, and $\mathbb{R}$ are nested like Matryoshka dolls[11]. More formally, these sets form a subset chain: $\mathbb{N} \subseteq \mathbb{W} \subseteq \mathbb{Z} \subseteq \mathbb{Q} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$. The reader is encouraged to sketch a Venn Diagram depicting $\mathbb{R}$ and all of the subsets mentioned above.

It is time to put all of this together in an example.

Example A.1.1.

1. Write a roster description for $P = \{2^n \,|\, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ and $E = \{2n \,|\, n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$.
2. Write a verbal description for $S = \{x^2 \,|\, x \in \mathbb{R}\}$.
3. Let $A = \left\{-117, \frac{4}{5}, 0.20\overline{2002}, 0.202002000200002\ldots\right\}$.

[8]Math pun intended!

[9]See, for instance, Landau's Foundations of Analysis.

[10]Thanks to long division!

[11]http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Matryoshka_doll

   (a) Which elements of A are natural numbers? Rational numbers? Real numbers?

   (b) Find $A \cap \mathbb{W}$, $A \cap \mathbb{Z}$ and $A \cap \mathbb{P}$.

4. What is another name for $\mathbb{N} \cup \mathbb{Q}$? What about $\mathbb{Q} \cup \mathbb{P}$?

Solution.

1. To find roster descriptions for each of these sets, we need to list their elements. Starting with the set $P = \{2^n \,|\, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$, we substitute natural number values n into the formula 2^n. For $n = 1$ we get $2^1 = 2$, for $n = 2$ we get $2^2 = 4$, for $n = 3$ we get $2^3 = 8$ and for $n = 4$ we get $2^4 = 16$. Hence P describes the powers of 2, so a roster description for P is $P = \{2, 4, 8, 16, ...\}$ where the '...' indicates the that pattern continues.[12]

   Proceeding in the same way, we generate elements in $E = \{2n \,|\, n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ by plugging in integer values of n into the formula $2n$. Starting with $n = 0$ we obtain $2(0) = 0$. For $n = 1$ we get $2(1) = 2$, for $n = -1$ we get $2(-1) = -2$ for $n = 2$, we get $2(2) = 4$ and for $n = -2$ we get $2(-2) = -4$. As n moves through the integers, $2n$ produces all of the *even* integers.[13] A roster description for E is $E = \{0, \pm 2, \pm 4, ...\}$.

2. One way to verbally describe S is to say that S is the 'set of all squares of real numbers'. While this isn't incorrect, we'd like to take this opportunity to delve a little deeper.[14] What makes the set $S = \{x^2 \,|\, x \in \mathbb{R}\}$ a little trickier to wrangle than the sets P or E above is that the dummy variable here, x, runs through all *real* numbers. Unlike the natural numbers or the integers, the real numbers

[12] This isn't the most *precise* way to describe this set - it's always dangerous to use '...' since we assume that the pattern is clearly demonstrated and thus made evident to the reader. Formulas are more precise because the pattern is clear.

[13] This shouldn't be too surprising, since an even integer is *defined* to be an integer multiple of 2.

[14] Think of this as an opportunity to stop and smell the mathematical roses.

cannot be listed in any methodical way.[15] Nevertheless, we can select some real numbers, square them and get a sense of what kind of numbers lie in S. For $x = -2$, $x^2 = (-2)^2 = 4$ so 4 is in S, as are $\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{9}{4}$ and $(\sqrt{117})^2 = 117$. Even things like $(-\pi)^2$ and $(0.101001000100001\ldots)^2$ are in S.

So suppose $s \in S$. What can be said about s? We know there is some real number x so that $s = x^2$. Since $x^2 \geq 0$ for any real number x, we know $s \geq 0$. This tells us that everything in S is a non-negative real number.[17] This begs the question: are <u>all</u> of the non-negative real numbers in S? Suppose n is a non-negative real number, that is, $n \geq 0$. If n were in S, there would be a real number x so that $x^2 = n$. As you may recall, we can solve $x^2 = n$ by 'extracting square roots': $x = \pm\sqrt{n}$. Since $n \geq 0$, $\sqrt{n}$ is a real number.[18] Moreover, $(\sqrt{n})^2 = n$ so n is the square of a real number which means $n \in S$. Hence, S is the set of non-negative real numbers.

3. (a) The set A contains no natural numbers.[19] Clearly $\frac{4}{5}$ is a rational number as is -117 (which can be written as $\frac{-117}{1}$). It's the last two numbers listed in A, $0.20\overline{2002}$ and $0.202002000200002\ldots$, that warrant some discussion. First, recall that the 'line' over the digits 2002 in $0.20\overline{2002}$ (called the vinculum) indicates that these digits repeat, so it is a rational number.[20] As for the number $0.202002000200002\ldots$, the '...' indicates the pattern of adding an extra '0' followed by a '2' is what defines this real number. Despite the fact there is a *pattern* to this decimal, this decimal is *not repeating*, so it is not a rational number - it is, in fact, an irrational number. All of the elements of A are

[15] This is a nontrivial statement. Interested readers are directed to a discussion of Cantor's Diagonal Argument[16].

[17] This means S is a subset of the non-negative real numbers.

[18] This is called the 'square root closed property' of the non-negative real numbers.

[19] Carl was tempted to include $0.\overline{9}$ in the set A, but thought better of it. See Section **??** for details.

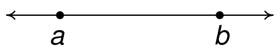
[20] So $0.20\overline{2002} = 0.20200220022002\ldots$.

real numbers, since all of them can be expressed as decimals (remember that $\frac{4}{5} = 0.8$).

(b) The set $A \cap \mathbb{W} = \{x \mid x \in A \text{ and } x \in \mathbb{W}\}$ is another way of saying we are looking for the set of numbers in A which are whole numbers. Since A contains no whole numbers, $A \cap \mathbb{W} = \emptyset$. Similarly, $A \cap \mathbb{Z}$ is looking for the set of numbers in A which are integers. Since -117 is the only integer in A, $A \cap \mathbb{Z} = \{-117\}$. For the set $A \cap \mathbb{P}$, as discussed in part (a), the number $0.202002000200002\ldots$ is irrational, so $A \cap \mathbb{P} = \{0.202002000200002\ldots\}$.

4. The set $\mathbb{N} \cup \mathbb{Q} = \{x \mid x \in \mathbb{N} \text{ or } x \in \mathbb{Q}\}$ is the union of the set of natural numbers with the set of rational numbers. Since every natural number is a rational number, $\mathbb{N}$ doesn't contribute any new elements to $\mathbb{Q}$, so $\mathbb{N} \cup \mathbb{Q} = \mathbb{Q}$.[21] For the set $\mathbb{Q} \cup \mathbb{P}$, we note that every real number is either rational or not, hence $\mathbb{Q} \cup \mathbb{P} = \mathbb{R}$, pretty much by the definition of the set $\mathbb{P}$. □

As you may recall, we often visualize the set of real numbers $\mathbb{R}$ as a line where each point on the line corresponds to one and only one real number. Given two different real numbers a and b, we write $a < b$ if a is located to the left of b on the number line, as shown below.



The real number line with two numbers a and b where $a < b$.

While this notion seems innocuous, it is worth pointing out that this convention is rooted in two deep properties of real numbers. The first property is that $\mathbb{R}$ is complete[22]. This means that there are no 'holes' or 'gaps' in the real number line.[23] Another way to think about this is that if you choose any two distinct (different) real numbers, and look between them, you'll find

[21] In fact, anytime $A \subseteq B$, $A \cup B = B$ and vice-versa. See the exercises.
[22] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Complete_metric_space
[23] Alas, this intuitive feel for what it means to be 'complete' is as good as it gets at this level. Completeness is given a much more precise meaning later in courses like Analysis and Topology.

a solid line segment (or interval) consisting of infinitely many real numbers. The result in Box A.1.3 tells us what types of numbers we can expect to find.

The root word 'dense' here communicates the idea that rationals and irrationals are 'thoroughly mixed' into $\mathbb{R}$. The reader is encouraged to think about how one would find both a rational and an irrational number between, say, 0.9999 and 1. Once you've done that, try doing the same thing for the numbers $0.\overline{9}$ and 1. ('Try' is the operative word, here.[24])

The second property $\mathbb{R}$ possesses that lets us view it as a line is that the set is totally ordered[25]. This means that given any two real numbers a and b, either $a < b$, $a > b$ or $a = b$ which allows us to arrange the numbers from least (left) to greatest (right). This property is given in Box A.1.4.

Segments of the real number line are called **intervals**. They play a huge role not only in this text but also in the Calculus curriculum so we need a concise way to describe them. We start by examining a few examples of the **interval notation** associated with some specific sets of numbers.

As you can glean from the Table A.1.1, for intervals with finite endpoints we start by writing 'left endpoint, right endpoint'. We use square brackets, '[' or ']', if the endpoint is included in the interval. This corresponds to a 'filled-in' or 'closed' dot on the number line to indicate that the number is included in the set. Otherwise, we use parentheses, '(' or ')' that correspond to an 'open' circle which indicates that the endpoint is not part of the set. If the interval does not have finite endpoints, we use the symbol $-\infty$ to indicate that the interval extends indefinitely to the left and the symbol ∞ to indicate that the interval extends indefinitely to the right. Since infinity is a concept, and not a number, we always use parentheses when using these symbols in interval notation, and use the appropriate arrow to indicate that the interval extends indefinitely in one or both directions. We summarize all of the possible cases in one convenient table in Box A.1.5.[26]

[24] Again, see Section **??** for details.

[25] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Total_order

[26] The importance of understanding interval notation in this book and also in Calculus cannot be overstated so please do yourself a favor and memorize this chart.

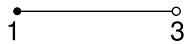
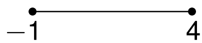
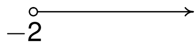
Set of Real Numbers	Interval Notation	Region on the Real Number Line
$\{x \mid 1 \leq x < 3\}$	$[1, 3)$	
$\{x \mid -1 \leq x \leq 4\}$	$[-1, 4]$	
$\{x \mid x \leq 5\}$	$(-\infty, 5]$	
$\{x \mid x > -2\}$	$(-2, \infty)$	

Table A.1.1: Examples of interval notation

Intervals of the forms (a, b), $(-\infty, b)$ and (a, ∞) are said to be **open** intervals. Those of the forms $[a, b]$, $(-\infty, b]$ and $[a, \infty)$ are said to be **closed** intervals.

Unfortunately, the words 'open' and 'closed' are not antonyms here because the empty set $\emptyset$ and the set $(-\infty, \infty)$ are simultaneously open and closed[27] while the intervals $(a, b]$ and $[a, b)$ are neither open nor closed. The inclusion or exclusion of an endpoint might seem like a terribly small thing to fuss about but these sorts of technicalities in the language become important in Calculus so we feel the need to put this material in the Precalculus book.

We close this section with an example that ties together some of the concepts presented earlier. Specifically, we demonstrate how to use interval notation along with the concepts of union and intersection to describe a variety of sets on the real number line. In many sections of the text to come you will need to be fluent with this notation so take the time to study it deeply now.

[27] You don't need to worry about that fact until you take an advanced course in Topology.

Example A.1.2.

1. Express the following sets of numbers using interval notation.

   (a) $\{\, x \mid x \leq -2 \text{ or } x \geq 2 \,\}$

   (b) $\left\{ x \,\middle|\, x < \sqrt{3} \text{ and } x \geq -\frac{8}{5} \right\}$

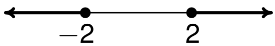
   (c) $\{x \mid x \neq \pm 3\}$

   (d) $\left\{ x \,\middle|\, -1 < x \leq 3 \text{ or } x = 5 \right\}$

2. Let $A = [-5, 3)$ and $B = (1, \infty)$. Find $A \cap B$ and $A \cup B$.

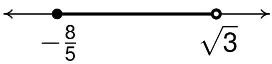
Solution.

1. (a) The best way to proceed here is to graph the set of numbers on the number line and glean the answer from it. The inequality $x \leq -2$ corresponds to the interval $(-\infty, -2]$ and the inequality $x \geq 2$ corresponds to the interval $[2, \infty)$. The 'or' in $\{x \mid x \leq -2 \text{ or } x \geq 2\}$ tells us that we are looking for the union of these two intervals, so our answer is



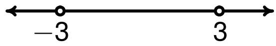
$(-\infty, -2] \cup [2, \infty)$

   (b) For the set $\{x \mid x < \sqrt{3} \text{ and } x \geq -\frac{8}{5}\}$, we need the real numbers less than (to the left of) $\sqrt{3}$ that are simultaneously greater than (to the right of) $-\frac{8}{5}$, including $-\frac{8}{5}$ but excluding $\sqrt{3}$. This yields $\{x \mid x < \sqrt{3} \text{ and } x \geq -\frac{8}{5}\} = \left[-\frac{8}{5}, \sqrt{3}\right)$.



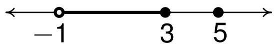
$\left[-\frac{8}{5}, \sqrt{3}\right)$

   (c) For the set $\{x \mid x \neq \pm 3\}$, we proceed as before and exclude both $x = 3$ and $x = -3$ from our set. (Refer back to page 19 for a discussion about $x = \pm 3$) This breaks the number line into *three* intervals, $(-\infty, -3)$, $(-3, 3)$ and $(3, \infty)$. Since the set describes real numbers which come from the first, second *or* third interval, we have $\{x \mid x \neq \pm 3\} = (-\infty, -3) \cup (-3, 3) \cup (3, \infty)$.



$(-\infty, -3) \cup (-3, 3) \cup (3, \infty)$

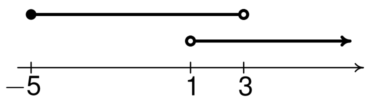
(d) Graphing the set $\{x \mid -1 < x \leq 3 \text{ or } x = 5\}$ yields the interval $(-1, 3]$ along with the single number 5. While we *could* express this single point as $[5, 5]$, it is customary to write a single point as a 'singleton set', so in our case we have the set $\{5\}$. This means that our final answer is written $\{x \mid -1 < x \leq 3 \text{ or } x = 5\} = (-1, 3] \cup \{5\}$.



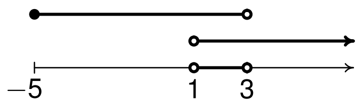
$(-1, 3] \cup \{5\}$

2. We start by graphing $A = [-5, 3)$ and $B = (1, \infty)$ on the number line. To find $A \cap B$, we need to find the numbers common to both A and B; in other words, we need to find the overlap of the two intervals. Clearly, everything between 1 and 3 is in both A and B. However, since 1 is in A but not in B, 1 is not in the intersection. Similarly, since 3 is in B but not in A, it isn't in the intersection either. Hence, $A \cap B = (1, 3)$.

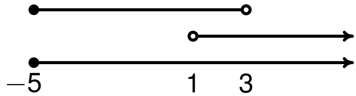
   To find $A \cup B$, we need to find the numbers in at least one of A or B. Graphically, we shade A and B along with it. Notice here that even though 1 isn't in B, it is in A, so it's in the union along with all of the other elements of A between -5 and 1. A similar argument goes for the inclusion of 3 in the union. The result of shading both A and B together gives us $A \cup B = [-5, \infty)$.



$A = [-5, 3)$, $B = (1, \infty)$



$A \cap B = (1, 3)$



$A \cup B = [-5, \infty)$ □

Box A.1.2: Special Subsets of Real Numbers

1. The **Natural Numbers**: $\mathbb{N} = \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$ The periods of ellipsis '...' here indicate that the natural numbers contain 1, 2, 3 'and so forth'.
2. The **Whole Numbers**: $\mathbb{W} = \{0, 1, 2, \ldots\}$.
3. The **Integers**: $\mathbb{Z} = \{\ldots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots\} = \{0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \ldots\}$.[a]
4. The **Rational Numbers**: $\mathbb{Q} = \left\{ \frac{a}{b} \,\middle|\, a \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and } b \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ where } b \neq 0 \right\}$. Rational numbers are the ratios of integers where the denominator is not zero. It turns out that another way to describe the rational numbers[b] is:

$$\mathbb{Q} = \left\{ x \,\middle|\, \begin{array}{l} x \text{ possesses a repeating or terminating dec-} \\ \text{imal representation} \end{array} \right\}$$

5. The **Irrational Numbers**: $\mathbb{P} = \{x \mid x \in \mathbb{R} \text{ but } x \notin \mathbb{Q}\}$.[c] That is, an irrational number is a real number which isn't rational. Said differently,

$$\mathbb{P} = \left\{ x \,\middle|\, \begin{array}{l} x \text{ possesses a decimal representation which} \\ \text{neither repeats nor terminates} \end{array} \right\}$$

---

[a] The symbol $\pm$ is read 'plus or minus' and it is a shorthand notation which appears throughout the text. Just remember that $x = \pm 3$ means $x = 3$ or $x = -3$.

[b] See Section **??**.

[c] Examples here include number π (See Section B.1), $\sqrt{2}$ and 0.101001000100001 ....

Box A.1.3: Density Property of $\mathbb{Q}$ and $\mathbb{P}$ in $\mathbb{R}$

Between any two distinct real numbers, there is at least one rational number and one irrational number. It then follows that between any two distinct real numbers there will be infinitely many rational and infinitely many irrational numbers.

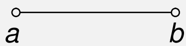
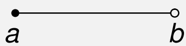
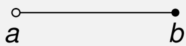
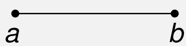
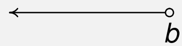
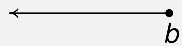
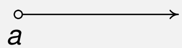
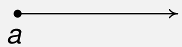
Box A.1.4: Law of Trichotomy

If a and b are real numbers then exactly one of the following statements is true:

$$a < b \qquad a > b \qquad a = b$$

Box A.1.5: Interval Notation

Let a and b be real numbers with $a < b$.

Set of Real Numbers	Interval Notation	Region on the Real Number Line
$\{x \mid a < x < b\}$	(a, b)	
$\{x \mid a \leq x < b\}$	$[a, b)$	
$\{x \mid a < x \leq b\}$	$(a, b]$	
$\{x \mid a \leq x \leq b\}$	$[a, b]$	
$\{x \mid x < b\}$	$(-\infty, b)$	
$\{x \mid x \leq b\}$	$(-\infty, b]$	
$\{x \mid x > a\}$	(a, ∞)	
$\{x \mid x \geq a\}$	$[a, \infty)$	
$\mathbb{R}$	$(-\infty, \infty)$	

A.1.3 Exercises

1. Find a verbal description for $O = \{2n - 1 \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$
2. Find a roster description for $X = \{z^2 \mid z \in \mathbb{Z}\}$
3. Let $A = \left\{ \begin{array}{c} -3, -1.02, -\frac{3}{5}, 0.57, 1.\overline{23}, \sqrt{3}, \\ 5.2020020002\ldots, \frac{20}{10}, 117 \end{array} \right\}$
   (a) List the elements of A which are natural numbers.
   (b) List the elements of A which are irrational numbers.
   (c) Find $A \cap \mathbb{Z}$
   (d) Find $A \cap \mathbb{Q}$
4. Fill in the Table A.1.2.

In Exercises 5. - 10., find the indicated intersection or union and simplify if possible. Express your answers in interval notation.

5. $(-1, 5] \cap [0, 8)$
6. $(-1, 1) \cup [0, 6]$
7. $(-\infty, 4] \cap (0, \infty)$
8. $(-\infty, 0) \cap [1, 5]$
9. $(-\infty, 0) \cup [1, 5]$
10. $(-\infty, 5] \cap [5, 8)$

In Exercises 11. - 22., write the set using interval notation.

11. $\{x \mid x \neq 5\}$
12. $\{x \mid x \neq -1\}$
13. $\{x \mid x \neq -3, 4\}$
14. $\{x \mid x \neq 0, 2\}$
15. $\{x \mid x \neq 2, -2\}$
16. $\{x \mid x \neq 0, \pm 4\}$
17. $\{x \mid x \leq -1 \text{ or } x \geq 1\}$
18. $\{x \mid x < 3 \text{ and } x \geq 2\}$
19. $\{x \mid x \leq -3 \text{ or } x > 0\}$
20. $\{x \mid x \leq 2 \text{ and } x > 3\}$
21. $\{x \mid x > 2 \text{ or } x = \pm 1\}$
22. $\{x \mid 3 < x < 13 \text{ and } x \neq 4\}$

For Exercises 23. - 28., use the blank Venn Diagram in Figure A.1.3 with A, B, and C in it as a guide to help you shade the following sets.

23. $A \cup C$
24. $B \cap C$
25. $(A \cup B) \cup C$
26. $(A \cap B) \cap C$
27. $A \cap (B \cup C)$
28. $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$
29. Explain how your answers to problems 27. and 28. show $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$. Phrased differently, this shows 'intersection *distributes* over union.' Discuss with your classmates if 'union' distributes over 'intersection.' Use a Venn Diagram to support your answer.

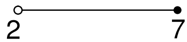
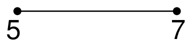
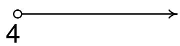
Set of Real Numbers	Interval Notation	Region on the Real Number Line
$\{x \mid -1 \leq x < 5\}$		
	$[0, 3)$	
		
$\{x \mid -5 < x \leq 0\}$		
	$(-3, 3)$	
		
$\{x \mid x \leq 3\}$		
	$(-\infty, 9)$	
		
$\{x \mid x \geq -3\}$		

Table A.1.2: Fill in the chart

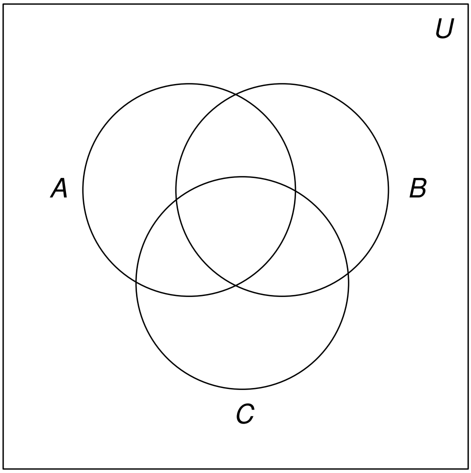
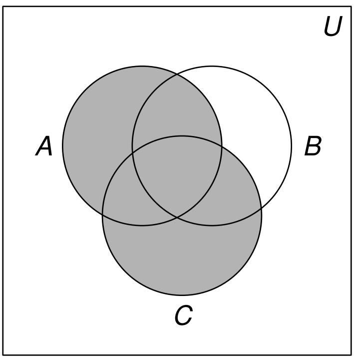


Figure A.1.3: Blank Venn Diagram for Exercises 23. - 28.

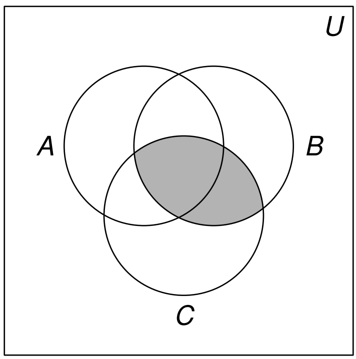
30. Show that $A \subseteq B$ if and only if $A \cup B = B$.
31. Let $A = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$, $B = \{2, 4, 6, 8, 10\}$, $C = \{1, 6, 9\}$ and $D = \{2, 7, 10\}$. Draw one Venn Diagram that shows all four of these sets. What sort of difficulties do you encounter?

A.1.4 Answers

1. O is the odd natural numbers.
2. $X = \{0, 1, 4, 9, 16, ...\}$
3.
   (a) $\frac{20}{10} = 2$ and 117
   (b) $\sqrt{3}$ and 5.2020020002
   (c) $\left\{-3, \frac{20}{10}, 117\right\}$
   (d) $\left\{-3, -1.02, -\frac{3}{5}, 0.57, 1.\overline{23}, \frac{20}{10}, 117\right\}$
4. See Table A.1.3
5. $(-1, 5] \cap [0, 8) = [0, 5]$
6. $(-1, 1) \cup [0, 6] = (-1, 6]$
7. $(-\infty, 4] \cap (0, \infty) = (0, 4]$
8. $(-\infty, 0) \cap [1, 5] = \emptyset$
9. $(-\infty, 0) \cup [1, 5] = (-\infty, 0) \cup [1, 5]$
10. $(-\infty, 5] \cap [5, 8) = \{5\}$
11. $(-\infty, 5) \cup (5, \infty)$
12. $(-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, \infty)$
13. $(-\infty, -3) \cup (-3, 4) \cup (4, \infty)$
14. $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, 2) \cup (2, \infty)$
15. $(-\infty, -2) \cup (-2, 2) \cup (2, \infty)$
16. $(-\infty, -4) \cup (-4, 0) \cup (0, 4) \cup (4, \infty)$
17. $(-\infty, -1] \cup [1, \infty)$
18. $[2, 3)$
19. $(-\infty, -3] \cup (0, \infty)$
20. $\emptyset$
21. $\{-1\} \cup \{1\} \cup (2, \infty)$
22. $(3, 4) \cup (4, 13)$
23. $A \cup C$



24. $B \cap C$



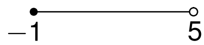
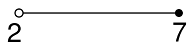
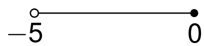
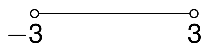
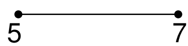
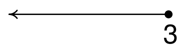
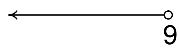
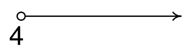
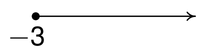
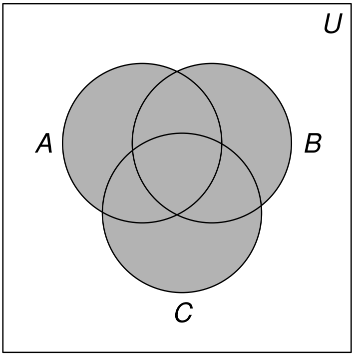
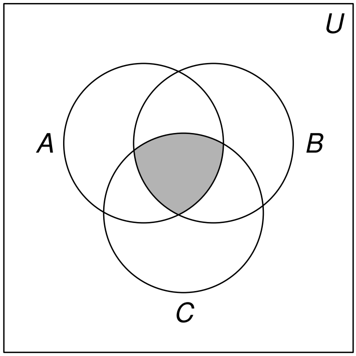
Set of Real Numbers	Interval Notation	Region on the Real Number Line
$\{x \mid -1 \leq x < 5\}$	$[-1, 5)$	
$\{x \mid 0 \leq x < 3\}$	$[0, 3)$	
$\{x \mid 2 < x \leq 7\}$	$(2, 7]$	
$\{x \mid -5 < x \leq 0\}$	$(-5, 0]$	
$\{x \mid -3 < x < 3\}$	$(-3, 3)$	
$\{x \mid 5 \leq x \leq 7\}$	$[5, 7]$	
$\{x \mid x \leq 3\}$	$(-\infty, 3]$	
$\{x \mid x < 9\}$	$(-\infty, 9)$	
$\{x \mid x > 4\}$	$(4, \infty)$	
$\{x \mid x \geq -3\}$	$[-3, \infty)$	

Table A.1.3: Filled in chart

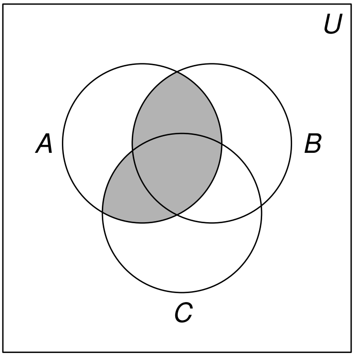
25. $(A \cup B) \cup C$



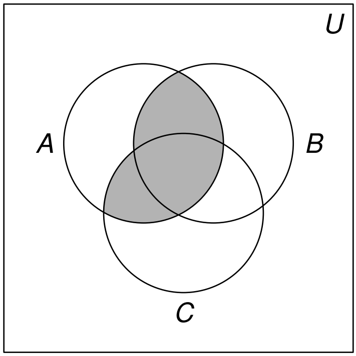
26. $(A \cap B) \cap C$



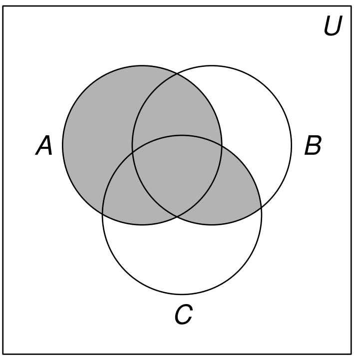
27. $A \cap (B \cup C)$



28. $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$



29. Yes, $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$.



A.2 Real Number Arithmetic

In this section we list the properties of real number arithmetic. This is meant to be a succinct, targeted review so we'll resist the temptation to wax poetic about these axioms and their subtleties and refer the interested reader to a more formal course in Abstract Algebra. There are two primary operations one can perform with real numbers: addition and multiplication. We'll start with the properties of addition shown in Box A.2.1.

Box A.2.1: Properties of Real Number Addition

- **Closure:** For all real numbers a and b, $a+b$ is also a real number.
- **Commutativity:** For all real numbers a and b, $a+b=b+a$.
- **Associativity:** For all real numbers a, b and c, $a+(b+c)=(a+b)+c$.
- **Identity:** There is a real number '0' so that for all real numbers a, $a+0=a$.
- **Inverse:** For all real numbers a, there is a real number $-a$ such that $a+(-a)=0$.
- **Definition of Subtraction:** For all real numbers a and b, $a-b=a+(-b)$.

Next, we give real number multiplication a similar treatment as shown in Box A.2.2. Recall that we may denote the product of two real numbers a and b a variety of ways: ab, $a \cdot b$, $a(b)$, $(a)(b)$ and so on. We'll refrain from using $a \times b$ for real number multiplication in this text with one notable exception in Definition A.2.1.

While most students and some faculty tend to skip over these properties or give them a cursory glance at best,[1] it is important to realize that the properties stated above are what drive the symbolic manipulation in all of Algebra. When listing a tally of more than two numbers, $1+2+3$ for example, we don't need to specify the order in which those numbers are added. Notice though, try as we might, we can add only two numbers at

[1] Not unlike how Carl approached all the Elven poetry in The Lord of the Rings.

Box A.2.2: Properties of Real Number Multiplication

- **Closure:** For all real numbers a and b, ab is also a real number.
- **Commutativity:** For all real numbers a and b, $ab = ba$.
- **Associativity:** For all real numbers a, b and c, $a(bc) = (ab)c$.
- **Identity:** There is a real number '1' so that for all real numbers a, $a \cdot 1 = a$.
- **Inverse:** For all real numbers $a \neq 0$, there is a real number $\frac{1}{a}$ such that $a\left(\frac{1}{a}\right) = 1$.
- **Definition of Division:** For all real numbers a and $b \neq 0$, $a \div b = \frac{a}{b} = a\left(\frac{1}{b}\right)$.

a time and it is the associative property of addition which assures us that we could organize this sum as $(1 + 2) + 3$ or $1 + (2 + 3)$. This brings up a note about 'grouping symbols'. Recall that parentheses and brackets are used in order to specify which operations are to be performed first. In the absence of such grouping symbols, multiplication (and hence division) is given priority over addition (and hence subtraction). For example, $1+2\cdot3 = 1 + 6 = 7$, but $(1 + 2) \cdot 3 = 3 \cdot 3 = 9$. As you may recall, we can 'distribute' the 3 across the addition if we really wanted to do the multiplication first: $(1 + 2) \cdot 3 = 1 \cdot 3 + 2 \cdot 3 = 3 + 6 = 9$. More generally, we have the properties shown in Box A.2.3.

It is worth pointing out that we didn't really need to list the Distributive Property both for $a(b+c)$ (distributing from the left) and $(a+b)c$ (distributing from the right), since the commutative property of multiplication gives us one from the other. Also, 'factoring' is really the same equation as the distributive property, just read from right to left. These are the first of many redundancies in this section, and they exist in this review section for one reason only - in our experience, many students *see* these things differently

Box A.2.3: The Distributive Property and Factoring

For all real numbers a, b and c:

- **Distributive Property:** $a(b+c) = ab + ac$ and $(a+b)c = ac + bc$.
- **Factoring:**[a] $ab + ac = a(b+c)$ and $ac + bc = (a+b)c$.

[a] Or, as Carl calls it, 'reading the Distributive Property from right to left.'

so we will list them as such.

It is hard to overstate the importance of the Distributive Property. For example, in the expression $5(2+x)$, without knowing the value of x, we cannot perform the addition inside the parentheses first; we must rely on the distributive property here to get $5(2+x) = 5 \cdot 2 + 5 \cdot x = 10 + 5x$. The Distributive Property is also responsible for combining 'like terms'. Why is $3x + 2x = 5x$? Because $3x + 2x = (3+2)x = 5x$.

We continue our review with summaries of other properties of arithmetic, each of which can be derived from the properties listed above. First up are properties of the additive identity 0.

The Zero Product Property drives most of the equation solving algorithms in Algebra because it allows us to take complicated equations and reduce them to simpler ones. For example, you may recall that one way to solve $x^2 + x - 6 = 0$ is by factoring[2] the left hand side of this equation to get $(x-2)(x+3) = 0$. From here, we apply the Zero Product Property and set each factor equal to zero. This yields $x - 2 = 0$ or $x + 3 = 0$ so $x = 2$ or $x = -3$. This application to solving equations leads, in turn, to some deep and profound structure theorems in Chapter **??**.

Next up is a review of the arithmetic of 'negatives'. On page 28 we first introduced the dash which we all recognize as the 'negative' symbol in terms of the additive inverse. For example, the number -3 (read 'negative

[2] Don't worry. We'll review this in due course. And, yes, this is our old friend the Distributive Property!

Box A.2.4: Properties of Zero

Suppose a and b are real numbers.

- **Zero Product Property:** $ab = 0$ if and only if $a = 0$ or $b = 0$ (or both)
  Note: This not only says that $0 \cdot a = 0$ for any real number a, it also says that the *only* way to get an answer of '0' when multiplying two real numbers is to have one (or both) of the numbers be '0' in the first place.
- **Zeros in Fractions:** If $a \neq 0$, $\dfrac{0}{a} = 0 \cdot \left(\dfrac{1}{a}\right) = 0$.
  Note: The quantity $\dfrac{a}{0}$ is undefined.[a]

[a]The expression $\frac{0}{0}$ is technically an 'indeterminant form' as opposed to being strictly 'undefined' meaning that with Calculus we can make some sense of it in certain situations. We'll talk more about this in Chapter **??**.

3') is defined so that $3 + (-3) = 0$. We then defined subtraction using the concept of the additive inverse again so that, for example, $5-3 = 5+(-3)$. In this text we do not distinguish typographically between the dashes in the expressions '$5 - 3$' and '-3' even though they are mathematically quite different.[3] In the expression '$5 - 3$,' the dash is a *binary* operation (that is, an operation requiring *two* numbers) whereas in '-3', the dash is a *unary* operation (that is, an operation requiring only one number). You might ask, 'Who cares?' Your calculator does - that's who! In the text we can write $-3 - 3 = -6$ but that will not work in your calculator. Instead you'd need to type $^{-}3 - 3$ to get -6 where the first dash comes from the '$+/-$' key and the second dash comes from the subtraction key.

An important point here is that when we 'distribute' negatives, we do so across addition or subtraction only. This is because we are really distributing a factor of -1 across each of these terms: $-(a + b) = (-1)(a + b) =$

[3]We're not just being lazy here. We looked at many of the big publishers' Precalculus books and none of them use different dashes, either.

Box A.2.5: Properties of Negatives

Given real numbers a and b we have the following.

- **Additive Inverse Properties:** $-a = (-1)a$ and $-(-a) = a$
- **Products of Negatives:** $(-a)(-b) = ab$.
- **Negatives and Products:** $-ab = -(ab) = (-a)b = a(-b)$.
- **Negatives and Fractions:** If b is nonzero, $-\dfrac{a}{b} = \dfrac{-a}{b} = \dfrac{a}{-b}$ and $\dfrac{-a}{-b} = \dfrac{a}{b}$.
- **'Distributing' Negatives:** $-(a+b) = -a-b$ and $-(a-b) = -a+b = b-a$.
- **'Factoring' Negatives:**[a] $-a-b = -(a+b)$ and $b-a = -(a-b)$.

[a] Or, as Carl calls it, reading 'Distributing' Negatives from right to left.

$(-1)(a) + (-1)(b) = (-a) + (-b) = -a - b$. Negatives do not 'distribute' across multiplication: $-(2\cdot 3) \neq (-2)\cdot(-3)$. Instead, $-(2\cdot 3) = (-2)\cdot(3) = (2)\cdot(-3) = -6$.

The same sort of thing goes for fractions: $-\frac{3}{5}$ can be written as $\frac{-3}{5}$ or $\frac{3}{-5}$, but not $\frac{-3}{-5}$.

Speaking of fractions, we now review their arithmetic.

Students make so many mistakes with fractions that we feel it is necessary to pause the narrative for a moment and offer you the following examples. Please take the time to read these carefully. In the main body of the text we will skip many of the steps shown here and it is your responsibility to understand the arithmetic behind the computations we use throughout the text. We deliberately limited these examples to "nice" numbers (meaning that the numerators and denominators of the fractions are small integers) and will discuss more complicated matters later. In the upcoming example, we will make use of the Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic[4] which

[4] https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fundamental_theorem_of_arithmetic

Box A.2.6: Properties of Fractions

Suppose a, b, c and d are real numbers. Assume them to be nonzero whenever necessary; for example, when they appear in a denominator.

- **Identity Properties:** $a = \frac{a}{1}$ and $\frac{a}{a} = 1$.
- **Fraction Equality:** $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ if and only if $ad = bc$.
- **Multiplication of Fractions:** $\frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ac}{bd}$. In particular: $\frac{a}{b} \cdot c = \frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{c}{1} = \frac{ac}{b}$
  Note: A common denominator is **not** required to **multiply** fractions!
- **Division[a] of Fractions:** $\frac{a}{b} \div \frac{c}{d} = \frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{d}{c} = \frac{ad}{bc}$.
  In particular: $1 \div \frac{a}{b} = \frac{b}{a}$ and $\frac{a}{b} \div c = \frac{a}{b} \div \frac{c}{1} = \frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{1}{c} = \frac{a}{bc}$
  Note: A common denominator is **not** required to **divide** fractions!
- **Addition and Subtraction of Fractions:** $\frac{a}{b} \pm \frac{c}{b} = \frac{a \pm c}{b}$.
  Note: A common denominator **is** required to **add or subtract** fractions!

[a]The old 'invert and multiply' or 'fraction gymnastics' play.

essentially says that every natural number has a unique prime factorization. Thus 'lowest terms' is clearly defined when reducing the fractions you're about to see.

Example A.2.1. Perform the indicated operations and simplify. By 'simplify' here, we mean to have the final answer written in the form $\frac{a}{b}$ where a and b are integers which have no common factors. Said another way, we want $\frac{a}{b}$ in 'lowest terms'.

Box A.2.7: Properties of Fractions (contd.)

- **Equivalent Fractions:** $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{ad}{bd}$, since $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{a}{b} \cdot 1 = \frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{d}{d} = \frac{ad}{bd}$
  Note: The *only* way to change the denominator is to multiply both it and the numerator by the same nonzero value because we are, in essence, multiplying the fraction by 1.
- **'Reducing'[a] Fractions:** $\frac{a\cancel{d}}{b\cancel{d}} = \frac{a}{b}$, since $\frac{ad}{bd} = \frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{d}{d} = \frac{a}{b} \cdot 1 = \frac{a}{b}$.
  In particular, $\frac{ab}{b} = a$ since $\frac{ab}{b} = \frac{ab}{1 \cdot b} = \frac{a\cancel{b}}{1 \cdot \cancel{b}} = \frac{a}{1} = a$ and $\frac{b-a}{a-b} = \frac{(-1)\cancel{(a-b)}}{\cancel{(a-b)}} = -1$.
  Note: We may only cancel common **factors** from both numerator and denominator.

[a] Or 'Canceling' Common Factors - this is really just reading the previous property 'from right to left'.

1. $\frac{1}{4} + \frac{6}{7}$

2. $\frac{5}{12} - \left(\frac{47}{30} - \frac{7}{3}\right)$

3. $\dfrac{\frac{7}{3-5} - \frac{7}{3-5.21}}{5-5.21}$

4. $\dfrac{\dfrac{12}{5} - \dfrac{7}{24}}{1 + \left(\dfrac{12}{5}\right)\left(\dfrac{7}{24}\right)}$

5. $\dfrac{(2(2) + 1)(-3 - (-3)) - 5(4 - 7)}{4 - 2(3)}$

6. $\left(\dfrac{3}{5}\right)\left(\dfrac{5}{13}\right) - \left(\dfrac{4}{5}\right)\left(-\dfrac{12}{13}\right)$

Solution.

1. It may seem silly to start with an example this basic but experience has taught us not to take much for granted. We start by finding the lowest common denominator and then we rewrite the fractions using that new denominator. Since 4 and 7 are **relatively prime**, meaning they have no factors in common, the lowest common denominator is $4 \cdot 7 = 28$.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{4} + \frac{6}{7} &= \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{7}{7} + \frac{6}{7} \cdot \frac{4}{4} && \text{(Equivalent Fractions)} \\ &= \frac{7}{28} + \frac{24}{28} && \text{(Multiplication of Fractions)} \\ &= \frac{31}{28} && \text{(Addition of Fractions)} \end{aligned}$$

The result is in lowest terms because 31 and 28 are relatively prime so we're done.

2. We could begin with the subtraction in parentheses, namely $\frac{47}{30} - \frac{7}{3}$, and then subtract that result from $\frac{5}{12}$. It's easier, however, to first distribute the negative across the quantity in parentheses and then use the Associative Property to perform all of the addition and

subtraction in one step.[5] The lowest common denominator[6] for all three fractions is 60.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{5}{12} - \left(\frac{47}{30} - \frac{7}{3}\right) &= \frac{5}{12} - \frac{47}{30} + \frac{7}{3} && \text{(Distribute the Negative)}\\
&= \frac{5}{12} \cdot \frac{5}{5} - \frac{47}{30} \cdot \frac{2}{2} + \frac{7}{3} \cdot \frac{20}{20} && \text{(Equivalent Fractions)}\\
&= \frac{25}{60} - \frac{94}{60} + \frac{140}{60} && \text{(Multiplication of Fractions)}\\
&= \frac{71}{60} && \text{(Addition and Subtraction of Fractions)}
\end{aligned}
$$

The numerator and denominator are relatively prime so the fraction is in lowest terms and we have our final answer.

3. What we are asked to simplify in this problem is known as a 'complex' or 'compound' fraction. Simply put, we have fractions within a fraction.[7] The longest division line[8] acts as a grouping symbol, quite literally dividing the compound fraction into a numerator (containing fractions) and a denominator (which in this case does not contain fractions). The first step to simplifying a compound fraction like this one is to see if you can simplify the little fractions inside it. To that end, we clean up the fractions in the numerator as follows.

---

[5]See the remark on page 28 about how we add $1 + 2 + 3$.

[6]We could have used $12 \cdot 30 \cdot 3 = 1080$ as our common denominator but then the numerators would become unnecessarily large. It's best to use the *lowest* common denominator.

[7]Fractionception, perhaps?

[8]Also called a 'vinculum'.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\dfrac{7}{3-5}-\dfrac{7}{3-5.21}}{5-5.21} &= \frac{\dfrac{7}{-2}-\dfrac{7}{-2.21}}{-0.21} \\
&= \frac{-\left(-\dfrac{7}{2}+\dfrac{7}{2.21}\right)}{0.21} && \text{(Properties of Negatives)} \\
&= \frac{\dfrac{7}{2}-\dfrac{7}{2.21}}{0.21} && \text{(Distribute the Negative)}
\end{aligned}
$$

We are left with a compound fraction with decimals. We could replace 2.21 with $\frac{221}{100}$ but that would make a mess.[9] It's better in this case to eliminate the decimal by multiplying the numerator and denominator of the fraction with the decimal in it by 100 (since $2.21 \cdot 100 = 221$ is an integer) as shown below.

$$
\frac{\dfrac{7}{2}-\dfrac{7}{2.21}}{0.21} = \frac{\dfrac{7}{2}-\dfrac{7 \cdot 100}{2.21 \cdot 100}}{0.21} = \frac{\dfrac{7}{2}-\dfrac{700}{221}}{0.21}
$$

We now perform the subtraction in the numerator and replace 0.21 with $\frac{21}{100}$ in the denominator. This will leave us with one fraction divided by another fraction. We finish by performing the 'division by a fraction is multiplication by the reciprocal' trick and then cancel any factors that we can.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\dfrac{7}{2}-\dfrac{700}{221}}{0.21} &= \frac{\dfrac{7}{2}\cdot\dfrac{221}{221}-\dfrac{700}{221}\cdot\dfrac{2}{2}}{\dfrac{21}{100}} &&= \frac{\dfrac{1547}{442}-\dfrac{1400}{442}}{\dfrac{21}{100}} \\
&= \frac{\dfrac{147}{442}}{\dfrac{21}{100}} = \frac{147}{442}\cdot\frac{100}{21} &&= \frac{14700}{9282} = \frac{350}{221}
\end{aligned}
$$

[9] Try it if you don't believe us.

The last step comes from the factorizations $14700 = 42 \cdot 350$ and $9282 = 42 \cdot 221$.

4. We are given another compound fraction to simplify and this time both the numerator and denominator contain fractions. As before, the longest division line acts as a grouping symbol to separate the numerator from the denominator.

$$\frac{\frac{12}{5} - \frac{7}{24}}{1 + \left(\frac{12}{5}\right)\left(\frac{7}{24}\right)} = \frac{\left(\frac{12}{5} - \frac{7}{24}\right)}{\left(1 + \left(\frac{12}{5}\right)\left(\frac{7}{24}\right)\right)}$$

Hence, one way to proceed is as before: simplify the numerator and the denominator then perform the 'division by a fraction is the multiplication by the reciprocal' trick. While there is nothing wrong with this approach, we'll use our Equivalent Fractions property to rid ourselves of the 'compound' nature of this fraction straight away. The idea is to multiply both the numerator and denominator by the lowest common denominator of each of the 'smaller' fractions - in this case, $24 \cdot 5 = 120$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\left(\frac{12}{5} - \frac{7}{24}\right)}{\left(1 + \left(\frac{12}{5}\right)\left(\frac{7}{24}\right)\right)} &= \frac{\left(\frac{12}{5} - \frac{7}{24}\right) \cdot 120}{\left(1 + \left(\frac{12}{5}\right)\left(\frac{7}{24}\right)\right) \cdot 120} \\
&\qquad \text{(Equivalent Fractions)} \\
&= \frac{\left(\frac{12}{5}\right)(120) - \left(\frac{7}{24}\right)(120)}{(1)(120) + \left(\frac{12}{5}\right)\left(\frac{7}{24}\right)(120)} \\
&\qquad \text{(Distributive Property)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{12 \cdot 120}{5} - \frac{7 \cdot 120}{24}}{120 + \frac{12 \cdot 7 \cdot 120}{5 \cdot 24}} \quad \text{(Multiply fractions)}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{12 \cdot 24 \cdot \cancel{5}}{\cancel{5}} - \frac{7 \cdot 5 \cdot \cancel{24}}{\cancel{24}}}{120 + \frac{12 \cdot 7 \cdot \cancel{5} \cdot \cancel{24}}{\cancel{5} \cdot \cancel{24}}}$$

(Factor and cancel)

$$= \frac{(12 \cdot 24) - (7 \cdot 5)}{120 + (12 \cdot 7)}$$

$$= \frac{288 - 35}{120 + 84}$$

$$= \frac{253}{204}$$

Since $253 = 11 \cdot 23$ and $204 = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 17$ have no common factors our result is in lowest terms which means we are done.

5. This fraction may look simpler than the one before it, but the negative signs and parentheses mean that we shouldn't get complacent. Again we note that the division line here acts as a grouping symbol. That is,

$$\frac{(2(2)+1)(-3-(-3))-5(4-7)}{4-2(3)} = \frac{((2(2)+1)(-3-(-3))-5(4-7))}{(4-2(3))}$$

This means that we should simplify the numerator and denominator first, then perform the division last. We tend to what's in parentheses first, giving multiplication priority over aiddition and subtraction.

$$\frac{(2(2)+1)(-3-(-3))-5(4-7)}{4-2(3)}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{(4+1)(-3+3) - 5(-3)}{4-6} \\
&= \frac{(5)(0) + 15}{-2} \\
&= \frac{15}{-2} \\
&= -\frac{15}{2} && \text{(Properties of Negatives)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $15 = 3 \cdot 5$ and 2 have no common factors, we are done.

6. In this problem, we have multiplication and subtraction. Multiplication takes precedence so we perform it first. Recall that to multiply fractions, we do *not* need to obtain common denominators; rather, we multiply the corresponding numerators together along with the corresponding denominators. Like the previous example, we have parentheses and negative signs for added fun!

$$\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)\left(\frac{5}{13}\right) - \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)\left(-\frac{12}{13}\right)$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{3 \cdot 5}{5 \cdot 13} - \frac{4 \cdot (-12)}{5 \cdot 13} && \text{(Multiply fractions)} \\
&= \frac{15}{65} - \frac{-48}{65} \\
&= \frac{15}{65} + \frac{48}{65} && \text{(Properties of Negatives)} \\
&= \frac{15+48}{65} && \text{(Add numerators)} \\
&= \frac{63}{65}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $64 = 3 \cdot 3 \cdot 7$ and $65 = 5 \cdot 13$ have no common factors, our answer $\frac{63}{65}$ is in lowest terms and we are done. □

Of the issues discussed in the previous set of examples none causes students more trouble than simplifying compound fractions. We presented two different methods for simplifying them: one in which we simplified the overall numerator and denominator and then performed the division and one in which we removed the compound nature of the fraction at the very beginning. We encourage the reader to go back and use both methods on each of the compound fractions presented. Keep in mind that when a compound fraction is encountered in the rest of the text it will usually be simplified using only one method and we may not choose your favorite method. Feel free to use the other one in your notes.

Next, we review exponents and their properties. Recall that $2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2$ can be written as 2^3 because exponential notation expresses repeated multiplication. In the expression 2^3, 2 is called the **base** and 3 is called the **exponent**. In order to generalize exponents from natural numbers to the integers, and eventually to rational and real numbers, it is helpful to think of the exponent as a count of the number of factors of the base we are multiplying by 1. For instance,

$$2^3 = 1 \cdot (\text{three factors of two}) = 1 \cdot (2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2) = 8.$$

From this, it makes sense that

$$2^0 = 1 \cdot (\text{zero factors of two}) = 1.$$

What about 2^{-3}? The '$-$' in the exponent indicates that we are 'taking away' three factors of two, essentially dividing by three factors of two. So,

$$2^{-3} = 1 \div (\text{three factors of two}) = 1 \div (2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2) = \frac{1}{2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2} = \frac{1}{8}.$$

We summarize the properties of integer exponents in Box A.2.8.

While it is important the state the Properties of Exponents, it is also equally important to take a moment to discuss one of the most common errors in Algebra. It is true that $(ab)^2 = a^2b^2$ (which some students refer to as 'distributing' the exponent to each factor) but you cannot do this sort of

Box A.2.8: Properties of Integer Exponents

Suppose a and b are nonzero real numbers and n and m are integers.

- **Product Rules:** $(ab)^n = a^n b^n$ and $a^n a^m = a^{n+m}$.
- **Quotient Rules:** $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^n = \frac{a^n}{b^n}$ and $\frac{a^n}{a^m} = a^{n-m}$.
- **Power Rule:** $(a^n)^m = a^{nm}$.
- **Negatives in Exponents:** $a^{-n} = \frac{1}{a^n}$.

  In particular, $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^{-n} = \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)^n = \frac{b^n}{a^n}$ and $\frac{1}{a^{-n}} = a^n$.
- **Zero Powers:** $a^0 = 1$.

  Note: The expression 0^0 is an indeterminate form.[a]
- **Powers of Zero:** For any *natural* number n, $0^n = 0$.

  Note: The expression 0^n for integers $n \leq 0$ is not defined.

[a]See the comment regarding '$\frac{0}{0}$' on page 31.

thing with addition. That is, in general, $(a+b)^2 \neq a^2 + b^2$. (For example, take $a = 3$ and $b = 4$.) The same goes for any other powers.

With exponents now in the mix, we can now state the Order of Operations Agreement as shown in Box A.2.9.

For example, $2 + 3 \cdot 4^2 = 2 + 3 \cdot 16 = 2 + 48 = 50$. Where students get into trouble is with things like -3^2. If we think of this as $0 - 3^2$, then it is clear that we evaluate the exponent first: $-3^2 = 0 - 3^2 = 0 - 9 = -9$. In general, we interpret $-a^n = -(a^n)$. If we want the 'negative' to also be raised to a power, we must write $(-a)^n$ instead. To summarize, $-3^2 = -9$ but $(-3)^2 = 9$.

Of course, many of the 'properties' we've stated in this section can be viewed as ways to circumvent the order of operations. We've already seen how the distributive property allows us to simplify $5(2 + x)$ by performing the indicated multiplication **before** the addition that's in parentheses. Similarly, consider trying to evaluate $2^{30172} \cdot 2^{-30169}$. The Order of Operations

Box A.2.9: Order of Operations Agreement

When evaluating an expression involving real numbers:

1. Evaluate any expressions in **p**arentheses (or other grouping symbols).
2. Evaluate **e**xponents.
3. Evaluate **m**ultiplication and **d**ivision as you read from left to right.
4. Evaluate **a**ddition and **s**ubtraction as you read from left to right.

We note that there are many useful mnemonic devices for remembering the order of operations.[a]

[a] Our favorite is '**P**lease **e**ntertain **m**y **d**ear **a**uld **S**asquatch.'

Agreement demands that the exponents be dealt with first, however, trying to compute 2^{30172} is a challenge, even for a calculator. One of the Product Rules of Exponents, however, allow us to rewrite this product, essentially performing the multiplication first, to get: $2^{30172-30169} = 2^3 = 8$.

Let's take a break and enjoy another example.

Example A.2.2. Perform the indicated operations and simplify.

1. $\dfrac{(4-2)(2\cdot 4)-(4)^2}{(4-2)^2}$
2. $12(-5)(-5+3)^{-4}+6(-5)^2(-4)(-5+3)^{-5}$
3. $\dfrac{\left(\dfrac{5\cdot 3^{51}}{4^{36}}\right)}{\left(\dfrac{5\cdot 3^{49}}{4^{34}}\right)}$
4. $\dfrac{2\left(\dfrac{5}{12}\right)^{-1}}{1-\left(\dfrac{5}{12}\right)^{-2}}$

Solution.

1. We begin working inside the parentheses then deal with the exponents before working through the other operations. As we saw in

Example A.2.1, the division here acts as a grouping symbol, so we save the division to the end.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{(4-2)(2\cdot 4)-(4)^2}{(4-2)^2} &= \frac{(2)(8)-(4)^2}{(2)^2} = \frac{(2)(8)-16}{4}\\ &= \frac{16-16}{4} = \frac{0}{4} = 0\end{aligned}$$

2. As before, we simplify what's in the parentheses first, then work our way through the exponents, multiplication, and finally, the addition.

$$\begin{aligned}&12(-5)(-5+3)^{-4}+6(-5)^2(-4)(-5+3)^{-5}\\ &= 12(-5)(-2)^{-4}+6(-5)^2(-4)(-2)^{-5}\\ &= 12(-5)\left(\frac{1}{(-2)^4}\right)+6(-5)^2(-4)\left(\frac{1}{(-2)^5}\right)\\ &= 12(-5)\left(\frac{1}{16}\right)+6(25)(-4)\left(\frac{1}{-32}\right)\\ &= (-60)\left(\frac{1}{16}\right)+(-600)\left(\frac{1}{-32}\right)\\ &= \frac{-60}{16}+\left(\frac{-600}{-32}\right)\\ &= \frac{-15\cdot\cancel{4}}{4\cdot\cancel{4}}+\frac{-75\cdot\cancel{8}}{-4\cdot\cancel{8}}\\ &= \frac{-15}{4}+\frac{-75}{-4}\\ &= \frac{-15}{4}+\frac{75}{4}\\ &= \frac{-15+75}{4}\\ &= \frac{60}{4}\\ &= 15\end{aligned}$$

3. The Order of Operations Agreement mandates that we work within each set of parentheses first, giving precedence to the exponents, then the multiplication, and, finally the division. The trouble with this approach is that the exponents are so large that computation becomes a trifle unwieldy. What we observe, however, is that the bases of the exponential expressions, 3 and 4, occur in both the numerator and denominator of the compound fraction. This gives us hope that we can use some of the Properties of Exponents (the Quotient Rule, in particular) to help us out. Our first step here is to invert and multiply. We see immediately that the 5's cancel after which we group the powers of 3 together and the powers of 4 together and apply the properties of exponents.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\left(\dfrac{5 \cdot 3^{51}}{4^{36}}\right)}{\left(\dfrac{5 \cdot 3^{49}}{4^{34}}\right)} &= \frac{5 \cdot 3^{51}}{4^{36}} \cdot \frac{4^{34}}{5 \cdot 3^{49}} &&= \frac{\cancel{5} \cdot 3^{51} \cdot 4^{34}}{\cancel{5} \cdot 3^{49} \cdot 4^{36}} \\
&= \frac{3^{51}}{3^{49}} \cdot \frac{4^{34}}{4^{36}} &&= 3^{51-49} \cdot 4^{34-36} \\
&= 3^2 \cdot 4^{-2} &&= 3^2 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{4^2}\right) \\
&= 9 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{16}\right) &&= \frac{9}{16}
\end{aligned}$$

4. We have yet another instance of a compound fraction so our first order of business is to rid ourselves of the compound nature of the fraction like we did in Example A.2.1. To do this, however, we need to tend to the exponents first so that we can determine what com-

mon denominator is needed to simplify the fraction.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{2\left(\dfrac{5}{12}\right)^{-1}}{1-\left(\dfrac{5}{12}\right)^{-2}} &= \frac{2\left(\dfrac{12}{5}\right)}{1-\left(\dfrac{12}{5}\right)^{2}} \\
&= \frac{\left(\dfrac{24}{5}\right)}{1-\left(\dfrac{12^2}{5^2}\right)} \\
&= \frac{\left(\dfrac{24}{5}\right)}{1-\left(\dfrac{144}{25}\right)} \\
&= \frac{\left(\dfrac{24}{5}\right)\cdot 25}{\left(1-\dfrac{144}{25}\right)\cdot 25} \\
&= \frac{\left(\dfrac{24\cdot 5\cdot \cancel{5}}{\cancel{5}}\right)}{\left(1\cdot 25-\dfrac{144\cdot \cancel{25}}{\cancel{25}}\right)} \\
&= \frac{120}{25-144} \\
&= \frac{120}{-119} = -\frac{120}{119}
\end{aligned}$$

Since 120 and 119 have no common factors, we are done. □

One of the places where the properties of exponents play an important role is in the use of **Scientific Notation**. The basis for scientific notation is that since we use <u>dec</u>imals (base ten numerals) to represent real numbers, we can adjust where the decimal point lies by multiplying by an appropriate power of 10. This allows scientists and engineers to focus in on the 'significant' digits[10] of a number - the nonzero values - and adjust for the decimal places later. For instance, $-621 = -6.21 \times 10^2$ and $0.023 = 2.3 \times 10^{-2}$. Notice here that we revert to using the familiar '$\times$' to indicate multiplication.[11] In general, we arrange the real number so exactly one non-zero digit appears to the left of the decimal point. We make this idea precise in the following:

Definition A.2.1. A real number is written in **Scientific Notation** if it has the form $\pm n.d_1 d_2 \ldots \times 10^k$ where n is a natural number, d_1, d_2, etc., are whole numbers, and k is an integer.

On calculators, scientific notation may appear using an 'E' or 'EE' as opposed to the $\times$ symbol. For instance, while we will write 6.02×10^{23} in the text, the calculator may display 6.02 E 23 or 6.02 EE 23.

Example A.2.3. Perform the indicated operations and simplify. Write your final answer in scientific notation, rounded to two decimal places.

1. $\dfrac{\left(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\right)\left(3.14 \times 10^{9}\right)}{1.78 \times 10^{23}}$
2. $\left(2.13 \times 10^{53}\right)^{100}$

Solution.

1. As mentioned earlier, the point of scientific notation is to separate out the 'significant' parts of a calculation and deal with the powers of 10 later. In that spirit, we separate out the powers of 10 in both the numerator and the denominator and proceed as follows

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\left(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\right)\left(3.14 \times 10^{9}\right)}{1.78 \times 10^{23}} &= \frac{(6.626)(3.14)}{1.78} \cdot \frac{10^{-34} \cdot 10^{9}}{10^{23}} \\ &= \frac{20.80564}{1.78} \cdot \frac{10^{-34+9}}{10^{23}} \end{aligned}$$

[10] Awesome pun!

[11] This is the 'notable exception' we alluded to earlier.

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= 11.685\ldots \cdot \frac{10^{-25}}{10^{23}} \\
&= 11.685\ldots \times 10^{-25-23} \\
&= 11.685\ldots \times 10^{-48}
\end{aligned}
$$

We are asked to write our final answer in scientific notation, rounded to two decimal places. To do this, we note that $11.685\ldots = 1.1685\ldots \times 10^1$, so

$$
\begin{aligned}
11.685\ldots \times 10^{-48} &= 1.1685\ldots \times 10^1 \times 10^{-48} \\
&= 1.1685\ldots \times 10^{1-48} = 1.1685\ldots \times 10^{-47}
\end{aligned}
$$

Our final answer, rounded to two decimal places, is 1.17×10^{-47}.

We could have done that whole computation on a calculator so why did we bother doing any of this by hand in the first place? The answer lies in the next example.

2. If you try to compute $\left(2.13 \times 10^{53}\right)^{100}$ using most hand-held calculators, you'll most likely get an 'overflow' error. It is possible, however, to use the calculator in combination with the properties of exponents to compute this number. Using properties of exponents, we get:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(2.13 \times 10^{53}\right)^{100} &= (2.13)^{100}\left(10^{53}\right)^{100} \\
&= \left(6.885\ldots \times 10^{32}\right)\left(10^{53\times 100}\right) \\
&= \left(6.885\ldots \times 10^{32}\right)\left(10^{5300}\right) \\
&= 6.885\ldots \times 10^{32} \cdot 10^{5300} \\
&= 6.885\ldots \times 10^{5332}
\end{aligned}
$$

To two decimal places our answer is 6.88×10^{5332}. $\square$

We close our review of real number arithmetic with a discussion of roots and radical notation. Just as subtraction and division were defined in terms of the inverse of addition and multiplication, respectively, we define roots by undoing natural number exponents.

Definition A.2.2. Let a be a real number and let n be a natural number. If n is odd, then the **principal n^th^ root** of a (denoted $\sqrt[n]{a}$) is the unique real number satisfying $\left(\sqrt[n]{a}\right)^n = a$. If n is even, $\sqrt[n]{a}$ is defined similarly provided $a \geq 0$ and $\sqrt[n]{a} \geq 0$. The number n is called the **index** of the root and the number a is called the **radicand**. For $n = 2$, we write $\sqrt{a}$ instead of $\sqrt[2]{a}$.

The reasons for the added stipulations for even-indexed roots in Definition A.2.2 can be found in the Properties of Negatives. First, for all real numbers, $x^{\text{even power}} \geq 0$, which means it is never negative. Thus if a is a *negative* real number, there are no real numbers x with $x^{\text{even power}} = a$. This is why if n is even, $\sqrt[n]{a}$ only exists if $a \geq 0$. The second restriction for even-indexed roots is that $\sqrt[n]{a} \geq 0$. This comes from the fact that $x^{\text{even power}} = (-x)^{\text{even power}}$, and we require $\sqrt[n]{a}$ to have just one value. So even though $2^4 = 16$ and $(-2)^4 = 16$, we require $\sqrt[4]{16} = 2$ and ignore -2.

Dealing with odd powers is much easier. For example, $x^3 = -8$ has one and only one real solution, namely $x = -2$, which means not only does $\sqrt[3]{-8}$ exist, there is only one choice, namely $\sqrt[3]{-8} = -2$. Of course, when it comes to solving $x^{5213} = -117$, it's not so clear that there is one and only one real solution, let alone that the solution is $\sqrt[5213]{-117}$. Such pills are easier to swallow once we've thought a bit about such equations graphically,[12] and ultimately, these things come from the completeness property of the real numbers mentioned earlier.

We list properties of radicals below as a 'theorem' as opposed to a definition since they can be justified using the properties of exponents.

[12]See Chapter **??**.

Theorem A.2.1. Properties of Radicals: Let a and b be real numbers and let m and n be natural numbers. If $\sqrt[n]{a}$ and $\sqrt[n]{b}$ are real numbers, then

- **Product Rule:** $\sqrt[n]{ab} = \sqrt[n]{a}\,\sqrt[n]{b}$
- **Quotient Rule:** $\sqrt[n]{\dfrac{a}{b}} = \dfrac{\sqrt[n]{a}}{\sqrt[n]{b}}$, provided $b \neq 0$.
- **Power Rule:** $\sqrt[n]{a^m} = \left(\sqrt[n]{a}\right)^m$

The proof of Theorem A.2.1 is based on the definition of the principal nth root and the Properties of Exponents. To establish the product rule, consider the following. If n is odd, then by definition $\sqrt[n]{ab}$ is the unique real number such that $(\sqrt[n]{ab})^n = ab$. Given that $\left(\sqrt[n]{a}\,\sqrt[n]{b}\right)^n = \left(\sqrt[n]{a}\right)^n\left(\sqrt[n]{b}\right)^n = ab$ as well, it must be the case that $\sqrt[n]{ab} = \sqrt[n]{a}\,\sqrt[n]{b}$. If n is even, then $\sqrt[n]{ab}$ is the unique non-negative real number such that $(\sqrt[n]{ab})^n = ab$. Note that since n is even, $\sqrt[n]{a}$ and $\sqrt[n]{b}$ are also non-negative thus $\sqrt[n]{a}\sqrt[n]{b} \geq 0$ as well. Proceeding as above, we find that $\sqrt[n]{ab} = \sqrt[n]{a}\,\sqrt[n]{b}$. The quotient rule is proved similarly and is left as an exercise. The power rule results from repeated application of the product rule, so long as $\sqrt[n]{a}$ is a real number to start with.[13] We leave that as an exercise as well.

We pause here to point out one of the most common errors students make when working with radicals. Obviously $\sqrt{9} = 3$, $\sqrt{16} = 4$ and $\sqrt{9+16} = \sqrt{25} = 5$. Thus we can clearly see that $5 = \sqrt{25} = \sqrt{9+16} \neq \sqrt{9} + \sqrt{16} = 3 + 4 = 7$ because we all know that $5 \neq 7$. The authors urge you to never consider 'distributing' roots or exponents. It's wrong and no good will come of it because in general $\sqrt[n]{a+b} \neq \sqrt[n]{a} + \sqrt[n]{b}$.

Since radicals have properties inherited from exponents, they are often written as such. We define rational exponents in terms of radicals in the box below.

[13] Otherwise we'd run into an interesting paradox. See Section A.11.

Definition A.2.3. Let a be a real number, let m be an integer and let n be a natural number.

- $a^{\frac{1}{n}} = \sqrt[n]{a}$ whenever $\sqrt[n]{a}$ is a real number.[a]
- $a^{\frac{m}{n}} = \left(\sqrt[n]{a}\right)^m = \sqrt[n]{a^m}$ whenever $\sqrt[n]{a}$ is a real number.

[a] If n is even we need $a \geq 0$.

It would make life really nice if the rational exponents defined in Definition A.2.3 had all of the same properties that integer exponents have as listed on page 42 - but they don't. Why not? Let's look at an example to see what goes wrong. Consider the Product Rule which says that $(ab)^n = a^n b^n$ and let $a = -16$, $b = -81$ and $n = \frac{1}{4}$. Plugging the values into the Product Rule yields the equation $((-16)(-81))^{1/4} = (-16)^{1/4}(-81)^{1/4}$. The left side of this equation is $1296^{1/4}$ which equals 6 but the right side is undefined because neither root is a real number. Would it help if, when it comes to even roots (as signified by even denominators in the fractional exponents), we ensure that everything they apply to is non-negative? That works for some of the rules - we leave it as an exercise to see which ones - but does not work for the Power Rule.

Consider the expression $\left(a^{2/3}\right)^{3/2}$. Applying the usual laws of exponents, we'd be tempted to simplify this as $\left(a^{2/3}\right)^{3/2} = a^{\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{3}{2}} = a^1 = a$. However, if we substitute $a = -1$ and apply Definition A.2.3, we find $(-1)^{2/3} = \left(\sqrt[3]{-1}\right)^2 = (-1)^2 = 1$ so that $\left((-1)^{2/3}\right)^{3/2} = 1^{3/2} = \left(\sqrt{1}\right)^3 = 1^3 = 1$. Thus in this case we have $\left(a^{2/3}\right)^{3/2} \neq a$ even though all of the roots were defined. It is true, however, that $\left(a^{3/2}\right)^{2/3} = a$ and we leave this for the reader to show. The moral of the story is that when simplifying powers of rational exponents where the base is negative or worse, unknown, it's usually best to rewrite them as radicals.[14]

Example A.2.4. Perform the indicated operations and simplify.

[14] Much to Jeff's chagrin. He's fairly traditional and therefore doesn't care much for radicals.

1. $\dfrac{-(-4) - \sqrt{(-4)^2 - 4(2)(-3)}}{2(2)}$

2. $\dfrac{2\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{3}\right)}{1 - \left(\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{3}\right)^2}$

3. $(\sqrt[3]{-2} - \sqrt[3]{-54})^2$

4. $2\left(\dfrac{9}{4} - 3\right)^{1/3} + 2\left(\dfrac{9}{4}\right)\left(\dfrac{1}{3}\right)\left(\dfrac{9}{4} - 3\right)^{-2/3}$

Solution.

1. We begin in the numerator and note that the radical here acts a grouping symbol,[15] so our first order of business is to simplify the radicand.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{-(-4) - \sqrt{(-4)^2 - 4(2)(-3)}}{2(2)} \\
&= \frac{-(-4) - \sqrt{16 - 4(2)(-3)}}{2(2)} \\
&= \frac{-(-4) - \sqrt{16 - 4(-6)}}{2(2)} \\
&= \frac{-(-4) - \sqrt{16 - (-24)}}{2(2)} \\
&= \frac{-(-4) - \sqrt{16 + 24}}{2(2)} \\
&= \frac{-(-4) - \sqrt{40}}{2(2)}
\end{aligned}$$

As you may recall, 40 can be factored using a perfect square as $40 = 4 \cdot 10$ so we use the product rule of radicals to write $\sqrt{40} =$

[15]The line extending horizontally from the square root symbol $\sqrt{\ }$ is, you guessed it, another vinculum.

$\sqrt{4 \cdot 10} = \sqrt{4}\sqrt{10} = 2\sqrt{10}$. This lets us factor a '2' out of both terms in the numerator, eventually allowing us to cancel it with a factor of 2 in the denominator.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{-(-4) - \sqrt{40}}{2(2)} &= \frac{-(-4) - 2\sqrt{10}}{2(2)} &&= \frac{4 - 2\sqrt{10}}{2(2)} \\
&= \frac{2 \cdot 2 - 2\sqrt{10}}{2(2)} &&= \frac{2(2 - \sqrt{10})}{2(2)} \\
&= \frac{\cancel{2}(2 - \sqrt{10})}{\cancel{2}(2)} &&= \frac{2 - \sqrt{10}}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

Since the numerator and denominator have no more common factors,[16] we are done.

2. Once again we have a compound fraction, so we first simplify the exponent in the denominator to see which factor we'll need to multiply by in order to clean up the fraction.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{2\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}\right)}{1 - \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}\right)^2} &= \frac{2\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}\right)}{1 - \left(\frac{(\sqrt{3})^2}{3^2}\right)} &&= \frac{2\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}\right)}{1 - \left(\frac{3}{9}\right)} \\
&= \frac{2\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}\right)}{1 - \left(\frac{1 \cdot \cancel{3}}{3 \cdot \cancel{3}}\right)} &&= \frac{2\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}\right)}{1 - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)} \\
&= \frac{2\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}\right) \cdot 3}{\left(1 - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)\right) \cdot 3} &&= \frac{\frac{2 \cdot \sqrt{3} \cdot \cancel{3}}{\cancel{3}}}{1 \cdot 3 - \frac{1 \cdot \cancel{3}}{\cancel{3}}} \\
&= \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{3 - 1} &&= \frac{\cancel{2}\sqrt{3}}{\cancel{2}} = \sqrt{3}
\end{aligned}$$

[16] Do you see why we aren't 'canceling' the remaining 2's?

3. Working inside the parentheses, we first encounter $\sqrt[3]{-2}$. While the -2 isn't a perfect cube,[17] we may think of $-2 = (-1)(2)$. Since $(-1)^3 = -1$, which *is* a perfect cube, we may write $\sqrt[3]{-2} = \sqrt[3]{(-1)(2)} = \sqrt[3]{-1}\sqrt[3]{2} = -\sqrt[3]{2}$. When it comes to $\sqrt[3]{54}$, we may write it as $\sqrt[3]{(-27)(2)} = \sqrt[3]{-27}\sqrt[3]{2} = -3\sqrt[3]{2}$. So,

$$\sqrt[3]{-2} - \sqrt[3]{-54} = -\sqrt[3]{2} - (-3\sqrt[3]{2}) = -\sqrt[3]{2} + 3\sqrt[3]{2}.$$

At this stage, we can simplify $-\sqrt[3]{2} + 3\sqrt[3]{2} = 2\sqrt[3]{2}$. You may remember this as being called 'combining like radicals,' but it is in fact just another application of the distributive property:

$$-\sqrt[3]{2} + 3\sqrt[3]{2} = (-1)\sqrt[3]{2} + 3\sqrt[3]{2} = (-1+3)\sqrt[3]{2} = 2\sqrt[3]{2}.$$

Putting all this together, we get:

$$\begin{aligned} (\sqrt[3]{-2} - \sqrt[3]{-54})^2 &= (-\sqrt[3]{2} + 3\sqrt[3]{2})^2 &&= (2\sqrt[3]{2})^2 \\ &= 2^2(\sqrt[3]{2})^2 = 4\sqrt[3]{2^2} &&= 4\sqrt[3]{4} \end{aligned}$$

There are no perfect integer cubes which are factors of 4 (apart from 1, of course), so we are done.

4. We start working in the parentheses and get a common denominator to subtract the fractions:

$$\frac{9}{4} - 3 = \frac{9}{4} - \frac{3 \cdot 4}{1 \cdot 4} = \frac{9}{4} - \frac{12}{4} = \frac{-3}{4}$$

The denominators in the fractional exponents are odd, so we can proceed by using the properties of exponents:

[17] Of an integer, that is!

$$
\begin{aligned}
2\left(\frac{9}{4}-3\right)^{1/3} &+ 2\left(\frac{9}{4}\right)\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)\left(\frac{9}{4}-3\right)^{-2/3} \\
&= 2\left(\frac{-3}{4}\right)^{1/3} + 2\left(\frac{9}{4}\right)\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)\left(\frac{-3}{4}\right)^{-2/3} \\
&= 2\left(\frac{(-3)^{1/3}}{(4)^{1/3}}\right) + 2\left(\frac{9}{4}\right)\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)\left(\frac{4}{-3}\right)^{2/3} \\
&= 2\left(\frac{(-3)^{1/3}}{(4)^{1/3}}\right) + 2\left(\frac{9}{4}\right)\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)\left(\frac{(4)^{2/3}}{(-3)^{2/3}}\right) \\
&= \frac{2\cdot(-3)^{1/3}}{4^{1/3}} + \frac{2\cdot 9\cdot 1\cdot 4^{2/3}}{4\cdot 3\cdot(-3)^{2/3}} \\
&= \frac{2\cdot(-3)^{1/3}}{4^{1/3}} + \frac{\cancel{2}\cdot 3\cdot \cancel{3}\cdot 4^{2/3}}{2\cdot\cancel{2}\cdot\cancel{3}\cdot(-3)^{2/3}} \\
&= \frac{2\cdot(-3)^{1/3}}{4^{1/3}} + \frac{3\cdot 4^{2/3}}{2\cdot(-3)^{2/3}}
\end{aligned}
$$

At this point, we could start looking for common denominators but it turns out that these fractions reduce even further. Since $4 = 2^2$, $4^{1/3} = (2^2)^{1/3} = 2^{2/3}$. Similarly, $4^{2/3} = (2^2)^{2/3} = 2^{4/3}$. The expressions $(-3)^{1/3}$ and $(-3)^{2/3}$ contain negative bases so we proceed with caution and convert them back to radical notation to get: $(-3)^{1/3} = \sqrt[3]{-3} = -\sqrt[3]{3} = -3^{1/3}$ and $(-3)^{2/3} = (\sqrt[3]{-3})^2 = (-\sqrt[3]{3})^2 = (\sqrt[3]{3})^2 = 3^{2/3}$. Hence:

$$
\frac{2\cdot(-3)^{1/3}}{4^{1/3}} + \frac{3\cdot 4^{2/3}}{2\cdot(-3)^{2/3}}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{2 \cdot (-3^{1/3})}{2^{2/3}} + \frac{3 \cdot 2^{4/3}}{2 \cdot 3^{2/3}} \\
&= \frac{2^1 \cdot (-3^{1/3})}{2^{2/3}} + \frac{3^1 \cdot 2^{4/3}}{2^1 \cdot 3^{2/3}} \\
&= 2^{1-2/3} \cdot (-3^{1/3}) + 3^{1-2/3} \cdot 2^{4/3-1} \\
&= 2^{1/3} \cdot (-3^{1/3}) + 3^{1/3} \cdot 2^{1/3} \\
&= -2^{1/3} \cdot 3^{1/3} + 3^{1/3} \cdot 2^{1/3} \\
&= 0
\end{aligned}
$$

□

We close this section with a note about simplifying. In the preceding examples we used "nice" numbers because we wanted to show as many properties as we could per example. This then begs the question "What happens when the numbers are *not* nice?" Unfortunately, the answer is "Not much simplifying can be done." Take, for example,

$$\frac{\sqrt{7}}{\pi} - \frac{3}{\pi^2} + \frac{4}{\sqrt{11}} = \frac{\pi\sqrt{77} - 3\sqrt{11} + 4\pi^2}{\pi^2\sqrt{11}}$$

Sadly, that's as good as it gets.

A.2.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 33., perform the indicated operations and simplify.

1. $5 - 2 + 3$
2. $5 - (2 + 3)$
3. $\dfrac{2}{3} - \dfrac{4}{7}$
4. $\dfrac{3}{8} + \dfrac{5}{12}$
5. $\dfrac{5 - 3}{-2 - 4}$
6. $\dfrac{2(-3)}{3 - (-3)}$
7. $\dfrac{2(3) - (4 - 1)}{2^2 + 1}$
8. $\dfrac{4 - 5.8}{2 - 2.1}$
9. $\dfrac{1 - 2(-3)}{5(-3) + 7}$
10. $\dfrac{5(3) - 7}{2(3)^2 - 3(3) - 9}$
11. $\dfrac{2((-1)^2 - 1)}{((-1)^2 + 1)^2}$
12. $\dfrac{(-2)^2 - (-2) - 6}{(-2)^2 - 4}$
13. $\dfrac{3 - \frac{4}{9}}{-2 - (-3)}$
14. $\dfrac{\frac{2}{3} - \frac{4}{5}}{4 - \frac{7}{10}}$
15. $\dfrac{2\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)}{1 - \left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^2}$
16. $\dfrac{1 - \left(\frac{5}{3}\right)\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)}{1 + \left(\frac{5}{3}\right)\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)}$
17. $\left(\dfrac{2}{3}\right)^{-5}$
18. $3^{-1} - 4^{-2}$
19. $\dfrac{1 + 2^{-3}}{3 - 4^{-1}}$
20. $\dfrac{3 \cdot 5^{100}}{12 \cdot 5^{98}}$
21. $\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}$
22. $\sqrt{12} - \sqrt{75}$
23. $(-8)^{2/3} - 9^{-3/2}$
24. $\left(-\frac{32}{9}\right)^{-3/5}$
25. $\sqrt{(3 - 4)^2 + (5 - 2)^2}$
26. $\sqrt{(2 - (-1))^2 + \left(\frac{1}{2} - 3\right)^2}$
27. $\sqrt{(\sqrt{5} - 2\sqrt{5})^2 + (\sqrt{18} - \sqrt{8})^2}$
28. $\dfrac{-12 + \sqrt{18}}{21}$
29. $\dfrac{-2 - \sqrt{(2)^2 - 4(3)(-1)}}{2(3)}$
30. $\dfrac{-(-4) + \sqrt{(-4)^2 - 4(1)(-1)}}{2(1)}$
31. $2(-5)(-5 + 1)^{-1} + (-5)^2(-1)(-5 + 1)^{-2}$
32. $3\sqrt{2(4) + 1} + 3(4)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(2(4) + 1)^{-1/2}(2)$
33. $2(-7)\sqrt[3]{1 - (-7)} + (-7)^2\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)(1 - (-7))^{-2/3}(-1)$
34. With the help of your calculator, find $(3.14 \times 10^{87})^{117}$. Write your final answer, using scientific notation, rounded to two decimal places. (See Example A.2.3.)

35. Prove the Quotient Rule and Power Rule stated in Theorem A.2.1.
36. Discuss with your classmates how you might attempt to simplify the following.

37. $\sqrt{\dfrac{1-\sqrt{2}}{1+\sqrt{2}}}$

38. $\sqrt[5]{3}-\sqrt[3]{5}$

39. $\dfrac{\pi+7}{\pi}$

A.2.2 Answers

1. 6
2. 0
3. $\frac{2}{21}$
4. $\frac{19}{24}$
5. $-\frac{1}{3}$
6. -1
7. $\frac{3}{5}$
8. 18
9. $-\frac{7}{8}$
10. Undefined.
11. 0
12. Undefined.
13. $\frac{23}{9}$
14. $-\frac{4}{99}$
15. $-\frac{24}{7}$
16. 0
17. $\frac{243}{32}$
18. $\frac{13}{48}$
19. $\frac{9}{22}$
20. $\frac{25}{4}$
21. 5
22. $-3\sqrt{3}$
23. $\frac{107}{27}$
24. $-\frac{3\sqrt[5]{3}}{8} = -\frac{3^{6/5}}{8}$
25. $\sqrt{10}$
26. $\frac{\sqrt{61}}{2}$
27. $\sqrt{7}$
28. $\frac{-4+\sqrt{2}}{7}$
29. -1
30. $2+\sqrt{5}$
31. $\frac{15}{16}$
32. 13
33. $-\frac{385}{12}$
34. 1.38×10^{10237}

A.3 The Cartesian Plane

A.3.1 The Cartesian Coordinate Plane

In order to visualize the pure excitement that is Precalculus, we need to unite Algebra and Geometry. Simply put, we must find a way to draw algebraic things. Let's start with possibly the greatest mathematical achievement of all time: the **Cartesian Coordinate Plane**.[1] Imagine two real number lines crossing at a right angle at 0 as drawn in Figure A.3.1.

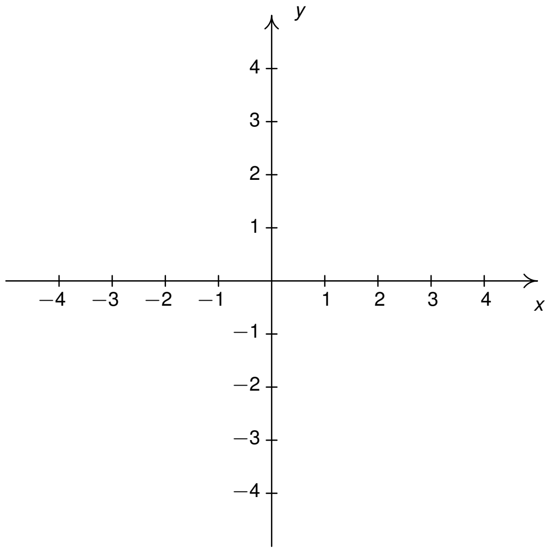


Figure A.3.1: Cartesian Coordinate Plane

The horizontal number line is usually called the ***x*-axis** while the vertical number line is usually called the ***y*-axis**. As with things in the 'real' world, however, it's best not to get too caught up with labels. Think of x and y as generic label placeholders, in much the same way as the variables x and y are placeholders for real numbers. The letters we choose to identify with the axes depend on the context. For example, if we were plotting the rela-

[1]So named in honor of René Descartes[2].

tionship between time and the number of Sasquatch sightings, we might label the horizontal axis as the t-axis (for 'time') and the vertical axis the N-axis (for 'number' of sightings.) As with the usual number line, we imagine these axes extending off indefinitely in both directions.[3] Having two number lines allows us to locate the positions of points off of the number lines as well as points on the lines themselves.

For example, consider the point P in Figure A.3.2. To use the numbers on the axes to label this point, we imagine dropping a vertical line from the x-axis to P and extending a horizontal line from the y-axis to P. This process is sometimes called 'projecting' the point P to the x- (respectively y-) axis. We then describe the point P using the **ordered pair** $(2, -4)$. The first number in the ordered pair is called the **abscissa** or ***x*-coordinate** and the second is called the **ordinate** or ***y*-coordinate**. Again, the names of the coordinates can vary depending on the context of the application. If, as in the previous paragraph, the horizontal axis represented time and the vertical axis represented the number of Sasquatch sightings, the first coordinate would be called the t-coordinate and the second coordinate would be the N-coordinate. What's important is that we maintain the convention that the abscissa (first coordinate) always corresponds to the horizontal position, while the ordinate (second coordinate) always corresponds to the vertical position. Taken together, the ordered pair $(2, -4)$ comprise the **Cartesian coordinates**[4] of the point P.

In practice, the distinction between a point and its coordinates is blurred; for example, we often speak of 'the point $(2, -4)$'. We can think of $(2, -4)$ as instructions on how to reach P from the **origin** $(0, 0)$ by moving 2 units to the right and 4 units downwards. Notice that the order in the ordered pair is important, as are the signs of the numbers in the pair.

If we wish to plot the point $(-4, 2)$, we would move to the left 4 units from the origin and then move upwards 2 units, as shown in Figure A.3.3.

When we speak of the Cartesian Coordinate Plane, we mean the set of all

[3] Usually extending off towards infinity is indicated by arrows, but here, the arrows are used to indicate the *direction* of increasing values of x and y.

[4] Also called the 'rectangular coordinates' of P – see Section **??** for more details.

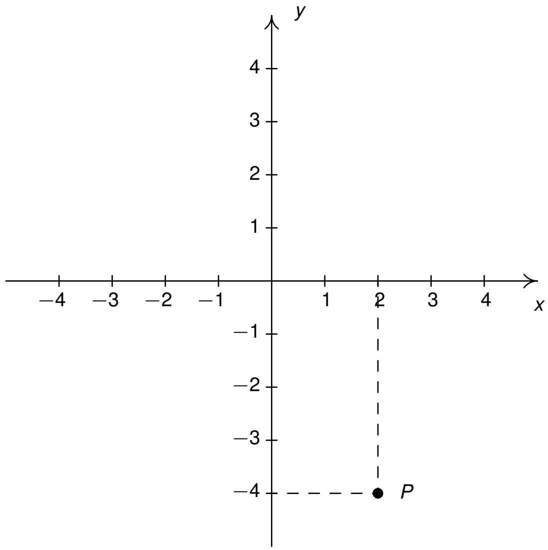


Figure A.3.2: Plotting $(2, -4)$

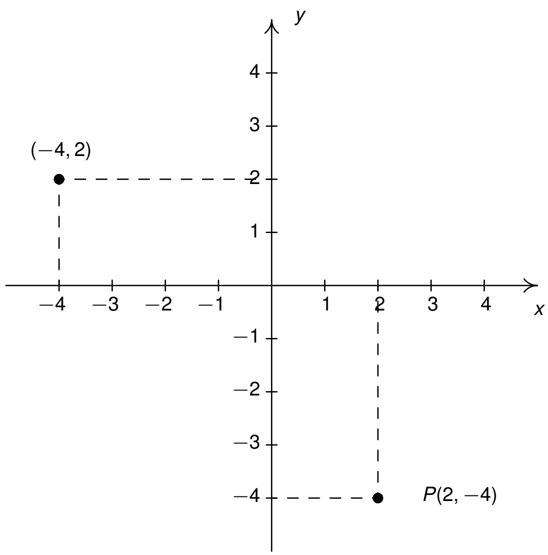


Figure A.3.3: Plotting $(-4, 2)$

possible ordered pairs (x, y) as x and y take values from the real numbers. Box A.3.1 shows a summary of some basic, but nonetheless important, facts about Cartesian coordinates.

Box A.3.1: Important Facts about the Cartesian Coordinate Plane

- (a, b) and (c, d) represent the same point in the plane if and only if $a = c$ and $b = d$.
- (x, y) lies on the x-axis if and only if $y = 0$.
- (x, y) lies on the y-axis if and only if $x = 0$.
- The origin is the point $(0, 0)$. It is the only point common to both axes.

Example A.3.1. Plot the following points: $A(5, 8)$, $B\left(-\frac{5}{2}, 3\right)$, $C(-5.8, -3)$, $D(4.5, -1)$, $E(5, 0)$, $F(0, 5)$, $G(-7, 0)$, $H(0, -9)$, $O(0, 0)$.(The letter O is almost always reserved for the origin.)

Solution. Refer Figure A.3.4. To plot these points, we start at the origin and move to the right if the x-coordinate is positive; to the left if it is negative. Next, we move up if the y-coordinate is positive or down if it is negative. If the x-coordinate is 0, we start at the origin and move along the y-axis only. If the y-coordinate is 0 we move along the x-axis only. □

The axes divide the plane into four regions called **quadrants**. They are labeled with Roman numerals and proceed counterclockwise around the plane as shown in Figure A.3.5.

For example, $(1, 2)$ lies in Quadrant I, $(-1, 2)$ in Quadrant II, $(-1, -2)$ in Quadrant III and $(1, -2)$ in Quadrant IV. If a point other than the origin happens to lie on the axes, we typically refer to that point as lying on the positive or negative x-axis (if $y = 0$) or on the positive or negative y-axis (if $x = 0$). For example, $(0, 4)$ lies on the positive y-axis whereas $(-117, 0)$ lies on the negative x-axis. Such points do not belong to any of the four quadrants.

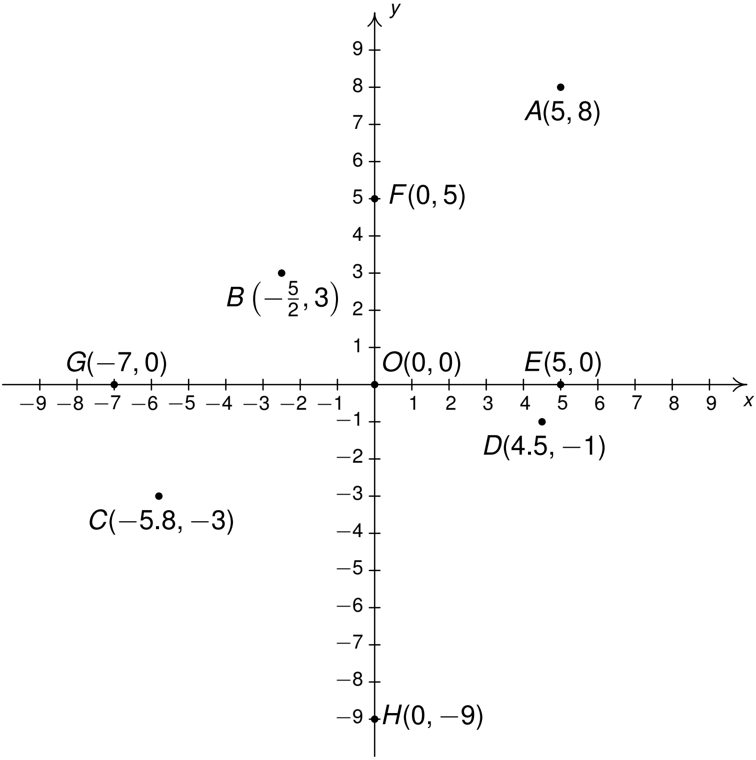


Figure A.3.4: Plotting points

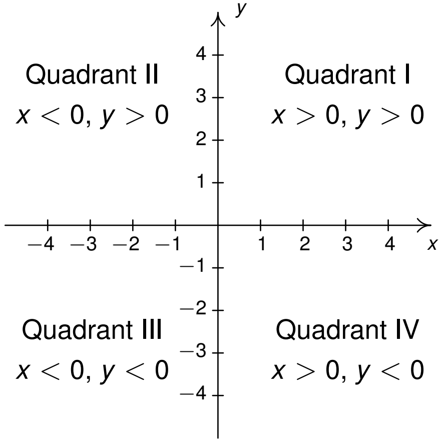


Figure A.3.5: Quadrants

One of the most important concepts in all of Mathematics is **symmetry**.[5] There are many types of symmetry in Mathematics, but three of them can be discussed easily using Cartesian Coordinates.

Definition A.3.1. Two points (a, b) and (c, d) in the plane are said to be

- **symmetric about the *x*-axis** if $a = c$ and $b = -d$
- **symmetric about the *y*-axis** if $a = -c$ and $b = d$
- **symmetric about the origin** if $a = -c$ and $b = -d$

Schematically, as shown in Figure A.3.6, P and S are symmetric about the x-axis, as are Q and R; P and Q are symmetric about the y-axis, as are R and S; and P and R are symmetric about the origin, as are Q and S.

Example A.3.2. Let P be the point $(-2, 3)$. Find the points which are symmetric to P about the:

1. x-axis
2. y-axis
3. origin

[5] According to Carl. Jeff thinks symmetry is overrated.

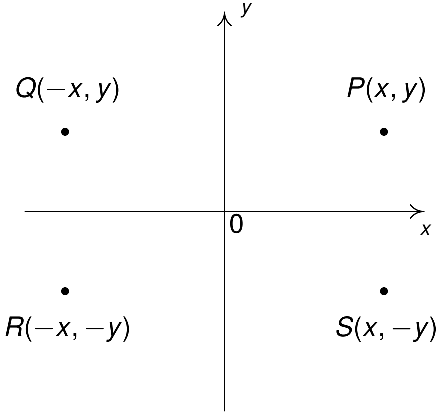


Figure A.3.6: Symmetry of points

Check your answer by plotting the points.

Solution. The figure after Definition A.3.1 gives us a good way to think about finding symmetric points in terms of taking the opposites of the x- and/or y-coordinates of $P(-2, 3)$.

1. To find the point symmetric about the x-axis, we replace the y-coordinate of 3 with its opposite -3 to get $(-2, -3)$.
2. To find the point symmetric about the y-axis, we replace the x-coordinate of -2 with its opposite $-(-2) = 2$ to get $(2, 3)$.
3. To find the point symmetric about the origin, we replace both the x- and y-coordinates with their opposites to get $(2, -3)$.

□

Refer Figure A.3.7

One way to visualize the processes in the previous example is with the concept of a **reflection**. If we start with our point $(-2, 3)$ and pretend that the x-axis is a mirror, then the reflection of $(-2, 3)$ across the x-axis would lie at $(-2, -3)$. If we pretend that the y-axis is a mirror, the reflection of $(-2, 3)$ across that axis would be $(2, 3)$. If we reflect across the x-axis and then the y-axis, we would go from $(-2, 3)$ to $(-2, -3)$ then to $(2, -3)$, and so we would end up at the point symmetric to $(-2, 3)$ about the origin. We summarize and generalize this process as shown in Box A.3.2.

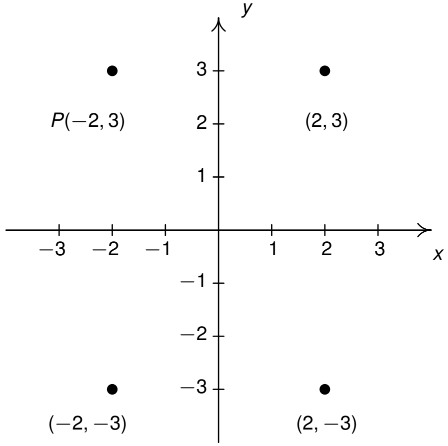


Figure A.3.7: Points of symmetry for $(-2, 3)$

Box A.3.2: Reflections

To reflect a point (x, y) about the:

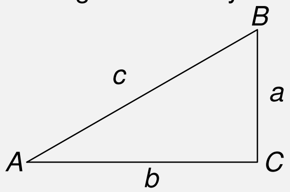
- x-axis, replace y with $-y$.
- y-axis, replace x with $-x$.
- origin, replace x with $-x$ and y with $-y$.

A.3.2 Distance in the Plane

Another fundamental concept in Geometry is the notion of length. If we are going to unite Algebra and Geometry using the Cartesian Plane, then we need to develop an algebraic understanding of what distance in the plane means. Before we can do that, we need to state what we believe is the most important theorem in all of Geometry: The Pythagorean Theorem.[6]

[6] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pythagorean_Theorem

Theorem A.3.1. The Pythagorean Theorem: The triangle *ABC* shown below is a right triangle if and only if $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$



A proof of this theorem will be given in Section **??**. The theorem actually says two different things. If we know that $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ then the angle C must be a right angle. If we know geometrically that C is already a right angle then we have that $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$. We need the latter statement in the discussion which follows.

Suppose we have two points, $P(x_0, y_0)$ and $Q(x_1, y_1)$, in the plane. By the **distance** d between P and Q, we mean the length of the line segment joining P with Q. (Remember, given any two distinct points in the plane, there is a unique line containing both points.) Our goal now is to create an algebraic formula to compute the distance between these two points. Consider the generic situation shown first in Figure A.3.8.

With a little more imagination, we can envision a right triangle whose hypotenuse has length d as drawn above on the right. From the latter figure, we see that the lengths of the legs of the triangle are $|x_1 - x_0|$ and $|y_1 - y_0|$ so the Pythagorean Theorem gives us

$$|x_1 - x_0|^2 + |y_1 - y_0|^2 = d^2$$

$$(x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2 = d^2$$

(Do you remember why we can replace the absolute value notation with parentheses?) By extracting the square root of both sides of the second equation and using the fact that distance is never negative, we get

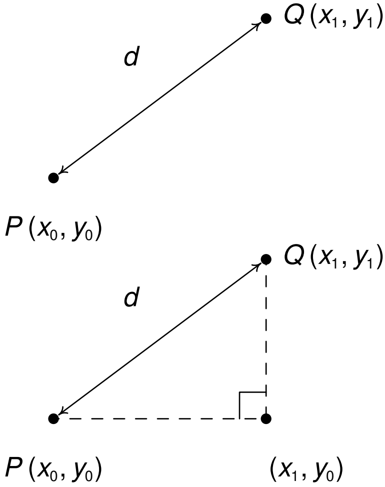


Figure A.3.8: Distance between two points

Equation A.3.1. The Distance Formula: The distance d between the points $P(x_0, y_0)$ and $Q(x_1, y_1)$ is:

$$d = \sqrt{(x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2}$$

A couple of remarks about Equation A.3.1 are in order. First, it is not always the case that the points P and Q lend themselves to constructing such a triangle. If the points P and Q are arranged vertically or horizontally, or describe the exact same point, we cannot use the above geometric argument to derive the distance formula. It is left to the reader in Exercise 12 to verify Equation A.3.1 for these cases. Second, distance is a 'length'. So, technically, the number we obtain from the distance formula has some attached units of length. In this text, we'll adopt the convention that the phrase 'units' refers to some generic units of length.[7] Our next example gives us an opportunity to test drive the distance formula as well as brush

[7] As a result, we'll measure area with 'square units,' or units^2 and volume with 'cubic units,' or units^3.

up on some arithmetic and prerequisite algebra.

Example A.3.3. Find and simplify the distance between the following sets of points:

1. $P(-2,3)$ and $Q(1,-3)$
2. $R\left(\frac{1}{2},\frac{2}{3}\right)$ and $S\left(\frac{3}{4},\frac{1}{5}\right)$
3. $T(\sqrt{3},-\sqrt{20})$ and $V(\sqrt{12},\sqrt{5})$
4. $O(0,0)$ and $P(x,y)$.

Solution. In each case, we apply the distance formula, Equation A.3.1 with the first point listed taken as (x_0,y_0) and the second point taken as (x_1,y_1).[8]

1. With $(-2,3)=(x_0,y_0)$ and $(1,-3)=(x_1,y_1)$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} d &= \sqrt{(x_1-x_0)^2+(y_1-y_0)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{(1-(-2))^2+(-3-3)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{9+36} \\ &= \sqrt{45} \\ &= \sqrt{9\cdot 5} \\ &= \sqrt{9}\sqrt{5} \quad \text{(For nonnegative numbers, } \sqrt{ab}=\sqrt{a}\sqrt{b}\text{).} \\ &= 3\sqrt{5} \end{aligned}$$

   So the distance is $3\sqrt{5}$ units.

2. With $\left(\frac{1}{2},\frac{2}{3}\right)=(x_0,y_0)$ and $\left(\frac{3}{4},\frac{1}{5}\right)=(x_1,y_1)$, we get

[8] This choice is completely arbitrary. The reader is encouraged to work these examples taking the first point listed as (x_1,y_1) and the second point listed as (x_0,y_0) and verifying the distance works out to be the same. Can you see why the order of the subtraction in Equation A.3.1 ultimately doesn't matter?

$$
\begin{aligned}
d &= \sqrt{(x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2} \\
&= \sqrt{\left(\frac{3}{4} - \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{5} - \frac{2}{3}\right)^2} \\
&\qquad \text{(Get common denominators to add and subtract fractions.)} \\
&= \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^2 + \left(-\frac{7}{15}\right)^2} \\
&= \sqrt{\frac{1}{16} + \frac{49}{225}} && \left(\text{Since } \left(\tfrac{a}{b}\right)^2 = \tfrac{a^2}{b^2},\ b \neq 0.\right) \\
&= \sqrt{\frac{1009}{3600}} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{1009}}{\sqrt{3600}} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{1009}}{60} && \left(\text{For nonnegative numbers, } \sqrt{\tfrac{a}{b}} = \tfrac{\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{b}},\ b \neq 0.\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

So the distance is $\frac{\sqrt{1009}}{60}$ units.

3. With $(\sqrt{3}, -\sqrt{20}) = (x_0, y_0)$ and $(\sqrt{12}, \sqrt{5}) = (x_1, y_1)$, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
d &= \sqrt{(x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2} \\
&= \sqrt{\left(\sqrt{12} - \sqrt{3}\right)^2 + \left(\sqrt{5} - (-\sqrt{20})\right)^2} \\
&= \sqrt{\left(2\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{3}\right)^2 + \left(\sqrt{5} + 2\sqrt{5}\right)^2} \\
&\qquad \text{(Simplify the radicals to get like terms.)} \\
&= \sqrt{\left(\sqrt{3}\right)^2 + \left(3\sqrt{5}\right)^2} \\
&= \sqrt{3 + 9 \cdot 5} && \left(\text{Since } (\sqrt{a})^2 = a \text{ and } (b\sqrt{a})^2 = b^2(\sqrt{a})^2.\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$= \sqrt{48}$$
$$= 4\sqrt{3}$$

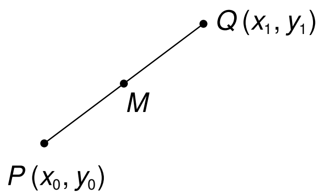
So the distance is $4\sqrt{3}$ units.

4. With $(0,0) = (x_0, y_0)$ and $(x, y) = (x_1, y_1)$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} d &= \sqrt{(x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{(x - 0)^2 + (y - 0)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \end{aligned}$$

As tempting as it may look, $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ does not, in general, reduce to $x + y$ or even $|x| + |y|$. So, in this case, the best we can do is state that the distance is $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ units. □

Related to finding the distance between two points is the problem of finding the **midpoint** of the line segment connecting two points. Given two points, $P(x_0, y_0)$ and $Q(x_1, y_1)$, the **midpoint** M of P and Q is defined to be the point on the line segment connecting P and Q whose distance from P is equal to its distance from Q.



If we think of reaching M by going 'halfway over' and 'halfway up' we get the following formula.

Equation A.3.2. The Midpoint Formula: The midpoint M of the line segment connecting $P(x_0, y_0)$ and $Q(x_1, y_1)$ is:

$$M = \left(\frac{x_0 + x_1}{2}, \frac{y_0 + y_1}{2} \right)$$

If we let d denote the distance between P and Q, we leave it as Exercise 13 to show that the distance between P and M is $d/2$ which is the same as the distance between M and Q. This suffices to show that Equation A.3.2 gives the coordinates of the midpoint.

Example A.3.4. Find the midpoint of the line segment connecting the following pairs of points:

1. $P(-2,3)$ and $Q(1,-3)$
2. $R\left(\frac{1}{2},\frac{2}{3}\right)$ and $S\left(\frac{3}{4},\frac{1}{5}\right)$
3. $T(\sqrt{3},-\sqrt{20})$ and $V(\sqrt{12},\sqrt{5})$
4. $O(0,0)$ and $P(x,y)$.

Solution. As with Example A.3.3, in each case, we apply the midpoint formula, Equation A.3.2 with the first point listed taken as (x_0,y_0) and the second point taken as (x_1,y_1).[9] We also note that midpoints are *points*, which means all of our answers should be *ordered pairs*.

1. With $(-2,3)=(x_0,y_0)$ and $(1,-3)=(x_1,y_1)$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \left(\frac{x_0+x_1}{2},\frac{y_0+y_1}{2}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{(-2)+1}{2},\frac{3+(-3)}{2}\right) = \left(-\frac{1}{2},\frac{0}{2}\right) \\ &= \left(-\frac{1}{2},0\right) \end{aligned}$$

   The midpoint is $\left(-\frac{1}{2},0\right)$.

2. With $\left(\frac{1}{2},\frac{2}{3}\right)=(x_0,y_0)$ and $\left(\frac{3}{4},\frac{1}{5}\right)=(x_1,y_1)$, we get

[9] As in Example A.3.3, this choice is also completely arbitrary. The reader is encouraged to work these examples taking the first point listed as (x_1,y_1) and the second point listed as (x_0,y_0) and verifying the midpoint works out to be the same. Can you see why the order of the points in Equation A.3.2 doesn't matter?

$$
\begin{aligned}
M &= \left(\frac{x_0 + x_1}{2}, \frac{y_0 + y_1}{2}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{4}}{2}, \frac{\frac{2}{3} + \frac{1}{5}}{2}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{\left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{4}\right) \cdot 4}{2 \cdot 4}, \frac{\left(\frac{2}{3} + \frac{1}{5}\right) \cdot 15}{2 \cdot 15}\right) \quad \text{(Simplify compound fractions.)} \\
&= \left(\frac{5}{8}, \frac{13}{30}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The midpoint is $\left(\frac{5}{8}, \frac{13}{30}\right)$.

3. With $(\sqrt{3}, -\sqrt{20}) = (x_0, y_0)$ and $(\sqrt{12}, \sqrt{5}) = (x_1, y_1)$, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
M &= \left(\frac{x_0 + x_1}{2}, \frac{y_0 + y_1}{2}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{12}}{2}, \frac{-\sqrt{20} + \sqrt{5}}{2}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{\sqrt{3} + 2\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{-2\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{5}}{2}\right) \\
&\qquad \text{(Simplify radicals to get like terms.)} \\
&= \left(\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The midpoint is $\left(\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)$.

4. With $(0, 0) = (x_0, y_0)$ and $(x, y) = (x_1, y_1)$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \left(\frac{x_0 + x_1}{2}, \frac{y_0 + y_1}{2}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{x+0}{2}, \frac{y+0}{2}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{x}{2}, \frac{y}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

The midpoint is $\left(\frac{x}{2}, \frac{y}{2}\right)$. □

We close with a more abstract application of the Midpoint Formula. We will expand upon this example in Example A.5.5 in Section A.5.

Example A.3.5. If $a \neq b$, show that the line $y = x$ equally divides the line segment with endpoints (a, b) and (b, a).

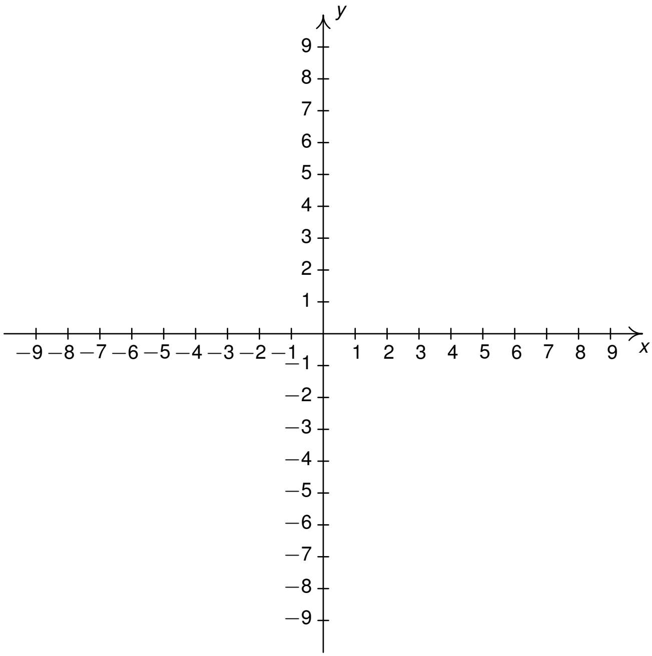
Solution. To prove the claim, we use Equation A.3.2 to find the midpoint

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \left(\frac{a+b}{2}, \frac{b+a}{2}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{a+b}{2}, \frac{a+b}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Since the x and y coordinates of this point are the same, we find that the midpoint lies on the line $y = x$, as required. □

A.3.3 Exercises

1. Plot and label the points $A(-3,-7)$, $B(1.3,-2)$, $C(\pi,\sqrt{10})$, $D(0,8)$, $E(-5.5,0)$, $F(-8,4)$, $G(9.2,-7.8)$ and $H(7,5)$ in the Cartesian Coordinate Plane given below.



2. For each point given in Exercise 1 above
   - Identify the quadrant or axis in/on which the point lies.
   - Find the point symmetric to the given point about the x-axis.
   - Find the point symmetric to the given point about the y-axis.
   - Find the point symmetric to the given point about the origin.

In Exercises 3 - 10, find the distance d between the points and the midpoint M of the line segment which connects them.

3. $(1,2)$, $(-3,5)$

4. $(3,-10)$, $(-1,2)$

5. $\left(\frac{1}{2},4\right)$, $\left(\frac{3}{2},-1\right)$

6. $\left(-\frac{2}{3},\frac{3}{2}\right)$, $\left(\frac{7}{3},2\right)$

7. $\left(\frac{24}{5},\frac{6}{5}\right)$, $\left(-\frac{11}{5},-\frac{19}{5}\right)$.

8. $\left(\sqrt{2},\sqrt{3}\right)$, $\left(-\sqrt{8},-\sqrt{12}\right)$

9. $\left(2\sqrt{45},\sqrt{12}\right)$, $\left(\sqrt{20},\sqrt{27}\right)$.

10. $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2},\frac{1}{2}\right)$, $\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2},-\frac{1}{2}\right)$

11. Let's assume that we are standing at the origin and the positive y-axis points due North while the positive x-axis points due East. Our Sasquatch-o-meter tells us that Sasquatch is 3 miles West and 4 miles South of our current position. What are the coordinates of his position? How far away is he from us? If he runs 7 miles due East what would his new position be?

12. Verify the Distance Formula A.3.1 for the cases when:
    (a) The points are arranged vertically. (Hint: Use $P(a, y_0)$ and $Q(a, y_1)$.)
    (b) The points are arranged horizontally. (Hint: Use $P(x_0, b)$ and $Q(x_1, b)$.)
    (c) The points are actually the same point. (You shouldn't need a hint for this one.)

13. Verify the Midpoint Formula by showing the distance between $P(x_1, y_1)$ and M and the distance between M and $Q(x_2, y_2)$ are both half of the distance between P and Q.

14. Show that the points A, B and C below are the vertices of a right triangle.

(a) $A(-3,2)$, $B(-6,4)$, and $C(1,8)$

(b) $A(-3,1)$, $B(4,0)$ and $C(0,-3)$

15. Find a point $D(x, y)$ such that the points $A(-3,1)$. $B(4,0)$, $C(0,-3)$ and D are the corners of a square. Justify your answer.

16. Suppose the distance between $C(h, k)$ and $P(x, y)$ is r. Use the distance formula to show

$$(x-h)^2 + (y-k)^2 = r^2$$

We will see this formula (and its cousins) in Chapter **??**.

17. Let $P(x, y)$ be a point in the plane and let Q be the result of reflecting P about the x-axis, y-axis, or origin. Show the distance from the origin to P is the same as the distance from the origin to Q.

18. Let $O(0,0)$ (that is, O is the origin), $P(-2,1)$, $Q(-4,2)$, and $R(6,-3)$.

    (a) Find the distance from O to P and from O to Q. What do you notice?

    (b) Find the distance from O to P and from O to R. What do you notice?

    (c) For a generic point $P(x, y)$, let $Q(kx, ky)$ be the point obtained from P by multiplying both the x and y coordinates of P by the same number, k. Show the distance from O to Q is exactly $|k|$ times the distance from O to P. Explain what these results mean geometrically. (We'll revisit this in Theorem **??** in Section **??**.)

19. In this exercise, we explore some of the properties of distance. For brevity, we'll adopt the notation '$d(P, Q)$' to denote the distance between points P and Q.

    (a) (Non-negative Property) Explain why $d(P, Q) \geq 0$ for any two points in the plane.

(b) (Symmetric Property) Explain why $d(P, Q) = d(Q, P)$ for any two points in the plane.

(c) (Identity Property) Show that $d(P, Q) = 0$ if and only if P and Q are the same point.

NOTE: The phrase 'if and only if' means you need to show two things:

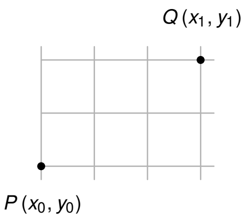
- If P and Q are the same point, then $d(P, Q) = 0$.
- If $d(P, Q) = 0$, then P and Q are the same point.

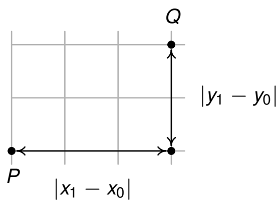
(d) (Triangle Inequality) The Triangle Inequality[10] says that for any triangle, the sum of the lengths of two sides of a triangle always exceeds the length of the third. Use the Triangle Inequality to show that for any three points P, Q, and R,

$$d(P, R) \leq d(P, Q) + d(Q, R)$$

Under what conditions does $d(P, R) = d(P, Q) + d(Q, R)$?

20. (Another way to measure distance.) In this text, we defined the distance between two points as the length of the line segment connecting the two points. Depending on the situation, however, there may be better ways to describe how far one location is from another. Consider the situation below on the left. Suppose P and Q are locations on a city grid, and a taxi is hailed at point P to travel to point Q. In this situation, diagonal movement is impossible,[11] so the taxi is limited to traveling horizontally and vertically.





[10] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Triangle_inequality

[11] Maybe 'discouraged' or 'difficult' would be better word choices.

From the diagram, we see the horizontal distance is $|x_1 - x_0|$ and the vertical distance is $|y_1 - y_0|$, so the total distance the taxi needs to travel to get from P to Q is given by:

$$d_T = |x_1 - x_0| + |y_1 - y_0|$$

We call d_T the 'taxi distance' from P to Q.

(a) Let $P(-2, 3)$ and $Q(4, 2)$. Find the distance, d from P to Q and the taxi distance, d_T from P to Q. Repeat this exercise with several points of your own choosing. Which is larger, d or d_T?

(b) Using the notation of Exercise 19, show that $d(P, Q) \leq d_T(P, Q)$ for any two points P and Q in the plane. (The Triangle Inequality[12] is useful once again here.) Under what conditions is $d(P, Q) = d_T(P, Q)$?

(c) Repeat Exercise 19 with the taxi distance, d_T. (You may need to skip ahead to Exercise **??** in Section **??** to verify the Triangle Inequality piece.)

(d) Think about ways to define a 'midpoint' using the taxi distance. What would your formula be? To help you get started, play around with the origin $(0, 0)$ as one point and the point $(4, 2)$ as the other.

21. The world is not flat.[13] Thus the Cartesian Plane cannot possibly be the end of the story. Discuss with your classmates how you would extend Cartesian Coordinates to represent the three dimensional world. What would the Distance and Midpoint formulas look like, assuming those concepts make sense at all?

[12] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Triangle_inequality

[13] There are those who disagree with this statement. Look them up on the Internet some time when you're bored.

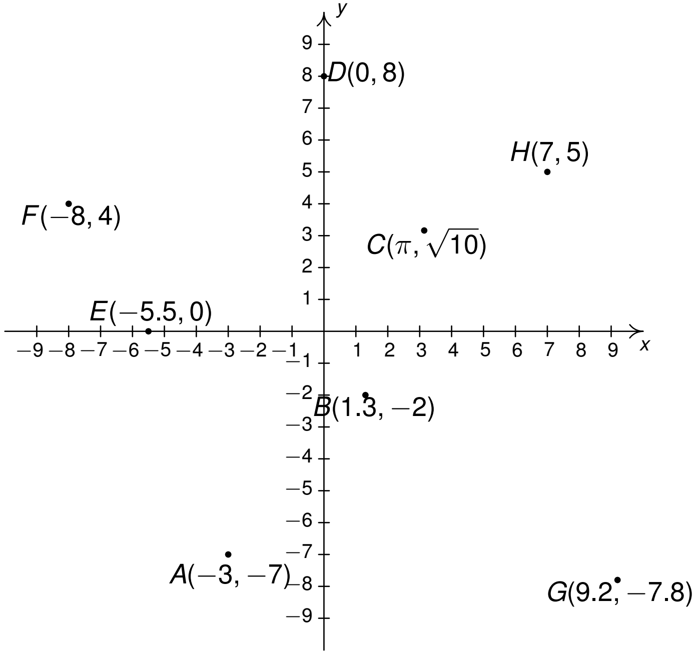


Figure A.3.9: Answer to Exercise 1

A.3.4 Answers

1. The required points $A(-3,-7)$, $B(1.3,-2)$, $C(\pi,\sqrt{10})$, $D(0,8)$, $E(-5.5,0)$, $F(-8,4)$, $G(9.2,-7.8)$, and $H(7,5)$ are plotted in the Cartesian Coordinate Plane shown in Figure A.3.9.

2. (a) The point $A(-3,-7)$ is
   - in Quadrant III
   - symmetric about x-axis with $(-3,7)$
   - symmetric about y-axis with $(3,-7)$
   - symmetric about origin with $(3,7)$

   (b) The point $B(1.3,-2)$ is
   - in Quadrant IV
   - symmetric about x-axis with $(1.3,2)$

- symmetric about y-axis with $(-1.3, -2)$
- symmetric about origin with $(-1.3, 2)$

(c) The point $C(\pi, \sqrt{10})$ is
- in Quadrant I
- symmetric about x-axis with $(\pi, -\sqrt{10})$
- symmetric about y-axis with $(-\pi, \sqrt{10})$
- symmetric about origin with $(-\pi, -\sqrt{10})$

(d) The point $D(0, 8)$ is
- on the positive y-axis
- symmetric about x-axis with $(0, -8)$
- symmetric about y-axis with $(0, 8)$
- symmetric about origin with $(0, -8)$

(e) The point $E(-5.5, 0)$ is
- on the negative x-axis
- symmetric about x-axis with $(-5.5, 0)$
- symmetric about y-axis with $(5.5, 0)$
- symmetric about origin with $(5.5, 0)$

(f) The point $F(-8, 4)$ is
- in Quadrant II
- symmetric about x-axis with $(-8, -4)$
- symmetric about y-axis with $(8, 4)$
- symmetric about origin with $(8, -4)$

(g) The point $G(9.2, -7.8)$ is
- in Quadrant IV
- symmetric about x-axis with $(9.2, 7.8)$
- symmetric about y-axis with $(-9.2, -7.8)$
- symmetric about origin with $(-9.2, 7.8)$

(h) The point $H(7, 5)$ is
- in Quadrant I
- symmetric about x-axis with $(7, -5)$
- symmetric about y-axis with $(-7, 5)$
- symmetric about origin with $(-7, -5)$

3. $d = 5$ units, $M = \left(-1, \frac{7}{2}\right)$
4. $d = 4\sqrt{10}$ units, $M = (1, -4)$
5. $d = \sqrt{26}$ units, $M = \left(1, \frac{3}{2}\right)$
6. $d = \frac{\sqrt{37}}{2}$ units, $M = \left(\frac{5}{6}, \frac{7}{4}\right)$
7. $d = \sqrt{74}$ units, $M = \left(\frac{13}{10}, -\frac{13}{10}\right)$
8. $d = 3\sqrt{5}$ units, $M = \left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$
9. $d = \sqrt{83}$ units, $M = \left(4\sqrt{5}, \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$
10. $d = 2$ units, $M = (0, 0)$
11. $(-3, -4)$, 5 miles, $(4, -4)$
14. (a) The distance from A to B is $|AB| = \sqrt{13}$, the distance from A to C is $|AC| = \sqrt{52}$, and the distance from B to C is $|BC| = \sqrt{65}$. Since $\left(\sqrt{13}\right)^2 + \left(\sqrt{52}\right)^2 = \left(\sqrt{65}\right)^2$, we are guaranteed by the converse of the Pythagorean Theorem[14] that the triangle is a right triangle.

    (b) Show that $|AC|^2 + |BC|^2 = |AB|^2$

[14] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pythagorean_theorem#Converse

A.4 Linear Equations and Inequalities

In the introduction to this chapter we said that we were going to review "the concepts, skills and vocabulary we believe are prerequisite to a rigorous, college-level Precalculus course." So far, we've presented a lot of vocabulary and concepts but we haven't done much to refresh the skills needed to survive in the Precalculus wilderness. Thus over the course of the next few sections we will focus our review on the Algebra skills needed to solve basic equations and inequalities, with one brief detour in Section A.5 where we discuss graphing lines in the plane. In general, equations and inequalities fall into one of three categories: conditional, identity or contradiction, depending on the nature of their solutions. A **conditional** equation or inequality is true for only *certain* real numbers. For example, $2x + 1 = 7$ is true precisely when $x = 3$, and $w - 3 \leq 4$ is true precisely when $w \leq 7$. An **identity** is an equation or inequality that is true for *all* real numbers. For example, $2x - 3 = 1 + x - 4 + x$ or $2t \leq 2t + 3$. A **contradiction** is an equation or inequality that is *never* true. Examples here include $3x - 4 = 3x + 7$ and $a - 1 > a + 3$.

As you may recall, solving an equation or inequality means finding all of the values of the variable, if any exist, which make the given equation or inequality true. This often requires us to manipulate the given equation or inequality from its given form to an easier form. For example, if we're asked to solve $3 - 2(x - 3) = 7x + 3(x + 1)$, we get $x = \frac{1}{2}$, but not without a fair amount of algebraic manipulation. In order to obtain the correct answer(s), however, we need to make sure that whatever maneuvers we apply are reversible in order to guarantee that we maintain a chain of **equivalent** equations or inequalities. Two equations or inequalities are called **equivalent** if they have the same solutions. We summarize these 'legal moves' in Box A.4.1.

A.4.1 Linear Equations

The first equations we wish to review are **linear** equations as defined below.

Box A.4.1: Procedures which Generate Equivalent Equations and Inequalities

Equivalent Equations

- Add (or subtract) the same real number to (from) both sides of the equation.
- Multiply (or divide) both sides of the equation by the same **nonzero** real number.[a]

Equivalent Inequalities

- Add (or subtract) the same real number to (from) both sides of the equation.
- Multiply (or divide) both sides of the equation by the same **positive** real number.[b]

---

[a] Multiplying both sides of an equation by 0 collapses the equation to $0 = 0$, which doesn't do anybody any good.

[b] Remember that if you multiply both sides of an inequality by a negative real number, the inequality sign is reversed: $3 \leq 4$, but $(-2)(3) \geq (-2)(4)$.

Definition A.4.1. An equation is said to be **linear** in a variable x if it can be written in the form $ax = b$ where a and b are expressions which do not involve x and $a \neq 0$.

One key point about Definition A.4.1 is that the exponent on the unknown 'x' in the equation is 1, that is $x = x^1$. Our main strategy for solving linear equations is summarized in Box A.4.2.

We illustrate this process with a collection of examples below.

Example A.4.1. Solve the following equations for the indicated variable. Check your answer.

1. Solve for x: $3x - 6 = 7x + 4$
2. Solve for t: $3 - 1.7t = \dfrac{t}{4}$
3. Solve for a: $\dfrac{1}{18}(7 - 4a) + 2 = \dfrac{a}{3} - \dfrac{4 - a}{12}$

Box A.4.2: Strategy for Solving Linear Equations

In order to solve an equation which is linear in a given variable, say x:

1. Isolate all of the terms containing x on one side of the equation, putting all of the terms not containing x on the other side of the equation.
2. Factor out the x and divide both sides of the equation by its coefficient.

4. Solve for y: $8y\sqrt{3} + 1 = 7 - \sqrt{12}(5 - y)$
5. Solve for x: $\dfrac{3x-1}{2} = x\sqrt{50} + 4$
6. Solve for y: $x(4 - y) = 8y$

Solution.

1. The variable we are asked to solve for is x so our first move is to gather all of the terms involving x on one side and put the remaining terms on the other.[1]

$$
\begin{aligned}
3x - 6 &= 7x + 4 \\
(3x - 6) - 7x + 6 &= (7x + 4) - 7x + 6 && \text{(Subtract } 7x\text{, add 6)} \\
3x - 7x - 6 + 6 &= 7x - 7x + 4 + 6 && \text{(Rearrange terms)} \\
-4x &= 10 && (3x - 7x = (3-7)x = -4x) \\
\frac{-4x}{-4} &= \frac{10}{-4} && \text{(Divide by the coefficient of } x\text{)} \\
x &= -\frac{5}{2} && \text{(Reduce to lowest terms)}
\end{aligned}
$$

[1] In the margin notes, when we speak of operations, e.g.,'Subtract $7x$,' we mean to subtract $7x$ from **both** sides of the equation. The 'from both sides of the equation' is omitted in the interest of spacing.

To check our answer, we substitute $x = -\frac{5}{2}$ into each side of the **orginial** equation to see the equation is satisfied. Sure enough, $3\left(-\frac{5}{2}\right) - 6 = -\frac{27}{2}$ and $7\left(-\frac{5}{2}\right) + 4 = -\frac{27}{2}$.

2. In our next example, the unknown is t and we not only have a fraction but also a decimal to wrangle. Fortunately, with equations we can multiply both sides to rid us of these computational obstacles:

$$\begin{aligned}
3 - 1.7t &= \frac{t}{4} \\
40(3 - 1.7t) &= 40\left(\frac{t}{4}\right) && \text{(Multiply by 40)} \\
40(3) - 40(1.7t) &= \frac{40t}{4} && \text{(Distribute)} \\
120 - 68t &= 10t \\
(120 - 68t) + 68t &= 10t + 68t && \text{(Add } 68t \text{ to both sides)} \\
120 &= 78t && (68t + 10t = (68 + 10)t = 78t) \\
\frac{120}{78} &= \frac{78t}{78} && \text{(Divide by the coefficient of } t\text{)} \\
\frac{120}{78} &= t \\
\frac{20}{13} &= t && \text{(Reduce to lowest terms)}
\end{aligned}$$

To check, we again substitute $t = \frac{20}{13}$ into each side of the original equation. We find that $3 - 1.7\left(\frac{20}{13}\right) = 3 - \left(\frac{17}{10}\right)\left(\frac{20}{13}\right) = \frac{5}{13}$ and $\frac{(20/13)}{4} = \frac{20}{13} \cdot \frac{1}{4} = \frac{5}{13}$ as well.

3. To solve this next equation, we begin once again by clearing fractions. The least common denominator here is 36:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{18}(7 - 4a) + 2 &= \frac{a}{3} - \frac{4 - a}{12} \\
36\left(\frac{1}{18}(7 - 4a) + 2\right) &= 36\left(\frac{a}{3} - \frac{4 - a}{12}\right) && \text{(Multiply by 36)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{36}{18}(7-4a)+(36)(2) &= \frac{36a}{3}-\frac{36(4-a)}{12} && \text{(Distribute)}\\
2(7-4a)+72 &= 12a-3(4-a) && \text{(Distribute)}\\
14-8a+72 &= 12a-12+3a\\
86-8a &= 15a-12 && (12a+3a=(12+3)a=15a)\\
(86-8a)+8a+12 &= (15a-12)+8a+12 && \text{(Add } 8a \text{ and } 12)\\
86+12-8a+8a &= 15a+8a-12+12 && \text{(Rearrange terms)}\\
98 &= 23a && (15a+8a=(15+8)a=23a)\\
\frac{98}{23} &= \frac{23a}{23} && \text{(Divide by the coefficient of } a)\\
\frac{98}{23} &= a
\end{aligned}
$$

The check, as usual, involves substituting $a = \frac{98}{23}$ into both sides of the original equation. The reader is encouraged to work through the (admittedly messy) arithmetic. Both sides work out to $\frac{199}{138}$.

4. The square roots may dishearten you but we treat them just like the real numbers they are. Our strategy is the same: get everything with the variable (in this case y) on one side, put everything else on the other and divide by the coefficient of the variable. We've added a few steps to the narrative that we would ordinarily omit just to help you see that this equation is indeed linear.

$$
\begin{aligned}
8y\sqrt{3}+1 &= 7-\sqrt{12}(5-y)\\
8y\sqrt{3}+1 &= 7-\sqrt{12}(5)+\sqrt{12}y && \text{(Distribute)}\\
8y\sqrt{3}+1 &= 7-(2\sqrt{3})5+(2\sqrt{3})y\\
&&& (\sqrt{12}=\sqrt{4\cdot 3}=2\sqrt{3})\\
8y\sqrt{3}+1 &= 7-10\sqrt{3}+2y\sqrt{3}\\
(8y\sqrt{3}+1)-1-2y\sqrt{3} &= (7-10\sqrt{3}+2y\sqrt{3})-1\\
&\quad -2y\sqrt{3}\\
&&& \text{(Subtract 1 and } 2y\sqrt{3})
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\begin{aligned}
8y\sqrt{3} - 2y\sqrt{3} + 1 - 1 &= 7 - 1 - 10\sqrt{3} + 2y\sqrt{3} \\
&\qquad - 2y\sqrt{3} && \text{(Rearrange terms)} \\
(8\sqrt{3} - 2\sqrt{3})y &= 6 - 10\sqrt{3} \\
6y\sqrt{3} &= 6 - 10\sqrt{3} && \text{(See note below)} \\
\frac{6y\sqrt{3}}{6\sqrt{3}} &= \frac{6 - 10\sqrt{3}}{6\sqrt{3}} && \text{(Divide } 6\sqrt{3}\text{)} \\
y &= \frac{2 \cdot \sqrt{3} \cdot \sqrt{3} - 2 \cdot 5 \cdot \sqrt{3}}{2 \cdot 3 \cdot \sqrt{3}} \\
y &= \frac{\cancel{2}\cancel{\sqrt{3}}(\sqrt{3} - 5)}{\cancel{2} \cdot 3 \cdot \cancel{\sqrt{3}}} && \text{(Factor and cancel)} \\
y &= \frac{\sqrt{3} - 5}{3}
\end{aligned}$$

In the list of computations above we marked the row $6y\sqrt{3} = 6 - 10\sqrt{3}$ with a note. That's because we wanted to draw your attention to this line without breaking the flow of the manipulations. The equation $6y\sqrt{3} = 6 - 10\sqrt{3}$ is in fact linear according to Definition A.4.1: the variable is y, the value of A is $6\sqrt{3}$ and $B = 6 - 10\sqrt{3}$. Checking the solution, while not trivial, is good mental exercise. Each side works out to be $\frac{27-40\sqrt{3}}{3}$.

5. Proceeding as before, we simplify radicals and clear denominators. Once we gather all of the terms containing x on one side and move the other terms to the other, we factor out x to identify its coefficient then divide to get our answer.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{3x-1}{2} &= x\sqrt{50} + 4 \\
\frac{3x-1}{2} &= 5x\sqrt{2} + 4 && (\sqrt{50} = \sqrt{25 \cdot 2}) \\
2\left(\frac{3x-1}{2}\right) &= 2\left(5x\sqrt{2} + 4\right) && \text{(Multiply by 2)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{\cancel{2}\cdot(3x-1)}{\cancel{2}} = 2(5x\sqrt{2}) + 2\cdot 4 \qquad \text{(Distribute)}$$
$$3x - 1 = 10x\sqrt{2} + 8$$
$$(3x-1) - 10x\sqrt{2} + 1 = (10x\sqrt{2}+8) - 10x\sqrt{2} + 1$$
$$\text{(Subtract } 10x\sqrt{2}\text{, add 1)}$$
$$3x - 10x\sqrt{2} - 1 + 1 = 10x\sqrt{2} - 10x\sqrt{2} + 8 + 1$$
$$\text{(Rearrange terms)}$$
$$3x - 10x\sqrt{2} = 9$$
$$(3-10\sqrt{2})x = 9 \qquad \text{(Factor)}$$
$$\frac{(3-10\sqrt{2})x}{3-10\sqrt{2}} = \frac{9}{3-10\sqrt{2}}$$
$$\text{(Divide by the coefficient of } x\text{)}$$
$$x = \frac{9}{3-10\sqrt{2}}$$

The reader is encouraged to check this solution - it isn't as bad as it looks if you're careful! Each side works out to be $\frac{12+5\sqrt{2}}{3-10\sqrt{2}}$.

6. If we were instructed to solve our last equation for x, we'd be done in one step: divide both sides by $(4-y)$ - assuming $4-y\neq 0$, that is. Alas, we are instructed to solve for y, which means we have some more work to do.

$$x(4-y) = 8y$$
$$4x - xy = 8y \qquad \text{(Distribute)}$$
$$(4x - xy) + xy = 8y + xy \qquad \text{(Add } xy\text{)}$$
$$4x = (8+x)y \qquad \text{(Factor)}$$

In order to finish the problem, we need to divide both sides of the equation by the coefficient of y which in this case is $8 + x$. This expression contains a variable so we need to stipulate that we may perform this division only if $8 + x \neq 0$, or, in other words, $x \neq -8$. Hence, we write our solution as:

$$y = \frac{4x}{8+x}, \quad \text{provided } x \neq -8$$

What happens if $x = -8$? Substituting $x = -8$ into the original equation gives $(-8)(4 - y) = 8y$ or $-32 + 8y = 8y$. This reduces to $-32 = 0$, which is a contradiction. This means there is no solution when $x = -8$, so we've covered all the bases. Checking our answer requires some Algebra we haven't reviewed yet in this text, but the necessary skills *should* be lurking somewhere in the mathematical mists of your mind. The adventurous reader is invited to plug $y = \frac{4x}{8+x}$ into the original equation and show that both sides work out to $\frac{32x}{x+8}$. □

A.4.2 Linear Inequalities

We now turn our attention to linear inequalities. Unlike linear equations which admit at most one solution, the solutions to linear inequalities are generally intervals of real numbers. While the solution strategy for solving linear inequalities is the same as with solving linear equations, we need to remind ourselves that, should we decide to multiply or divide both sides of an inequality by a **negative** number, we need to reverse the direction of the inequality. (See the footnote in the box on page 85.) In the example below, we work not only some 'simple' linear inequalities in the sense there is only one inequality present, but also some 'compound' linear inequalities which require us to revisit the notions of intersection and union.

Example A.4.2. Solve the following inequalities for the indicated variable.

1. Solve for x: $\dfrac{7-8x}{2} \geq 4x + 1$
2. Solve for y: $\dfrac{3}{4} \leq \dfrac{7-y}{2} < 6$

3. Solve for t: $2t - 1 \leq 4 - t < 6t + 1$
4. Solve for x: $5 + \sqrt{7}x \leq 4x + 1 \leq 8$
5. Solve for w: $2.1 - 0.01w \leq -3$ or $2.1 - 0.01w \geq 3$

Solution.

1. We begin by clearing denominators and gathering all of the terms containing x to one side of the inequality and putting the remaining terms on the other.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{7-8x}{2} &\geq 4x+1 & \\
2\left(\frac{7-8x}{2}\right) &\geq 2(4x+1) & \text{(Multiply by 2)} \\
\frac{\cancel{2}(7-8x)}{\cancel{2}} &\geq 2(4x)+2(1) & \text{(Distribute)} \\
7-8x &\geq 8x+2 & \\
(7-8x)+8x-2 &\geq 8x+2+8x-2 & \text{(Add } 8x\text{, subtract 2)} \\
7-2-8x+8x &\geq 8x+8x+2-2 & \text{(Rearrange terms)} \\
5 &\geq 16x & (8x+8x=(8+8)x=16x) \\
\frac{5}{16} &\geq \frac{16x}{16} & \text{(Divide by the coefficient of } x\text{)} \\
\frac{5}{16} &\geq x &
\end{aligned}$$

We get $\frac{5}{16} \geq x$ or, said differently, $x \leq \frac{5}{16}$. We express this set[2] of real numbers as $\left(-\infty, \frac{5}{16}\right]$. Though not required to do so, we could partially check our answer by substituting $x = \frac{5}{16}$ and a few other values in our solution set ($x = 0$, for instance) to make sure the inequality holds. (It also isn't a bad idea to choose an $x > \frac{5}{16}$, say $x = 1$, to see that the inequality *doesn't* hold there.) The only real way to actually show that our answer works for *all* values in our

[2]Using set-builder notation, our 'set' of solutions here is $\{x \,|\, x \leq \frac{5}{16}\}$.

solution set is to start with $x \leq \frac{5}{16}$ and reverse all of the steps in our solution procedure to prove it is equivalent to our original inequality.

2. We have our first example of a 'compound' inequality. The solutions to
$$\frac{3}{4} \leq \frac{7-y}{2} < 6$$
must satisfy
$$\frac{3}{4} \leq \frac{7-y}{2} \qquad \underline{\text{and}} \qquad \frac{7-y}{2} < 6$$
One approach is to solve each of these inequalities separately, then intersect their solution sets. While this method works (and will be used later for more complicated problems), our variable y appears only in the middle expression so we can proceed by working both inequalities at once:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{3}{4} &\leq \frac{7-y}{2} && < 6 & \\
4\left(\frac{3}{4}\right) &\leq 4\left(\frac{7-y}{2}\right) && < 4(6) & \text{(Multiply by 4)} \\
\frac{\cancel{4}\cdot 3}{\cancel{4}} &\leq \frac{\cancelto{2}{4}(7-y)}{\cancel{2}} && < 24 & \\
3 &\leq 2(7-y) && < 24 & \\
3 &\leq 2(7)-2y && < 24 & \text{(Distrbute)} \\
3 &\leq 14-2y && < 24 & \\
3-14 &\leq (14-2y)-14 && < 24-14 & \text{(Subtract 14)} \\
-11 &\leq -2y && < 10 & \\
\frac{-11}{-2} &\geq \frac{-2y}{-2} && > \frac{10}{-2} &
\end{aligned}$$
(Divide by the coefficient of y and reverse inequalities)
$$\frac{11}{2} \geq y \qquad > -5$$

Our final answer is $\frac{11}{2} \geq y > -5$, or, said differently, $-5 < y \leq \frac{11}{2}$. In interval notation, this is $\left(-5, \frac{11}{2}\right]$. We could check the reasonableness of our answer as before, and the reader is encouraged to do so.

3. We have another compound inequality and what distinguishes this one from our previous example is that 't' appears on both sides of both inequalities. In this case, we need to create two separate inequalities and find all of the real numbers t which satisfy both $2t - 1 \leq 4 - t$ *and* $4 - t < 6t + 1$. The first inequality, $2t - 1 \leq 4 - t$, reduces to $3t \leq 5$ or $t \leq \frac{5}{3}$. The second inequality, $4 - t < 6t + 1$, becomes $3 < 7t$ which reduces to $t > \frac{3}{7}$. Thus our solution is all real numbers t with $t \leq \frac{5}{3}$ *and* $t > \frac{3}{7}$, or, writing this as a compound inequality, $\frac{3}{7} < t \leq \frac{5}{3}$. Using interval notation,[3] we express our solution as $\left(\frac{3}{7}, \frac{5}{3}\right]$.

4. As before, with this inequality we have no choice but to solve each inequality individually and intersect the solution sets. Starting with the leftmost inequality, we first note that the in the term $\sqrt{7}x$, the vinculum of the square root extends over the 7 only, meaning the x is not part of the radicand. In order to avoid confusion, we will write $\sqrt{7}x$ as $x\sqrt{7}$.

$$\begin{aligned} 5 + x\sqrt{7} &\leq 4x + 1 & \\ (5 + x\sqrt{7}) - 4x - 5 &\leq (4x + 1) - 4x - 5 & \text{(Subtract } 4x \text{ and } 5) \\ x\sqrt{7} - 4x + 5 - 5 &\leq 4x - 4x + 1 - 5 & \text{(Rearrange terms)} \\ x(\sqrt{7} - 4) &\leq -4 & \text{(Factor)} \end{aligned}$$

At this point, we need to exercise a bit of caution because the number $\sqrt{7} - 4$ is negative.[4] When we divide by it the inequality reverses:

[3] If we intersect the solution sets of the two individual inequalities, we get the answer, too: $\left(-\infty, \frac{5}{3}\right] \cap \left(\frac{3}{7}, \infty\right) = \left(\frac{3}{7}, \frac{5}{3}\right]$.

[4] Since $4 < 7 < 9$, it stands to reason that $\sqrt{4} < \sqrt{7} < \sqrt{9}$ so $2 < \sqrt{7} < 3$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
x(\sqrt{7}-4) &\leq -4 \\
\frac{x(\sqrt{7}-4)}{\sqrt{7}-4} &\geq \frac{-4}{\sqrt{7}-4} \\
&\text{(Divide by the coefficient of } x \text{ and reverse inequalities)} \\
x &\geq \frac{-4}{\sqrt{7}-4} \\
x &\geq \frac{-4}{-(4-\sqrt{7})} \\
x &\geq \frac{4}{4-\sqrt{7}}
\end{aligned}
$$

We're only half done because we still have the rightmost inequality to solve. Fortunately, that one seems rather mundane: $4x + 1 \leq 8$ reduces to $x \leq \frac{7}{4}$ without too much incident. Our solution is $x \geq \frac{4}{4-\sqrt{7}}$ *and* $x \leq \frac{7}{4}$. We may be tempted to write $\frac{4}{4-\sqrt{7}} \leq x \leq \frac{7}{4}$ and call it a day but that would be nonsense! To see why, notice that $\sqrt{7}$ is between 2 and 3 so $\frac{4}{4-\sqrt{7}}$ is between $\frac{4}{4-2} = 2$ and $\frac{4}{4-3} = 4$. In particular, we get $\frac{4}{4-\sqrt{7}} > 2$. On the other hand, $\frac{7}{4} < 2$. This means that our 'solutions' have to be simultaneously greater than 2 AND less than 2 which is impossible. Therefore, this compound inequality has no solution, which means we did all that work for nothing.[5]

5. Our last example is yet another compound inequality but here, instead of the two inequalities being connected with the conjunction '*and*', they are connected with '*or*', which indicates that we need to find the *union* of the results of each. Starting with $2.1 - 0.01w \leq -3$, we get $-0.01w \leq -5.1$, which gives[6] $w \geq 510$. The second

[5] Much like how people walking on treadmills get nowhere. Math is the endurance cardio of the brain, folks!

[6] Don't forget to flip the inequality!

inequality, $2.1 - 0.01w \geq 3$, becomes $-0.01w \geq 0.9$, which reduces to $w \leq -90$. Our solution set consists of all real numbers w with $w \geq 510$ *or* $w \leq -90$. In interval notation, this is $(-\infty, -90] \cup [510, \infty)$. $\square$

A.4.3 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 9., solve the given linear equation and check your answer.

1. $3x - 4 = 2 - 4(x - 3)$
2. $\dfrac{3 - 2t}{4} = 7t + 1$
3. $\dfrac{2(w - 3)}{5} = \dfrac{4}{15} - \dfrac{3w + 1}{9}$
4. $-0.02y + 1000 = 0$
5. $\dfrac{49w - 14}{7} = 3w - (2 - 4w)$
6. $7 - (4 - x) = \dfrac{2x - 3}{2}$
7. $3t\sqrt{7} + 5 = 0$
8. $\sqrt{50}y = \dfrac{6 - \sqrt{8}y}{3}$
9. $4 - (2x + 1) = \dfrac{x\sqrt{7}}{9}$

In equations 10. - 27., solve each equation for the indicated variable.

10. Solve for y: $3x + 2y = 4$
11. Solve for x: $3x + 2y = 4$
12. Solve for C: $F = \dfrac{9}{5}C + 32$
13. Solve for x: $p = -2.5x + 15$
14. Solve for x: $C = 200x + 1000$
15. Solve for y: $x = 4(y + 1) + 3$
16. Solve for w: $vw - 1 = 3v$
17. Solve for v: $vw - 1 = 3v$
18. Solve for y: $x(y - 3) = 2y + 1$
19. Solve for π: $C = 2\pi r$
20. Solve for V: $PV = nRT$
21. Solve for R: $PV = nRT$
22. Solve for g: $E = mgh$
23. Solve for m: $E = \dfrac{1}{2}mv^2$

In Exercises 24. - 27., the subscripts on the variables have no intrinsic mathematical meaning; they're just used to distinguish one variable from another. In other words, treat 'P_1' and 'P_2' as two different variables as you would 'x' and 'y.' (The same goes for 'x' and 'x_0,' etc.)

24. Solve for V_2: $P_1V_1 = P_2V_2$
25. Solve for t: $x = x_0 + at$
26. Solve for x: $y - y_0 = m(x - x_0)$
27. Solve for T_1: $q = mc(T_2 - T_1)$
28. With the help of your classmates, find values for c so that the equation: $2x - 5c = 1 - c(x + 2)$
    (a) has $x = 42$ as a solution.
    (b) has no solution (that is, the equation is a contradiction.)

    Is it possible to find a value of c so the equation is an identity? Explain.

In Exercises 29. - 46., solve the given inequality. Write your answer using interval notation.

29. $3 - 4x \geq 0$
30. $2t - 1 < 3 - (4t - 3)$
31. $\dfrac{7 - y}{4} \geq 3y + 1$
32. $0.05R + 1.2 > 0.8 - 0.25R$
33. $7 - (2 - x) \leq x + 3$
34. $\dfrac{10m + 1}{5} \geq 2m - \dfrac{1}{2}$
35. $x\sqrt{12} - \sqrt{3} > \sqrt{3}x + \sqrt{27}$
36. $2t - 7 \leq \sqrt[3]{18}t$
37. $117y \geq y\sqrt{2} - 7y\sqrt[4]{8}$
38. $-\dfrac{1}{2} \leq 5x - 3 \leq \dfrac{1}{2}$
39. $-\dfrac{3}{2} \leq \dfrac{4 - 2t}{10} < \dfrac{7}{6}$
40. $-0.1 \leq \dfrac{5 - x}{3} - 2 < 0.1$
41. $2y \leq 3 - y < 7$
42. $3x \geq 4 - x \geq 3$
43. $6 - 5t > \dfrac{4t}{3} \geq t - 2$
44. $2x + 1 \leq -1$ or $2x + 1 \geq 1$
45. $4 - x \leq 0$ or $2x + 7 < x$
46. $\dfrac{5 - 2x}{3} > x$ or $2x + 5 \geq 1$

A.4.4 Answers

1. $x = \frac{18}{7}$
2. $t = -\frac{1}{30}$
3. $w = \frac{61}{33}$
4. $y = 50000$
5. All real numbers.
6. No solution.
7. $t = -\frac{5}{3\sqrt{7}} = -\frac{5\sqrt{7}}{21}$
8. $y = \frac{6}{17\sqrt{2}} = \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{17}$
9. $x = \frac{27}{18+\sqrt{7}}$
10. $y = \frac{4-3x}{2}$ or $y = -\frac{3}{2}x + 2$
11. $x = \frac{4-2y}{3}$ or $x = -\frac{2}{3}y + \frac{4}{3}$
12. $C = \frac{5}{9}(F - 32)$ or $C = \frac{5}{9}F - \frac{160}{9}$
13. $x = \frac{p-15}{-2.5} = \frac{15-p}{2.5}$ or $x = -\frac{2}{5}p + 6$.
14. $x = \frac{C-1000}{200}$ or $x = \frac{1}{200}C - 5$
15. $y = \frac{x-7}{4}$ or $y = \frac{1}{4}x - \frac{7}{4}$
16. $w = \frac{3v+1}{v}$, provided $v \neq 0$.
17. $v = \frac{1}{w-3}$, provided $w \neq 3$.
18. $y = \frac{3x+1}{x-2}$, provided $x \neq 2$.
19. $\pi = \frac{C}{2r}$, provided $r \neq 0$.
20. $V = \frac{nRT}{P}$, provided $P \neq 0$.
21. $R = \frac{PV}{nT}$, provided $n \neq 0$, $T \neq 0$.
22. $g = \frac{E}{mh}$, provided $m \neq 0$, $h \neq 0$.
23. $m = \frac{2E}{v^2}$, provided $v^2 \neq 0$ (so $v \neq 0$).
24. $V_2 = \frac{P_1V_1}{P_2}$, provided $P_2 \neq 0$.

25. $t = \dfrac{x - x_0}{a}$, provided $a \neq 0$.

26. $x = \dfrac{y - y_0 + mx_0}{m}$ or $x = x_0 + \dfrac{y - y_0}{m}$, provided $m \neq 0$.

27. $T_1 = \dfrac{mcT_2 - q}{mc}$ or $T_1 = T_2 - \dfrac{q}{mc}$, provided $m \neq 0$, $c \neq 0$.

29. $\left(-\infty, \dfrac{3}{4}\right]$

30. $\left(-\infty, \dfrac{7}{6}\right)$

31. $\left(-\infty, \dfrac{3}{13}\right]$

32. $\left(-\dfrac{4}{3}, \infty\right)$

33. No solution.

34. $(-\infty, \infty)$

35. $(4, \infty)$

36. $\left[\dfrac{7}{2 - \sqrt[3]{18}}, \infty\right)$

37. $[0, \infty)$

38. $\left[\dfrac{1}{2}, \dfrac{7}{10}\right]$

39. $\left(-\dfrac{23}{6}, \dfrac{19}{2}\right]$

40. $\left(-\dfrac{13}{10}, -\dfrac{7}{10}\right]$

41. $(-4, 1]$

42. $\{1\} = [1, 1]$

43. $\left[-6, \dfrac{18}{19}\right)$

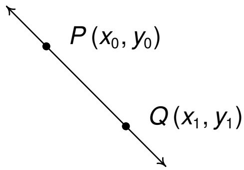
44. $(-\infty, -1] \cup [0, \infty)$

45. $(-\infty, -7) \cup [4, \infty)$

46. $(-\infty, \infty)$

A.5 Graphing Lines

In Section A.3.2, we concerned ourselves with the finite line segment between two points P and Q. Specifically, we found its length (the distance between P and Q) and its midpoint. In this section, our focus will be on the *entire* line, and ways to describe it algebraically. Consider the generic situation below.



To give a sense of the 'steepness' of the line, we recall that we can compute the **slope** of the line as follows. (Read the character Δ as 'change in'.)

Equation A.5.1. The **slope** m of the line containing the points $P\,(x_0, y_0)$ and $Q\,(x_1, y_1)$ is:

$$m = \frac{y_1 - y_0}{x_1 - x_0} = \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x},$$

provided $x_1 \neq x_0$, that is, $\Delta x \neq 0$.

A couple of notes about Equation A.5.1 are in order. First, don't ask why we use the letter 'm' to represent slope. There are many explanations out there, but apparently no one really knows for sure.[1] Secondly, the stipulation $x_1 \neq x_0$ (or $\Delta x \neq 0$) ensures that we aren't trying to divide by zero. The reader is invited to pause to think about what is happening geometrically when the 'change in x' is 0; the anxious reader can skip along to the next example.

Example A.5.1. Find the slope of the line containing the following pairs of

[1]See www.mathforum.org[2] or www.mathworld.wolfram.com[3] for discussions on this topic.

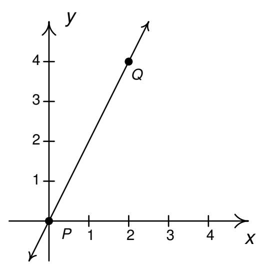
points, if it exists. Plot each pair of points and the line containing them.

1. $P(0,0)$, $Q(2,4)$	2. $P(-1,2)$, $Q(3,4)$	3. $P(-2,3)$, $Q(2,-3)$
4. $P(-3,2)$, $Q(4,2)$	5. $P(2,3)$, $Q(2,-1)$	6. $P(2,3)$, $Q(2.1,-1)$

Solution. In each of these examples, we apply the slope formula, Equation A.5.1.

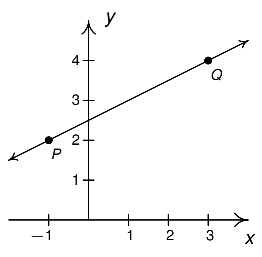
1.

$$m = \frac{4-0}{2-0} = \frac{4}{2} = 2$$



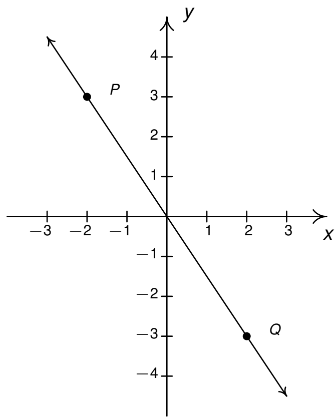
2.

$$m = \frac{4-2}{3-(-1)} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$$



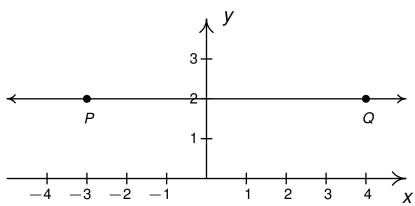
3.

$$m = \frac{-3-3}{2-(-2)} = \frac{-6}{4} = -\frac{3}{2}$$



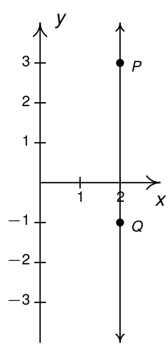
4.

$$m = \frac{2-2}{4-(-3)} = \frac{0}{7} = 0$$



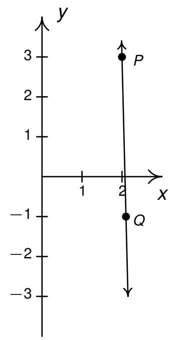
5.

$m = \dfrac{-1-3}{2-2} = \dfrac{-4}{0}$, which is undefined



6.

$$m = \frac{-1-3}{2.1-2} = \frac{-4}{0.1} = -40$$



□

A few comments about Example A.5.1 are in order. First, if the slope is positive then the resulting line is said to be 'increasing', meaning as we move from left to right,[4] the y-values are getting larger.[5] Similarly, if the slope is negative, we say the line is 'decreasing', since as we move from left to right, the y-values are getting smaller. A slope of 0 results in a horizontal line which we say is 'constant', since the y-values here remain unchanged as we move from left to right, and an undefined slope results in a vertical line.[6]

Second, the larger the slope is in absolute value, the steeper the line. You may recall from Intermediate Algebra that slope can be described as the ratio '$\frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$'. For example, if the slope works out to be $\frac{1}{2}$, we can interpret this as a 'rise' of 1 unit upward for every 'run' of 2 units to the right as shown in Figure A.5.1.

In this way, we may view the slope as 'the **rate of change** of y with respect to x'. From the expression

$$m = \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$$

[4]That is, as we increase the x-values . . .

[5]We'll have more to say about this idea in Section **??**.

[6]Some authors use the unfortunate moniker 'no slope' when a slope is undefined. It's easy to confuse the notions of 'no slope' with 'slope of 0'. For this reason, we will describe slopes of vertical lines as 'undefined'.

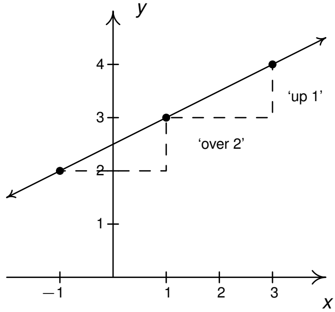


Figure A.5.1: slope = $\frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}} = \frac{1}{2}$

we get $\Delta y = m\Delta x$ so that the y-values change ‘m’ times as fast as the x-values. We’ll have more to say about this concept in Section **??** when we explore applications of linear functions; presently, we will keep our attention focused on the analytic geometry of lines. To that end, our next task is to find algebraic equations that describe lines and we start with a discussion of vertical and horizontal lines.

Consider the two lines shown in Figure A.5.2 and Figure A.5.3: V (for ‘V’ertical Line) and H (for ‘H’orizontal Line).

All of the points on the line V have an x-coordinate of 3. Conversely, any point with an x-coordinate of 3 lies on the line V. Said differently, the point (x, y) lies on V if and only if $x = 3$. Because of this, we say the equation $x = 3$ *describes* the line V, or, said differently, the *graph* of the equation $x = 3$ is the line V.

In Section **??**, we’ll spend a great deal of time talking about graphing equations. For now, it suffices to know that a graph of an equation is a plot of all of the points which make the equation true. So to graph $x = 3$, we plot all of the points (x, y) which satisfy $x = 3$ and this gives us our vertical line V.

Turning our attention to H, we note that every point on H has a y-coordinate of -2, and vice-versa. Hence the equation $y = -2$ describes the line H, or the graph of the equation $y = -2$ is H. In general:

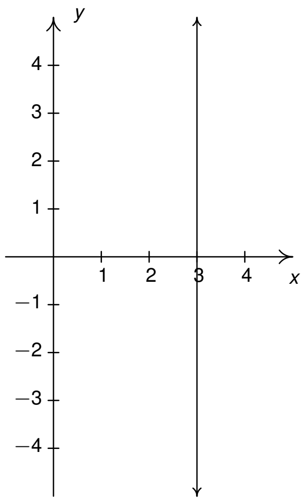


Figure A.5.2: The line V

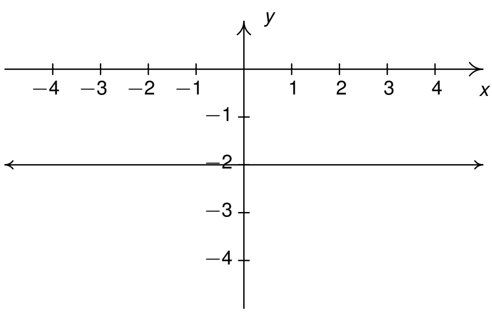


Figure A.5.3: The line H

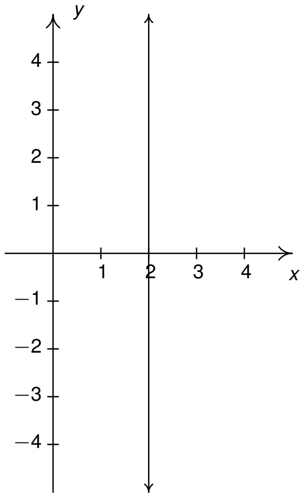


Figure A.5.4: Line L_1

Equation A.5.2. Equations of Vertical and Horizontal Lines

- The graph of the equation $x = a$ in the xy-plane is a **vertical line** through $(a, 0)$.
- The graph of the equation $y = b$ in the xy-plane is a **horizontal line** through $(0, b)$.

Of course, we may be working on axes which aren't labeled with the 'usual' x's and y's. In this case, we understand Equation A.5.2 to say 'horizontal axis label = a' describes a *vertical* line through $(a, 0)$ and 'vertical axis label = b' describes a *horizontal* line through $(0, b)$.

Example A.5.2.

1. Graph the following equations in the xy-plane:

   (a) $y = 3$ (b) $x = -117$

2. Find the equation of each of the given lines in Figure A.5.4 and Figure A.5.5.

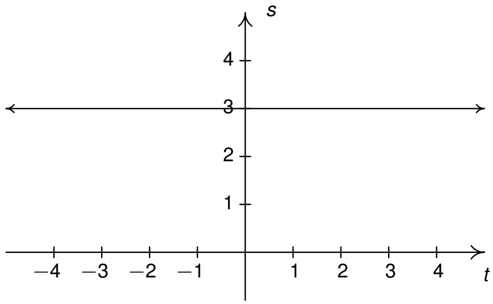


Figure A.5.5: Line L_2

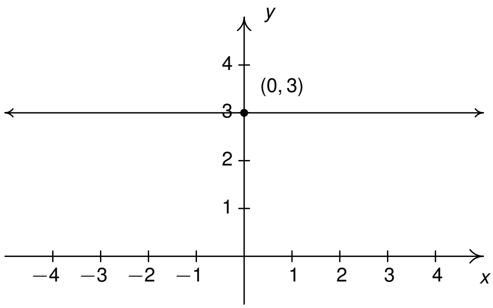


Figure A.5.6: The line $y = 3$

Solution.

1. Since we're in the familiar xy-plane, the graph of $y = 3$ is a horizontal line through $(0, 3)$, shown in Figure A.5.6 on the left and the graph of $x = -117$ is a vertical line through $(-117, 0)$. We scale the x-axis differently than the y-axis to produce the graph in Figure A.5.7.
2. Since L_1 is a vertical line through $(2, 0)$, and the horizontal axis is labeled with 'x', the equation of L_1 is $x = 2$. Since L_2 is a horizontal line through $(0, 3)$ and the vertical axis is labeled as 's', the equation of this line is $s = 3$. □

Using the concept of slope, we can develop equations for the other varieties of lines. Suppose a line has a slope of m and contains the point (x_0, y_0). Suppose (x, y) is another point on the line, as indicated below.

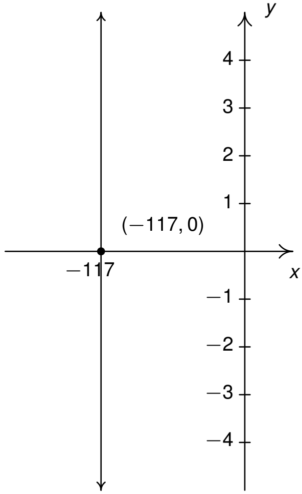
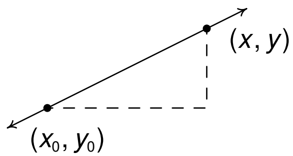


Figure A.5.7: The line $x = -117$



Equation A.5.1 yields

$$\begin{aligned} m &= \frac{y - y_0}{x - x_0} \\ m(x - x_0) &= y - y_0 \\ y - y_0 &= m(x - x_0) \end{aligned}$$

which is known as the **point-slope form** of a line.

Equation A.5.3. The **point-slope form** of the line with slope m containing the point (x_0, y_0) is the equation

$$y - y_0 = m(x - x_0)$$

A few remarks about Equation A.5.3 are in order. First, note that if the slope $m = 0$, then the line is horizontal and Equation A.5.3 reduces to $y - y_0 = 0$ or $y = y_0$, as prescribed by Equation A.5.2.[7] Second, we may need to change the letters in Equation A.5.3 from 'x' and 'y' depending on the context, so while Equation A.5.3 should be committed to memory, it should be understood that 'x' refers to whichever variable is used to label the horizontal axis, and y refers to whichever variable is used to label the vertical axis. Lastly, while Equation A.5.3 is, by far, the easiest way to *construct* the equation of a line given a point and a slope, more often than not, the equation is solved for y and simplified into the form below.

Equation A.5.4. The **slope-intercept form** of the line with slope m and y-intercept $(0, b)$ is the equation

$$y = mx + b$$

Equation A.5.4 is probably[8] a familiar sight from Intermediate Algebra. You may recall from that class that the 'intercept' in 'slope-intercept' comes from the fact that this line 'intercepts' or crosses the y-axis at the point $(0, b)$.[9] If we set the slope, $m = 0$, we obtain $y = b$, the formula for Horizontal Lines first introduced in Equation A.5.2. Hence, any line which has a defined slope m can be represented in both point-slope and slope-intercept forms. The only exceptions are vertical lines.[10] There is one equation - the aptly named 'general form' - which describes every type of line and it is presented on the next page.

[7] Here we have y_0 as the constant whereas in the Equation we used the letter b. The form $y =$ constant is what matters.

[8] Hopefully?

[9] We can verify this algebraically by setting $x = 0$ in the equation $y = mx + b$ and obtaining $y = b$.

[10] We'll have more to say about this in Section **??**.

Equation A.5.5. Every line may be represented by an equation of the form $Ax + By = C$, where A, B and C are real numbers for which A and B aren't both zero. This is called *a* **general form** of the line.

Note the indefinite article 'a' in Equation A.5.5. The line $y = 5$ is a general form for the horizontal line through $(0, 5)$, but so are $3y = 15$ and $0.5y = 2.5$. The reader is left to ponder the use of the definite article 'the' in Equations A.5.3 and A.5.4. Regardless of *which* form the equation of a line takes, note that the variables involved are all raised to the first power.[11] For instance, there are no $\sqrt{x}$ terms, no y^2 terms or any variables appearing in denominators. Let's look at a few examples.

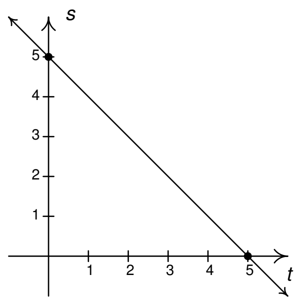
Example A.5.3.

1. Graph the following equations in the xy-plane:

   (a) $y = 3x - 1$ (b) $2x + 4y = 3$

2. Find the slope-intercept form of the line containing the points $(-1, 3)$ and $(2, 1)$.

3. Find the slope-intercept form of the equation of the line below:



Solution.

1. To graph a line, we need just two points on that line. There are several ways to do this, and we showcase two of them here. For

[11] Recall, $x = x^1$, $y = y^1$, etc.

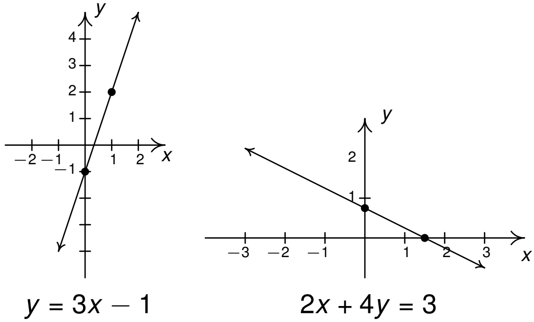


Figure A.5.8: Answer for Example A.5.3 Problem 1

the first equation, we recognize that $y = 3x - 1$ is in slope-intercept form, $y = mx + b$, with $m = 3$ and $b = -1$. This immediately gives us one point on the graph – the y-intercept $(0, -1)$. From here, we use the slope $m = 3 = \frac{3}{1}$ and move one unit to the right and three units up, to obtain a second point on the line, $(1, 2)$. Connecting these points gives us the graph on the left in Figure A.5.8.

The second equation, $2x + 4y = 3$, is a general form of a line. To get two points here, we choose 'convenient' values for one of the variables, and solve for the other variable. Choosing $x = 0$, for example, reduces $2x + 4y = 3$ to $4y = 3$, or $y = \frac{3}{4}$. This means the point $\left(0, \frac{3}{4}\right)$ is on the graph. Choosing $y = 0$ gives $2x = 3$, or $x = \frac{3}{2}$. This gives is a second point on the line, $\left(\frac{3}{2}, 0\right)$.[12] Our graph of $2x + 4y = 3$ is on the right in Figure A.5.8.

2. We'll assume we're using the familiar (x, y) axis labels and begin by finding the slope of the line using Equation A.5.1: $m = \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{1-3}{2-(-1)} = -\frac{2}{3}$. Next, we substitute this result, along with one of the given points, into the point-slope equation of the line, Equation A.5.3. We have two options for the point (x_0, y_0). We'll use $(-1, 3)$ and leave it to the reader to check that using $(2, 1)$ results in the same equation. Substituting into the point-slope form of the line, we

[12] You may recall, that this is the x-intercept of the line.

get

$$\begin{aligned}
y - y_0 &= m(x - x_0) \\
y - 3 &= -\frac{2}{3}(x - (-1)) \\
y - 3 &= -\frac{2}{3}(x + 1) \\
y - 3 &= -\frac{2}{3}x - \frac{2}{3} \\
y &= -\frac{2}{3}x - \frac{2}{3} + 3 \\
y &= -\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{7}{3}.
\end{aligned}$$

We can check our answer by showing that both $(-1, 3)$ and $(2, 1)$ are on the graph of $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{7}{3}$ algebraically by showing that the equation holds true when we substitute $x = -1$ and $y = 3$ and when $x = 2$ and $y = 1$.

3. From the graph, we see that the points $(0, 5)$ and $(5, 0)$ are on the line, so we may proceed as we did in the previous problem. Here, however, we use 't' in place of 'x' and 's' in place of 'y' in accordance to the axis labels given. We find the slope $m = \frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t} = \frac{0-5}{5-0} = -1$. As before, we have two points to choose from to substitute into the point-slope formula, and, as before, we'll select one of them, $(0, 5)$ and leave the computations with $(5, 0)$ to the reader.

$$\begin{aligned}
s - s_0 &= m(t - t_0) \\
s - 5 &= (-1)(t - 0) \\
s - 5 &= -t \\
s &= -t + 5.
\end{aligned}$$

As before we can check this line contains both points $(t, s) = (0, 5)$ and $(t, s) = (5, 0)$ algebraically. $\square$

While every point on a line holds value and meaning,[13] we've reminded you of certain points, called 'intercepts,' which hold special enough significance to be singled out. Formally, we define these as follows.

Definition A.5.1. Given a graph of an equation in the xy-plane:

- A point on a graph which is also on the x-axis is called an ***x*-intercept** of the graph. To determine the x-intercept(s) of a graph, set $y = 0$ in the equation and solve for x.
  NOTE: x-intercepts always have the form: $(x_0, 0)$.
- A point on a graph which is also on the y-axis is called an ***y*-intercept** of the graph. To determine the y-intercept(s) of a graph, set $x = 0$ in the equation and solve for y.
  NOTE: y-intercepts always have the form: $(0, y_0)$.

As usual, the labels of the axes in the problem will dictate the labels on the intercepts. If we're working in the vw-plane, for instance, there would be v- and w-intercepts.

The last little bit of analytic geometry we need to review about lines are the concepts of 'parallel' and 'perpendicular' lines. Parallel lines do not intersect,[14] and hence, parallel lines necessarily have the same slope. Perpendicular lines intersect at a right (90°) angle. The relationship between these slopes is somewhat more complicated, and is summarized below.

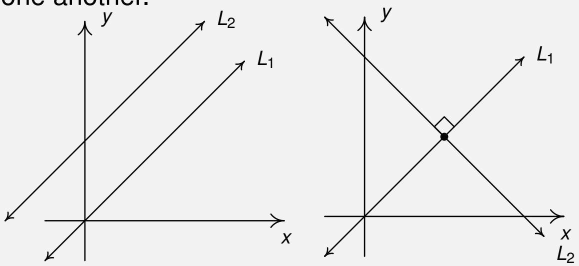
[13] Lines missing points - even one - usually belie some algebraic pathology which we'll discuss in more detail in Chapter **??**.

[14] Well, at least in Euclidean Geometry . . .

Theorem A.5.1. Suppose line L_1 has slope m_1 and line L_2 has slope m_2:

- L_1 and L_2 are parallel (written $L_1 \parallel L_2$) if and only if $m_1 = m_2$.
- If $m_1 \neq 0$ and $m_2 \neq 0$ then L_1 and L_2 are perpendicular (written $L_1 \perp L_2$) if and only if $m_1 m_2 = -1$.

  NOTE: $m_1 m_2 = -1$ is equivalent to $m_2 = -\dfrac{1}{m_1}$, so that perpendicular lines have slopes which are 'opposite reciprocals' of one another.



$L_1 \parallel L_2$, $m_1 = m_2$ $\qquad$ $L_1 \perp L_2$, $m_1 m_2 = -1$

A few remarks about Theorem A.5.1 are in order. First off, the theorem assumes that the slopes of the lines exist. The reader is encouraged to think about the case when one (or both) of the slopes don't exist. Along those same lines, the reader is encouraged to think about why the stipulations $m_1 \neq 0$ and $m_2 \neq 0$ appear in the statement regarding slopes of perpendicular lines, and what happens in this case as well. (Think geometrically!) In Exercise 41., you'll prove the assertion about the slopes of perpendicular lines. For now, we accept it as true and use it in the following example.

Example A.5.4. For line $y = 2x - 1$ and the point $(3, 4)$, find:

1. the equation of the line parallel to the given line which contains the given point.
2. the equation of the line perpendicular to the given line which contains the given point. Check your answers by graphing them, along with the original line, using a graphing utility.

Solution.

1. Since $y = 2x - 1$ is already in slope-intercept form, we have the slope $m = 2$. To find the line parallel to this line containing $(3, 4)$, we use the point-slope form with $m = 2$ to get:

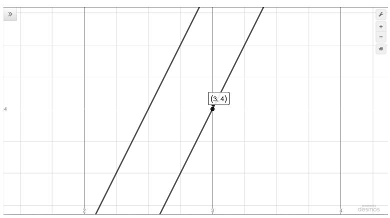
$$\begin{aligned} y - y_0 &= m(x - x_0) \\ y - 4 &= 2(x - 3) \\ y - 4 &= 2x - 6 \\ y &= 2x - 2 \end{aligned}$$

   Algebraically, we can verify that the slope is indeed 2 and that when $x = 3$ we get $y = 4$. Using a graphing utility with a window centered at the point $(3, 4)$, we graph both $y = 2x - 1$ and $y = 2x - 2$ below on the left and observe that they appear to be parallel.

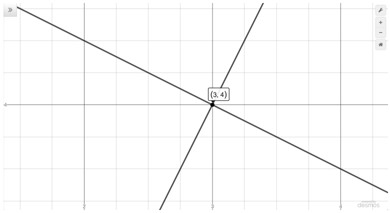
2. To find the line perpendicular to $y = 2x - 1$ containing $(3, 4)$, we use the slope $m = -\frac{1}{2}$ in the point-slope formula:

$$\begin{aligned} y - y_0 &= m(x - x_0) \\ y - 4 &= -\frac{1}{2}(x - 3) \\ y - 4 &= -\frac{1}{2}x + \frac{3}{2} \\ y &= -\frac{1}{2}x + \frac{11}{2} \end{aligned}$$

   Algebraically, we check that the slope is $m = -\frac{1}{2}$ and when $x = 3$ we get $y = 4$ as required. When checking using our graphing utility, we centered the viewing window at $(3, 4)$ and had to 'square' it, removing its default aspect ratio, to truly observe the perpendicular nature of the lines.



$y = 2x - 1$ and $\boldsymbol{y = 2x - 2}$

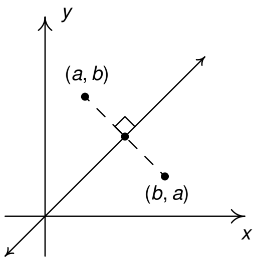


$\boldsymbol{y = 2x - 1}$ and $\boldsymbol{y = -\frac{1}{2}x + \frac{11}{2}}$

Our last example with lines sets up a fourth kind of symmetry which will be revisited in Section **??**.

Example A.5.5. Show that the points (a, b) and (b, a) in the xy-plane are symmetric about the line $y = x$.

Solution. If $a = b$ then $(a, b) = (a, a) = (b, a)$ and this point lies on the line $y = x$.[15] To prove the claim for the case when $a \neq b$, we will show that the line $y = x$ is a perpendicular bisector of the line segment with endpoints (a, b) and (b, a), as illustrated below.



To show the 'perpendicular' part, we first note the slope of the line containing (a, b) and (b, a) is

$$m = \frac{a - b}{b - a} = \frac{\cancel{(a - b)}}{-\cancel{(b - a)}} = -1$$

[15] Please ask your instructor if lying on the line counts as being 'symmetric about the line' or not.

Since the slope of $y = x = 1x + 0$ is $m = 1$, we see that the slopes of these two lines are negative reciprocals. Hence, $y = x$ and the line segment with endpoints (a, b) and (b, a) are perpendicular. For the 'bisector' part, we use Equation A.3.2 to find the midpoint of the line segment with endpoints (a, b) and (b, a):

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \left(\frac{a+b}{2}, \frac{b+a}{2}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{a+b}{2}, \frac{a+b}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Since the x and y coordinates of this point are the same, we find that the midpoint lies on the line $y = x$. $\square$

A.5.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 10., find both the point-slope form and the slope-intercept form of the line with the given slope which passes through the given point.

1. $m = 3, \quad P(3, -1)$
2. $m = -2, \quad P(-5, 8)$
3. $m = -1, \quad P(-7, -1)$
4. $m = \frac{2}{3}, \quad P(-2, 1)$
5. $m = -\frac{1}{5}, \quad P(10, 4)$
6. $m = \frac{1}{7}, \quad P(-1, 4)$
7. $m = 0, \quad P(3, 117)$
8. $m = -\sqrt{2}, \quad P(0, -3)$
9. $m = -5, \quad P(\sqrt{3}, 2\sqrt{3})$
10. $m = 678, \quad P(-1, -12)$

In Exercises 11. - 20., find the slope-intercept form of the line which passes through the given points.

11. $P(0, 0), \ Q(-3, 5)$
12. $P(-1, -2), \ Q(3, -2)$
13. $P(5, 0), \ Q(0, -8)$
14. $P(3, -5), \ Q(7, 4)$
15. $P(-1, 5), \ Q(7, 5)$
16. $P(4, -8), \ Q(5, -8)$
17. $P\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}\right), \ Q\left(\frac{5}{2}, -\frac{7}{4}\right)$
18. $P\left(\frac{2}{3}, \frac{7}{2}\right), \ Q\left(-\frac{1}{3}, \frac{3}{2}\right)$
19. $P\left(\sqrt{2}, -\sqrt{2}\right), \ Q\left(-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}\right)$
20. $P\left(-\sqrt{3}, -1\right), \ Q\left(\sqrt{3}, 1\right)$

In Exercises 21. - 26., graph the line. Find the slope, y-intercept and x-intercept, if any exist.

21. $y = 2x - 1$
22. $y = 3 - x$
23. $y = 3$
24. $y = 0$
25. $y = \frac{2}{3}x + \frac{1}{3}$
26. $y = \dfrac{1 - x}{2}$
27. Graph $3v + 2w = 6$ on both the vw- and wv-axes. What characteristics to both graphs share? What's different?
28. Find all of the points on the line $y = 2x + 1$ which are 4 units from the point $(-1, 3)$.

In Exercises 29. - 34., you are given a line and a point which is not on that line. Find the line parallel to the given line which passes through the given point.

29. $y = 3x + 2, \ P(0, 0)$
30. $y = -6x + 5, \ P(3, 2)$
31. $y = \frac{2}{3}x - 7, \ P(6, 0)$
32. $y = \dfrac{4 - x}{3}, \ P(1, -1)$

33. $y = 6$, $P(3, -2)$

34. $x = 1$, $P(-5, 0)$

In Exercises 35. - 40., you are given a line and a point which is not on that line. Find the line perpendicular to the given line which passes through the given point.

35. $y = \frac{1}{3}x + 2$, $P(0, 0)$

36. $y = -6x + 5$, $P(3, 2)$

37. $y = \frac{2}{3}x - 7$, $P(6, 0)$

38. $y = \dfrac{4 - x}{3}$, $P(1, -1)$

39. $y = 6$, $P(3, -2)$

40. $x = 1$, $P(-5, 0)$

41. We shall now prove that $y = m_1x + b_1$ is perpendicular to $y = m_2x + b_2$ if and only if $m_1 \cdot m_2 = -1$. To make our lives easier we shall assume that $m_1 > 0$ and $m_2 < 0$. We can also "move" the lines so that their point of intersection is the origin without messing things up, so we'll assume $b_1 = b_2 = 0$. (Take a moment with your classmates to discuss why this is okay.) Graphing the lines and plotting the points $O(0, 0)$, $P(1, m_1)$ and $Q(1, m_2)$ gives us the set up shown in Figure A.5.9.

The line $y = m_1x$ will be perpendicular to the line $y = m_2x$ if and only if $\triangle OPQ$ is a right triangle. Let d_1 be the distance from O to P, let d_2 be the distance from O to Q and let d_3 be the distance from P to Q. Use the Pythagorean Theorem to show that $\triangle OPQ$ is a right triangle if and only if $m_1 \cdot m_2 = -1$ by showing $d_1^2 + d_2^2 = d_3^2$ if and only if $m_1 \cdot m_2 = -1$.

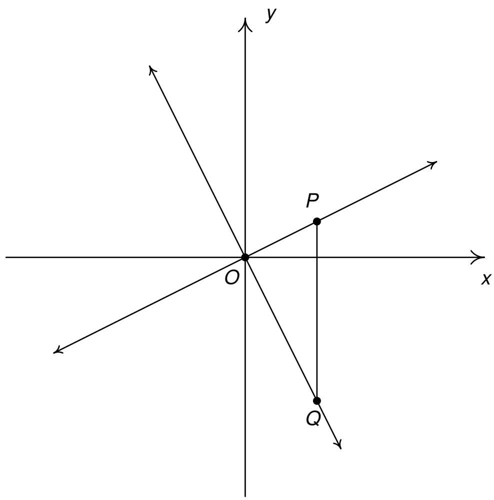
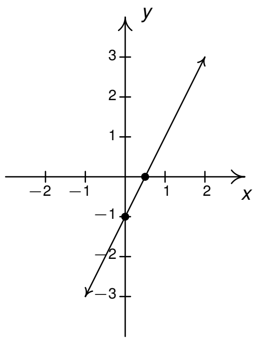


Figure A.5.9: Product of the slopes of perpendicular lines

A.5.2 Answers

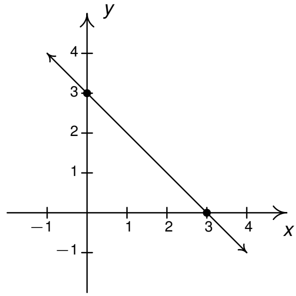
1. $y + 1 = 3(x - 3)$
   $y = 3x - 10$
2. $y - 8 = -2(x + 5)$
   $y = -2x - 2$
3. $y + 1 = -(x + 7)$
   $y = -x - 8$
4. $y - 1 = \frac{2}{3}(x + 2)$
   $y = \frac{2}{3}x + \frac{7}{3}$
5. $y - 4 = -\frac{1}{5}(x - 10)$
   $y = -\frac{1}{5}x + 6$
6. $y - 4 = \frac{1}{7}(x + 1)$
   $y = \frac{1}{7}x + \frac{29}{7}$
7. $y - 117 = 0$
   $y = 117$
8. $y + 3 = -\sqrt{2}(x - 0)$
   $y = -\sqrt{2}x - 3$
9. $y - 2\sqrt{3} = -5(x - \sqrt{3})$
   $y = -5x + 7\sqrt{3}$
10. $y + 12 = 678(x + 1)$
    $y = 678x + 666$
11. $y = -\frac{5}{3}x$
12. $y = -2$
13. $y = \frac{8}{5}x - 8$
14. $y = \frac{9}{4}x - \frac{47}{4}$
15. $y = 5$
16. $y = -8$
17. $y = -\frac{5}{4}x + \frac{11}{8}$
18. $y = 2x + \frac{13}{6}$
19. $y = -x$
20. $y = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}x$
21.

$y = 2x - 1$
slope: $m = 2$
y-intercept: $(0, -1)$
x-intercept: $\left(\frac{1}{2}, 0\right)$



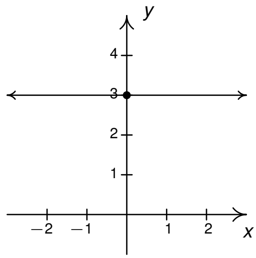
22.

$y = 3 - x$
slope: $m = -1$
y-intercept: $(0, 3)$
x-intercept: $(3, 0)$



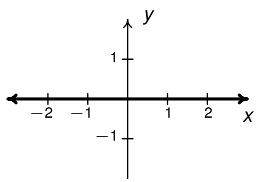
23.

$y = 3$
slope: $m = 0$
y-intercept: $(0, 3)$
x-intercept: none



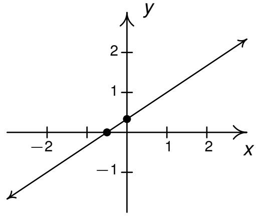
24.

$y = 0$
slope: $m = 0$
y-intercept: $(0, 0)$
x-intercept:
$\{(x, 0) \mid x \text{ is a real number}\}$



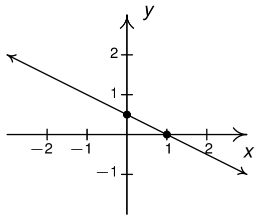
25.

$y = \frac{2}{3}x + \frac{1}{3}$
slope: $m = \frac{2}{3}$
y-intercept: $\left(0, \frac{1}{3}\right)$
x-intercept: $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, 0\right)$



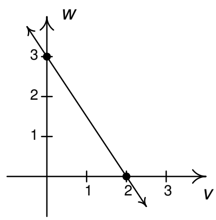
26.

$y = \dfrac{1-x}{2}$
slope: $m = -\frac{1}{2}$
y-intercept: $\left(0, \frac{1}{2}\right)$
x-intercept: $(1, 0)$

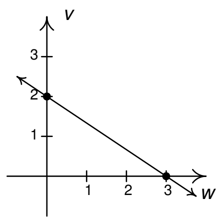


27.

$w = -\frac{3}{2}v + 3$
slope: $m = -\frac{3}{2}$
w-intercept: $(0, 3)$
v-intercept: $(2, 0)$



$v = -\frac{2}{3}w + 2$
slope: $m = -\frac{2}{3}$
v-intercept: $(0, 2)$
w-intercept: $(3, 0)$



28. $(-1, -1)$ and $\left(\frac{11}{5}, \frac{27}{5}\right)$
29. $y = 3x$
30. $y = -6x + 20$
31. $y = \frac{2}{3}x - 4$

32. $y = -\frac{1}{3}x - \frac{2}{3}$
33. $y = -2$
34. $x = -5$
35. $y = -3x$
36. $y = \frac{1}{6}x + \frac{3}{2}$
37. $y = -\frac{3}{2}x + 9$
38. $y = 3x - 4$
39. $x = 3$
40. $y = 0$

A.6 Systems of Two Linear Equations in Two Unknowns

This section of the Appendix combines ideas from Section A.4 and A.5 so that we can start to solve systems of linear equations. Before we get ahead of ourselves, let's review a few definitions.

Definition A.6.1. A **linear equation in two variables** is an equation of the form $a_1x + a_2y = c$ where a_1, a_2 and c are real numbers and at least one of a_1 and a_2 is nonzero.

For reasons which will become clear when you study Chapter **??**, we are using subscripts in Definition A.6.1 to indicate different, but fixed, real numbers and those subscripts have no mathematical meaning beyond that. For example, $3x - \frac{y}{2} = 0.1$ is a linear equation in two variables with $a_1 = 3$, $a_2 = -\frac{1}{2}$ and $c = 0.1$. We can also consider $x = 5$ to be a linear equation in two variables[1] by identifying $a_1 = 1$, $a_2 = 0$, and $c = 5$.

If a_1 and a_2 are both 0, then depending on c, we get either an equation which is *always* true, called an **identity**, or an equation which is *never* true, called a **contradiction**. (If $c = 0$, then we get $0 = 0$, which is always true. If $c \neq 0$, then we'd have $0 \neq 0$, which is never true.) Even though identities and contradictions have a large role to play throughout Chapter **??**, we do not consider them linear equations. The key to identifying linear equations is to note that the variables involved are to the first power and that the coefficients of the variables are numbers. Some examples of equations which are non-linear are $x^2 + y = 1$, $xy = 5$ and $e^{2x} + \ln(y) = 1$. The reader should consider why these do not satisfy Definition A.6.1.

We know from our work is Sections A.5 that the graphs of linear equations are lines. If we couple two or more linear equations together, in effect to find the points of intersection of two or more lines, we obtain a **system of**

[1]Critics may argue that $x = 5$ is clearly an equation in one variable. It can also be considered an equation in 117 variables with the coefficients of 116 variables set to 0. As with many conventions in Mathematics, the context will clarify the situation.

linear equations in two variables. Our first example explores the basic techniques for solving these systems. Remember - if we are looking for points in the plane, then both the x and y values are important. This is a key distinction between solving one equation and solving a *system* of equations.

Example A.6.1. Solve the following systems of equations. Check your answer algebraically and graphically. (Said another way, make sure both x and y are correct!)

1. $\left\{\begin{array}{rcl} 2x - y & = & 1 \\ y & = & 3 \end{array}\right.$

2. $\left\{\begin{array}{rcr} 3x + 4y & = & -2 \\ -3x - y & = & 5 \end{array}\right.$

3. $\left\{\begin{array}{rcl} \frac{x}{3} - \frac{4y}{5} & = & \frac{7}{5} \\ \frac{2x}{9} + \frac{y}{3} & = & \frac{1}{2} \end{array}\right.$

4. $\left\{\begin{array}{rcl} 2x - 4y & = & 6 \\ 3x - 6y & = & 9 \end{array}\right.$

5. $\left\{\begin{array}{rcr} 6x + 3y & = & 9 \\ 4x + 2y & = & 12 \end{array}\right.$

6. $\left\{\begin{array}{rcr} x - y & = & 0 \\ x + y & = & 2 \\ -2x + y & = & -2 \end{array}\right.$

Solution.

1. Our first system is nearly solved for us. The second equation tells us that $y = 3$. To find the corresponding value of x, we **substitute** this value for y into the the first equation to obtain $2x - 3 = 1$, so that $x = 2$. Our solution to the system is $(2, 3)$. To check this algebraically, we substitute $x = 2$ and $y = 3$ into each equation and see that they are satisfied. We see $2(2) - 3 = 1$, and $3 = 3$, as required. To check our answer graphically, we graph the lines $2x - y = 1$ and $y = 3$ and verify that they intersect at $(2, 3)$. See left of Figure A.6.1.

2. To solve the second system, we use the **addition** method to **eliminate** the variable x. We take the two equations as given and 'add equals to equals' to obtain

$$\begin{array}{rrcr} & 3x + 4y & = & -2 \\ + & (-3x - y & = & 5) \\ \hline & 3y & = & 3 \end{array}$$

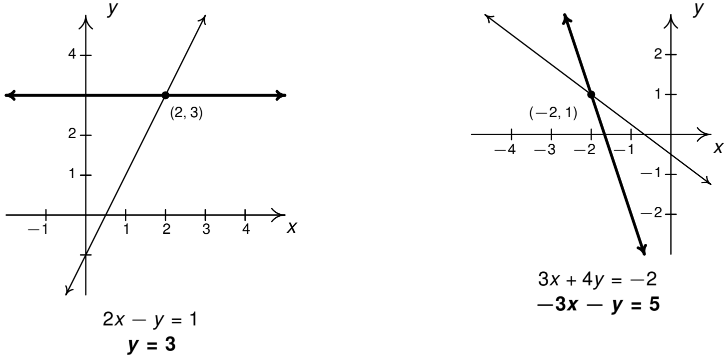


Figure A.6.1: Graphing solution for Example A.6.1 Problem 1. and 2.

This gives us $y = 1$. We now substitute $y = 1$ into either of the two equations, say $-3x - y = 5$, to get $-3x - 1 = 5$ so that $x = -2$. Our solution is $(-2, 1)$. Substituting $x = -2$ and $y = 1$ into the first equation gives $3(-2) + 4(1) = -2$, which is true, and, likewise, when we check $(-2, 1)$ in the second equation, we get $-3(-2) - 1 = 5$, which is also true. Geometrically, the lines $3x + 4y = -2$ and $-3x - y = 5$ intersect at $(-2, 1)$. See right of Figure A.6.1.

3. The equations in the third system are more approachable if we clear denominators. We multiply both sides of the first equation by 15 and both sides of the second equation by 18 to obtain the kinder, gentler system

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{rcr} 5x - 12y & = & 21 \\ 4x + 6y & = & 9 \end{array} \right.$$

Adding these two equations directly fails to eliminate either of the variables, but we note that if we multiply the first equation by 4 and the second by -5, we will be in a position to eliminate the x term

$$\begin{array}{rrcr} & 20x - 48y & = & 84 \\ + & (-20x - 30y & = & -45) \\ \hline & -78y & = & 39 \end{array}$$

From this we get $y = -\frac{1}{2}$. We can temporarily avoid too much unpleasantness by choosing to substitute $y = -\frac{1}{2}$ into one of the equivalent equations we found by clearing denominators, say into $5x - 12y = 21$. We get $5x + 6 = 21$ which gives $x = 3$. Our answer is $\left(3, -\frac{1}{2}\right)$. At this point, we have no choice – in order to check an answer algebraically, we must see if the answer satisfies both of the *original* equations, so we substitute $x = 3$ and $y = -\frac{1}{2}$ into both $\frac{x}{3} - \frac{4y}{5} = \frac{7}{5}$ and $\frac{2x}{9} + \frac{y}{3} = \frac{1}{2}$. We leave it to the reader to verify that the solution is correct. Graphing both of the lines involved with considerable care yields an intersection point of $\left(3, -\frac{1}{2}\right)$. (The picture is on the next page.)

4. An eerie calm settles over us as we cautiously approach our fourth system. Do its friendly integer coefficients belie something more sinister? We note that if we multiply both sides of the first equation by 3 and both sides of the second equation by -2, we are ready to eliminate the x

$$\begin{array}{rrcr} & 6x - 12y & = & 18 \\ + & (-6x + 12y & = & -18) \\ \hline & 0 & = & 0 \end{array}$$

We eliminated not only the x, but the y as well and we are left with the identity $0 = 0$. This means that these two different linear equations are, in fact, equivalent. In other words, if an ordered pair (x, y) satisfies the equation $2x - 4y = 6$, it *automatically* satisfies the equation $3x - 6y = 9$.

This system has infinitely many solutions and one way to describe the solution set to this system is to use the roster method[2] and write $\{(x, y) \mid 2x - 4y = 6\}$. While this is correct (and corresponds exactly to what's happening graphically, as we shall see shortly), we take this opportunity to introduce the notion of a **parametric solution to a system**.

[2]See Section A.1 for a review of this.

Our first step is to solve $2x - 4y = 6$ for one of the variables, say $y = \frac{1}{2}x - \frac{3}{2}$. For each value of x, the formula $y = \frac{1}{2}x - \frac{3}{2}$ determines the corresponding y-value of a solution. Since we have no restriction on x, it is called a **free variable**. We let $x = t$, a so-called 'parameter', and get $y = \frac{1}{2}t - \frac{3}{2}$. Our set of solutions can then be described as $\left\{ \left(t, \frac{1}{2}t - \frac{3}{2}\right) \,\middle|\, -\infty < t < \infty \right\}$.[3]

For specific values of t, we can generate solutions. For example, $t = 0$ gives us the solution $\left(0, -\frac{3}{2}\right)$; $t = 117$ gives us $(117, 57)$, and while we can check that each of these particular solutions satisfy both equations, the question is how do we check our general answer algebraically? Same as always.

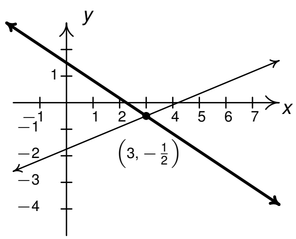
We claim that for any real number t, the pair $\left(t, \frac{1}{2}t - \frac{3}{2}\right)$ satisfies both equations. Substituting $x = t$ and $y = \frac{1}{2}t - \frac{3}{2}$ into $2x - 4y = 6$ gives $2t - 4\left(\frac{1}{2}t - \frac{3}{2}\right) = 6$. Simplifying, we get $2t - 2t + 6 = 6$, which is always true. Similarly, when we make these substitutions in the equation $3x - 6y = 9$, we get $3t - 6\left(\frac{1}{2}t - \frac{3}{2}\right) = 9$ which reduces to $3t - 3t + 9 = 9$, so it checks out, too.

Geometrically, $2x - 4y = 6$ and $3x - 6y = 9$ are the same line, which means that they intersect at every point on their graphs. The reader is encouraged to think about how our parametric solution says exactly that.

The picture for this system is shown in Figure A.6.2 on the right while the picture for the previous example is shown on the left.

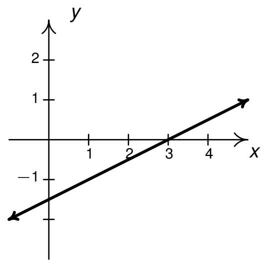
5. Multiplying both sides of the first equation by 2 and the both sides of the second equation by -3, we set the stage to eliminate x

[3]Note that we could have just as easily chosen to solve $2x - 4y = 6$ for x to obtain $x = 2y + 3$. Letting y be the parameter t, we have that for any value of t, $x = 2t + 3$, which gives $\{(2t + 3, t) \mid -\infty < t < \infty\}$. There is no one correct way to parameterize the solution set, which is why it is always best to check your answer.



$\frac{x}{3} - \frac{4y}{5} = \frac{7}{5}$

$\boldsymbol{\frac{2x}{9} + \frac{y}{3} = \frac{1}{2}}$



$2x - 4y = 6$

$\boldsymbol{3x - 6y = 9}$

(Same line.)

Figure A.6.2: Graphing solution for Example A.6.1 Problem 2. and 4.

$$\begin{array}{rrcr} & 12x + 6y & = & 18 \\ + & (-12x - 6y & = & -36) \\ \hline & 0 & = & -18 \end{array}$$

As in the previous example, both x and y dropped out of the equation, but we are left with an irrevocable contradiction, $0 = -18$. This tells us that it is impossible to find a pair (x, y) which satisfies both equations; in other words, the system has no solution. Graphically, the lines $6x + 3y = 9$ and $4x + 2y = 12$ are distinct and parallel, so they do not intersect.

6. We can begin to solve our last system by adding the first two equations

$$\begin{array}{rrcr} & x - y & = & 0 \\ + & (x + y & = & 2) \\ \hline & 2x & = & 2 \end{array}$$

which gives $x = 1$. Substituting this into the first equation gives $1 - y = 0$ so that $y = 1$. We seem to have determined a solution

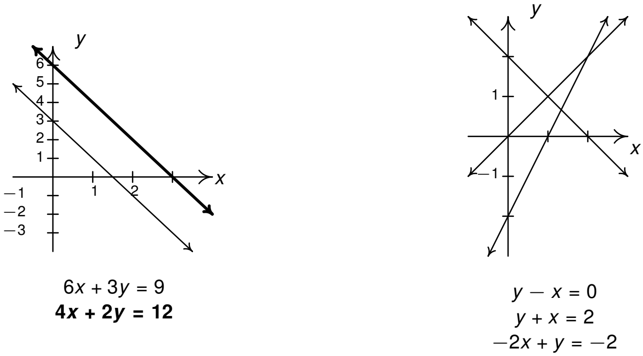


Figure A.6.3: Graphing solution for Example A.6.1 Problem 5. and 6.

to our system, $(1, 1)$. While this checks in the first two equations, when we substitute $x = 1$ and $y = 1$ into the third equation, we get $-2(1) + (1) = -2$ which simplifies to the contradiction $-1 = -2$. Graphing the lines $x - y = 0$, $x + y = 2$, and $-2x + y = -2$, we see that the first two lines do, in fact, intersect at $(1, 1)$, however, all three lines never intersect at the same point simultaneously, which is what is required if a solution to the system is to be found. See Figure A.6.3. □

A few remarks about Example A.6.1 are in order. Notice that some of the systems of linear equations had solutions while others did not. Those which have solutions are called **consistent**, those with no solution are called **inconsistent**. We also distinguish between the two different types of behavior among consistent systems. Those which admit free variables are called **dependent** and those with no free variables are called **independent**.[4]

Using this new vocabulary, we classify numbers 1, 2 and 3 in Example A.6.1 as consistent independent systems, number 4 is consistent depen-

[4] In the case of systems of linear equations, regardless of the number of equations or variables, consistent independent systems have exactly one solution. The reader is encouraged to think about why this is the case for linear equations in two variables. Hint: think geometrically.

dent, and numbers 5 and 6 are inconsistent.[5] The system in 6 above is called **overdetermined**, since we have more equations than variables.[6] Not surprisingly, a system with more variables than equations is called **underdetermined**. While the system in number 6 above is overdetermined and inconsistent, there exist overdetermined consistent systems (both dependent and independent) and we leave it to the reader to think about what is happening algebraically and geometrically in these cases. Likewise, there are both consistent and inconsistent underdetermined systems,[7] but a consistent underdetermined system of linear equations is necessarily dependent.[8]

We end this section with a story problem. It is an example of a classic "mixture" problem and should be familiar to most readers. The basic goal here is to create two equations: one which represents

$$\text{stuff} + \text{other stuff} = \text{total stuff}$$

and the other which represents

$$\text{value of stuff} + \text{value of other stuff} = \text{value of total stuff.}$$

Example A.6.2. The Dude-Bros want to create a highly caffeinated, yet still drinkable, fruit punch for their annual "Disturb the Neighbors BBQ and Dance Competition". They plan to add Sasquatch Sweat$^{\text{TM}}$ Energy Drink, which has 100 mg. of caffeine per fluid ounce, to Frooty Giggle Delight$^{\text{TM}}$, which has only 3 mg. of caffeine per fluid ounce. How much of each component is required to make 5 gallons[9] of a fruit punch that has 80 mg. of caffeine per fluid ounce.

[5] The adjectives 'dependent' and 'independent' apply only to *consistent* systems – they describe the *type* of solutions. Is there a free variable (dependent) or not (independent)?

[6] If we think if each variable being an unknown quantity, then ostensibly, to recover two unknown quantities, we need two pieces of information - i.e., two equations. Having more than two equations suggests we have more information than necessary to determine the values of the unknowns. While this is not necessarily the case, it does explain the choice of terminology 'overdetermined'.

[7] We need more than two variables to give an example of the latter.

[8] Again, experience with systems with more variables helps to see this here, as does a solid course in Linear Algebra.

[9] Warning: unit conversion ahead!

Solution. Let S stand for the number of fluid ounces of Sasquatch Sweat$^{\text{TM}}$ Energy Drink and let F be the number of fluid ounces of Frooty Giggle Delight$^{\text{TM}}$ that will be added together. The goal is to make 5 gallons and there are 128 fluid ounces per gallon so the first equation is

$$S + F = 640.$$

That equation describes "stuff + other stuff = total stuff" measured in fluid ounces. Now we need to consider the value of the stuff - in this case we need to see how much caffeine is being contributed by each component. Each fluid ounce of Sasquatch Sweat$^{\text{TM}}$ contains 100 mg. of caffeine so S fluid ounces would contain $100S$ mg./ of caffeine.

Similarly, the F fluid ounces of Frooty Giggle Delight$^{\text{TM}}$ add $3F$ mg. of caffeine to the total mixture. Thus when we go to express "value of stuff + value of other stuff = value of total stuff" we need to figure out how much caffeine is supposed to be in the end product. Well, the goal was 5 gallons of punch that had 80 mg. of caffeine per fluid ounce so the Dude-Bros need to end up with $5*128*80 = 51200$ mg. of caffeine when they're done. Hence the second is equation is

$$100S + 3F = 51200.$$

By turning the first equation into $F = 640 - S$ and substituting that into the second equation we get

$$100S + 3(640 - S) = 51200$$

which yields $S = \frac{49280}{97} \approx 508.04$ fluid ounces. Back-substituting this value of S into the first equation gives us $F = \frac{12800}{97} \approx 131.96$ fluid ounces.

The reader should take the time to verify that $S = \frac{49280}{97}$ and $F = \frac{12800}{97}$ do indeed satisfy both equations and thus are the solution to the problem. Those are fairly unattractive numbers so we end this example by discussing a way to verify an approximate answer which is *reasonable* without having to fight with fractions. Round S down to 508 and round F up to 132. Clearly $508 + 132 = 640$ so the first equation is still satisfied. Notice that $100 * 508 + 3 * 132 = 51196$ which is really close to 51200. Thus the second equation is nearly satisfied which means the values $S = 508$ and $F = 132$, while not precise, are reasonable.[10] □

[10] Just be careful here - sometimes "close enough for the Dude-Bros" is not good enough for your Professor!

A.6.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1 - 8, solve the given system using substitution and/or elimination. Classify each system as consistent independent, consistent dependent, or inconsistent. Check your answers both algebraically and graphically.

1. $\left\{ \begin{array}{rcl} x + 2y & = & 5 \\ x & = & 6 \end{array} \right.$

2. $\left\{ \begin{array}{rcr} 2y - 3x & = & 1 \\ y & = & -3 \end{array} \right.$

3. $\left\{ \begin{array}{rcr} \frac{x+2y}{4} & = & -5 \\ \frac{3x-y}{2} & = & 1 \end{array} \right.$

4. $\left\{ \begin{array}{rcl} \frac{2}{3}x - \frac{1}{5}y & = & 3 \\ \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{3}{4}y & = & 1 \end{array} \right.$

5. $\left\{ \begin{array}{rcr} \frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{3}y & = & -1 \\ 2y - 3x & = & 6 \end{array} \right.$

6. $\left\{ \begin{array}{rcl} x + 4y & = & 6 \\ \frac{1}{12}x + \frac{1}{3}y & = & \frac{1}{2} \end{array} \right.$

7. $\left\{ \begin{array}{rcr} 3y - \frac{3}{2}x & = & -\frac{15}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2}x - y & = & \frac{3}{2} \end{array} \right.$

8. $\left\{ \begin{array}{rcr} \frac{5}{6}x + \frac{5}{3}y & = & -\frac{7}{3} \\ -\frac{10}{3}x - \frac{20}{3}y & = & 10 \end{array} \right.$

9. A local buffet charges \$7.50 per person for the basic buffet and \$9.25 for the deluxe buffet (which includes crab legs.) If 27 diners went out to eat and the total bill was \$227.00 before taxes, how many chose the basic buffet and how many chose the deluxe buffet?

10. At The Old Home Fill'er Up and Keep on a-Truckin' Cafe, Mavis mixes two different types of coffee beans to produce a house blend. The first type costs \$3 per pound and the second costs \$8 per pound. How much of each type does Mavis use to make 50 pounds of a blend which costs \$6 per pound?

11. Skippy has a total of \$10,000 to split between two investments. One account offers 3% simple interest, and the other account offers 8% simple interest. For tax reasons, he can only earn \$500 in interest the entire year. How much money should Skippy invest in each account to earn \$500 in interest for the year?

12. A 10% salt solution is to be mixed with pure water to produce 75 gallons of a 3% salt solution. How much of each are needed?

13. This exercise is a follow-up to Example A.6.2. Work with your classmates to explain why mixing 4 gallons of Sasquatch Sweat$^{\text{TM}}$ Energy Drink and 1 gallon of Frooty Giggle Delight$^{\text{TM}}$ would also produce a mixture that was “close enough for the Dude-Bros”.

A.6.2 Answers

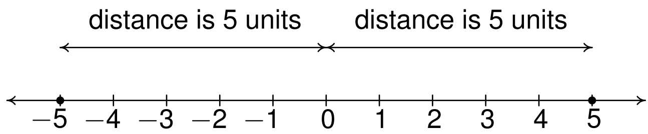
1. Consistent independent
   Solution $\left(6, -\frac{1}{2}\right)$
2. Consistent independent
   Solution $\left(-\frac{7}{3}, -3\right)$
3. Consistent independent
   Solution $\left(-\frac{16}{7}, -\frac{62}{7}\right)$
4. Consistent independent
   Solution $\left(\frac{49}{12}, -\frac{25}{18}\right)$
5. Consistent dependent
   Solution $\left(t, \frac{3}{2}t + 3\right)$
   for all real numbers t
6. Consistent dependent
   Solution $(6 - 4t, t)$
   for all real numbers t
7. Inconsistent
   No solution
8. Inconsistent
   No solution
9. 13 chose the basic buffet and 14 chose the deluxe buffet.
10. Mavis needs 20 pounds of \$3 per pound coffee and 30 pounds of \$8 per pound coffee.
11. Skippy needs to invest \$6000 in the 3% account and \$4000 in the 8% account.
12. 22.5 gallons of the 10% solution and 52.5 gallons of pure water.

A.7 Absolute Value Equations and Inequalities

In this section, we review some of the basic concepts involving the absolute value of a real number x. There are a few different ways to define absolute value and in this section we choose the following definition. (Absolute value will be revisited in much greater depth in Section **??** where we present what one can think of as the “precise” definition.)

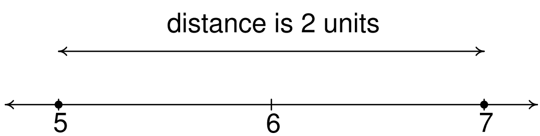
> **Definition A.7.1. Absolute Value as Distance:** For every real number x, the **absolute value** of x, denoted $|x|$, is the distance between x and 0 on the number line. More generally, if x and c are real numbers, $|x - c|$ is the distance between the numbers x and c on the number line.

For example, $|5| = 5$ and $|-5| = 5$, since each is 5 units from 0 on the number line:



Graphically why $|-5| = 5$ and $|5| = 5$

Computationally, the absolute value ‘makes negative numbers positive’, though we need to be a little cautious with this description. While $|-7| = 7$, $|5 - 7| \neq 5 + 7$. The absolute value acts as a grouping symbol, so $|5 - 7| = |-2| = 2$, which makes sense since 5 and 7 are two units away from each other on the number line:



Graphically why $|5 - 7| = 2$

We list some of the operational properties of absolute value below.

Theorem A.7.1. Properties of Absolute Value: Let a and b be real numbers and let n be an integer.[a]

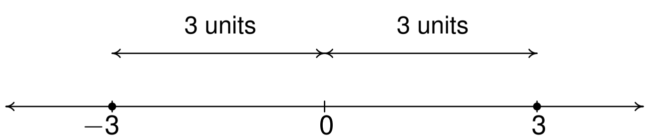
- **Product Rule:** $|ab| = |a||b|$
- **Power Rule:** $|a^n| = |a|^n$ whenever a^n is defined
- **Quotient Rule:** $\left|\frac{a}{b}\right| = \frac{|a|}{|b|}$, provided $b \neq 0$

[a]See page 19 if you don't remember what an integer is.

The proof of Theorem A.7.1 is difficult, but not impossible, using the distance definition of absolute value or even the 'it makes negatives positive' notion. It is, however, much easier if one uses the "precise" definition given in Section **??** so we will revisit the proof then. For now, let's focus on how to solve basic equations and inequalities involving the absolute value.

A.7.1 Absolute Value Equations

Thinking of absolute value in terms of distance gives us a geometric way to interpret equations. For example, to solve $|x| = 3$, we are looking for all real numbers x whose distance from 0 is 3 units. If we move three units to the right of 0, we end up at $x = 3$. If we move three units to the left, we end up at $x = -3$. Thus the solutions to $|x| = 3$ are $x = \pm 3$.



The solutions to $|x| = 3$ are $x = \pm 3$.

Thinking this way gives us the following.

Theorem A.7.2. Absolute Value Equations: Suppose x, y and c are real numbers.

- $|x| = 0$ if and only if $x = 0$.
- For $c > 0$, $|x| = c$ if and only if $x = c$ or $x = -c$.
- For $c < 0$, $|x| = c$ has no solution.
- $|x| = |y|$ if and only if $x = y$ or $x = -y$.
  (That is, if two numbers have the same absolute values, they are either the same number or exact opposites of each other.)

Theorem A.7.2 is our main tool in solving equations involving the absolute value, since it allows us a way to rewrite such equations as compound linear equations.

Box A.7.1: Strategy for Solving Equations Involving Absolute Value

In order to solve an equation involving the absolute value of a quantity $|X|$:

1. Isolate the absolute value on one side of the equation so it has the form $|X| = c$.
2. Apply Theorem A.7.2.

The techniques we use to 'isolate the absolute value' are precisely those we used in Section A.4 to isolate the variable when solving linear equations. Time for some practice.

Example A.7.1. Solve each of the following equations.

1. $|3x - 1| = 6$
2. $\dfrac{3 - |y+5|}{2} = 1$
3. $3|2t+1| - \sqrt{5} = 0$
4. $4 - |5w+3| = 5$
5. $\left|3 - x\sqrt[3]{12}\right| = |4x+1|$
6. $|t-1| - 3|t+1| = 0$

Solution.

1. The equation $|3x - 1| = 6$ is of already in the form $|X| = c$, so we know that either $3x - 1 = 6$ or $3x - 1 = -6$. Solving the former

gives us at $x = \frac{7}{3}$ and solving the latter yields $x = -\frac{5}{3}$. We may check both of these solutions by substituting them into the original equation and showing that the arithmetic works out.

2. We begin solving $\frac{3-|y+5|}{2} = 1$ by isolating the absolute value to put it in the form $|X| = c$.

$$\begin{array}{rcll} \dfrac{3-|y+5|}{2} & = & 1 & \\ 3-|y+5| & = & 2 & \text{Multiply by 2} \\ -|y+5| & = & -1 & \text{Subtract 3} \\ |y+5| & = & 1 & \text{Divide by } -1 \end{array}$$

   At this point, we have $y+5 = 1$ or $y+5 = -1$, so our solutions are $y = -4$ or $y = -6$. We leave it to the reader to check both answers in the original equation.

3. As in the previous example, we first isolate the absolute value. Don't let the $\sqrt{5}$ throw you off - it's just another real number, so we treat it as such:

$$\begin{array}{rcll} 3|2t+1|-\sqrt{5} & = & 0 & \\ 3|2t+1| & = & \sqrt{5} & \text{Add } \sqrt{5} \\ |2t+1| & = & \dfrac{\sqrt{5}}{3} & \text{Divide by 3} \end{array}$$

   From here, we have that $2t+1 = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}$ or $2t+1 = -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}$. The first equation gives $t = \frac{\sqrt{5}-3}{6}$ while the second gives $t = \frac{-\sqrt{5}-3}{6}$ thus we list our answers as $t = \frac{-3\pm\sqrt{5}}{6}$. The reader should enjoy the challenge of substituting both answers into the original equation and following through the arithmetic to see that both answers work.

4. Upon isolating the absolute value in the equation $4-|5w+3| = 5$, we get $|5w+3| = -1$. At this point, we know there cannot be any real solution. By definition, the absolute value is a *distance*, and as such is never negative. We write 'no solution' and carry on.

5. Our next equation already has the absolute value expressions (plural) isolated, so we work from the principle that if $|x| = |y|$, then

$x = y$ or $x = -y$. Thus from $\left|3 - x\sqrt[3]{12}\right| = |4x + 1|$ we get two equations to solve:

$$3 - x\sqrt[3]{12} = 4x + 1, \qquad \text{and} \qquad 3 - x\sqrt[3]{12} = -(4x + 1)$$

Notice that the right side of the second equation is $-(4x+1)$ and not simply $-4x+1$. Remember, the expression $4x+1$ represents a single real number so in order to negate it we need to negate the *entire* expression $-(4x+1)$. Moving along, when solving $3-x\sqrt[3]{12} = 4x+1$, we obtain $x = \frac{2}{4+\sqrt[3]{12}}$ and the solution to $3 - x\sqrt[3]{12} = -(4x + 1)$ is $x = \frac{4}{\sqrt[3]{12}-4}$. As usual, the reader is invited to check these answers by substituting them into the original equation.

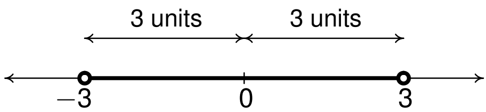
6. We start by isolating one of the absolute value expressions: $|t-1| - 3|t+1| = 0$ gives $|t - 1| = 3|t + 1|$. While this *resembles* the form $|x| = |y|$, the coefficient 3 in $3|t + 1|$ prevents it from being an exact match. Not to worry - since 3 is positive, $3 = |3|$ so

$$3|t + 1| = |3||t + 1| = |3(t + 1)| = |3t + 3|.$$

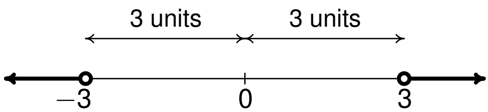
Hence, our equation becomes $|t - 1| = |3t + 3|$ which results in the two equations: $t - 1 = 3t + 3$ and $t - 1 = -(3t + 3)$. The first equation gives $t = -2$ and the second gives $t = -\frac{1}{2}$. The reader is encouraged to check both answers in the original equation. □

A.7.2 Absolute Value Inequalities

We now turn our attention to solving some basic inequalities involving the absolute value. Suppose we wished to solve $|x| < 3$. Geometrically, we are looking for all of the real numbers whose distance from 0 is *less* than 3 units. We get $-3 < x < 3$, or in interval notation, $(-3, 3)$. Suppose we are asked to solve $|x| > 3$ instead. Now we want the distance between x and 0 to be *greater* than 3 units. Moving in the positive direction, this means $x > 3$. In the negative direction, this puts $x < -3$. Our solutions would then satisfy $x < -3$ *or* $x > 3$. In interval notation, we express this as $(-\infty, -3) \cup (3, \infty)$.



The solution to $|x| < 3$ is $(-3, 3)$



The solution to $|x| > 3$ is $(-\infty, -3) \cup (3, \infty)$

Generalizing this notion, we get the following:

Theorem A.7.3. Inequalities Involving Absolute Value: Let c be a real number.

- If $c > 0$, $|x| < c$ is equivalent to $-c < x < c$.
- If $c \leq 0$, $|x| < c$ has no solution.
- If $c > 0$, $|x| > c$ is equivalent to $x < -c$ or $x > c$.
- If $c \leq 0$, $|x| > c$ is true for all real numbers.

If the inequality we're faced with involves '$\leq$' or '$\geq$,' we can combine the results of Theorem A.7.3 with Theorem A.7.2 as needed.

Box A.7.2: Strategy for Solving Inequalities Involving Absolute Value

In order to solve an inequality involving the absolute value of a quantity $|X|$:

1. Isolate the absolute value on one side of the inequality.
2. Apply Theorem A.7.3.

Example A.7.2. Solve the following inequalities.

1. $\left|x-\sqrt[4]{5}\right| > 1$
2. $\dfrac{4-2|2x+1|}{4} \geq -\sqrt{3}$
3. $|2x-1| \leq 3|4-8x|-10$
4. $|2x-1| \leq 3|4-8x|+10$
5. $2 < |x-1| \leq 5$
6. $|10x-5|+|10-5x| \leq 0$

Solution.

1. From Theorem A.7.3, $\left|x-\sqrt[4]{5}\right| > 1$ is equivalent to $x-\sqrt[4]{5} < -1$ or $x-\sqrt[4]{5} > 1$. Solving this compound inequality, we get $x < -1+\sqrt[4]{5}$ or $x > 1+\sqrt[4]{5}$. Our answer, in interval notation, is: $\left(-\infty, -1+\sqrt[4]{5}\right) \cup \left(1+\sqrt[4]{5}, \infty\right)$. As with linear inequalities, we can only partially check our answer by selecting values of x both inside and outside of the solution intervals to see which values of x satisfy the original inequality and which do not.

2. Our first step in solving $\frac{4-2|2x+1|}{4} \geq -\sqrt{3}$ is to isolate the absolute value.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{4-2|2x+1|}{4} &\geq -\sqrt{3} & \\
4-2|2x+1| &\geq -4\sqrt{3} & \text{(Multiply by 4)} \\
-2|2x+1| &\geq -4-4\sqrt{3} & \text{(Subtract 4)} \\
|2x+1| &\leq \frac{-4-4\sqrt{3}}{-2} & \\
& & \text{(Divide by } -2\text{, reverse the inequality)} \\
|2x+1| &\leq 2+2\sqrt{3} & \text{(Reduce)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since we're dealing with '$\leq$' instead of just '$<$,' we can combine Theorems A.7.3 and A.7.2 to rewrite this last inequality as:[1] $-(2+$

[1] Note the use of parentheses: $-(2+2\sqrt{3})$ as opposed to $-2+2\sqrt{3}$.

$2\sqrt{3}) \leq 2x + 1 \leq 2 + 2\sqrt{3}$. Subtracting the '1' across both inequalities gives $-3 - 2\sqrt{3} \leq 2x \leq 1 + 2\sqrt{3}$, which reduces to $\frac{-3-2\sqrt{3}}{2} \leq x \leq \frac{1+2\sqrt{3}}{2}$. In interval notation this reads as $\left[\frac{-3-2\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1+2\sqrt{3}}{2}\right]$.

3. There are two absolute values in $|2x - 1| \leq 3|4 - 8x| - 10$, so we cannot directly apply Theorem A.7.3 here. Notice, however, that $|4 - 8x| = |(-4)(2x - 1)|$. Using this, we get:

$$
\begin{aligned}
|2x - 1| &\leq 3|4 - 8x| - 10 & \\
|2x - 1| &\leq 3|(-4)(2x - 1)| - 10 & \text{(Factor)} \\
|2x - 1| &\leq 3|-4||2x - 1| - 10 & \text{(Product Rule)} \\
|2x - 1| &\leq 12|2x - 1| - 10 & \\
-11|2x - 1| &\leq -10 & \text{(Subtract } 12|2x - 1|\text{)} \\
|2x - 1| &\geq \frac{10}{11} & \text{(Divide by } -11 \text{ and reduce)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Now we are allowed to invoke Theorems A.7.2 and A.7.3 and write the equivalent compound inequality: $2x - 1 \leq -\frac{10}{11}$ *or* $2x - 1 \geq \frac{10}{11}$. We get $x \leq \frac{1}{22}$ *or* $x \geq \frac{21}{22}$, which when written with interval notation becomes $\left(-\infty, \frac{1}{22}\right] \cup \left[\frac{21}{22}, \infty\right)$.

4. The inequality $|2x - 1| \leq 3|4 - 8x| + 10$ differs from the previous example in exactly one respect: on the right side of the inequality, we have '+10' instead of '-10.' The steps to isolate the absolute value here are identical to those in the previous example, but instead of obtaining $|2x - 1| \geq \frac{10}{11}$ as before, we obtain $|2x - 1| \geq -\frac{10}{11}$. This latter inequality is *always* true. (Absolute value is, by definition, a distance and hence always 0 or greater.) Thus our solution to this inequality is all real numbers.

5. To solve $2 < |x - 1| \leq 5$, we rewrite it as the compound inequality: $2 < |x - 1|$ *and* $|x - 1| \leq 5$. The first inequality, $2 < |x - 1|$, can be

re-written as $|x-1| > 2$ so it is equivalent to $x-1 < -2$ *or* $x-1 > 2$. Thus the solution to $2 < |x-1|$ is $x < -1$ or $x > 3$, which in interval notation is $(-\infty, -1) \cup (3, \infty)$. For $|x-1| \leq 5$, we combine the results of Theorems A.7.2 and A.7.3 to get $-5 \leq x-1 \leq 5$ so that $-4 \leq x \leq 6$, or $[-4, 6]$.

Our solution to $2 < |x-1| \leq 5$ is comprised of values of x which satisfy both parts of the inequality, so we intersect $(-\infty, -1) \cup (3, \infty)$ with $[-4, 6]$ to get our final answer $[-4, -1) \cup (3, 6]$.

6. Our first hope when encountering $|10x-5| + |10-5x| \leq 0$ is that we can somehow combine the two absolute value quantities as we'd done in earlier examples. We leave it to the reader to show, however, that no matter what we try to factor out of the absolute value quantities, what remains inside the absolute values will always be different.

   At this point, we take a step back and look at the equation in a more general way: we are adding two absolute values together and wanting the result to be less than or equal to 0. The absolute value of anything is always 0 or greater, so there are no solutions to: $|10x-5| + |10-5x| < 0$.

   Is it possible that $|10x-5| + |10-5x| = 0$? Only if there is an x where $|10x-5| = 0$ and $|10-5x| = 0$ *at the same time*.[2] The first equation holds only when $x = \frac{1}{2}$, while the second holds only when $x = 2$. Alas, we have no solution.[3] □

The astute reader will have noticed by now that the authors have done nothing in the way of explaining *why* anyone would ever need to know this stuff. Go back and read the New Preface and the introduction to the Appendix. These sections are designed to review skills and concepts that you've already learned. Thus the deeper applications are in the main body of the text as opposed to here in the Appendix.

[2]Do you see why?

[3]Not for lack of trying, however!

We close this section with an example of how the properties in Theorem A.7.1 are used in Calculus. Here, 'ε' is the Greek letter 'epsilon' and it represents a positive real number. Those of you who will be taking Calculus in the future should become *very* familiar with this type of algebraic manipulation.

$$
\begin{array}{rcll}
\left|\dfrac{8-4x}{3}\right| & < & \varepsilon & \\[2ex]
\dfrac{|8-4x|}{|3|} & < & \varepsilon & \text{Quotient Rule} \\[2ex]
\dfrac{|-4(x-2)|}{3} & < & \varepsilon & \text{Factor} \\[2ex]
\dfrac{|-4||x-2|}{3} & < & \varepsilon & \text{Product Rule} \\[2ex]
\dfrac{4|x-2|}{3} & < & \varepsilon & \\[2ex]
\dfrac{3}{4}\cdot\dfrac{4|x-2|}{3} & < & \dfrac{3}{4}\cdot\varepsilon & \text{Multiply by } \dfrac{3}{4} \\[2ex]
|x-2| & < & \dfrac{3}{4}\varepsilon &
\end{array}
$$

A.7.3 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 18., solve the equation.

1. $|x| = 6$
2. $|3t - 1| = 10$
3. $|4 - w| = 7$
4. $4 - |y| = 3$
5. $2|5m + 1| - 3 = 0$
6. $|7x - 1| + 2 = 0$
7. $\dfrac{5 - |x|}{2} = 1$
8. $\dfrac{2}{3}|5 - 2w| - \dfrac{1}{2} = 5$
9. $|3t - \sqrt{2}| + 4 = 6$
10. $\dfrac{|2v + 1| - 3}{4} = \dfrac{1}{2} - |2v + 1|$
11. $|2x + 1| = \dfrac{|2x + 1| - 3}{2}$
12. $\dfrac{|3 - 2y| + 4}{2} = 2 - |3 - 2y|$
13. $|3t - 2| = |2t + 7|$
14. $|3x + 1| = |4x|$
15. $|1 - \sqrt{2}y| = |y + 1|$
16. $|4 - x| - |x + 2| = 0$
17. $|2 - 5z| = 5|z + 1|$
18. $\sqrt{3}|w - 1| = 2|w + 1|$

In Exercises 19. - 30., solve the inequality. Write your answer using interval notation.

19. $|3x - 5| \leq 4$
20. $|7t + 2| > 10$
21. $|2w + 1| - 5 < 0$
22. $|2 - y| - 4 \geq -3$
23. $|3z + 5| + 2 < 1$
24. $2|7 - v| + 4 > 1$
25. $3 - |x + \sqrt{5}| < -3$
26. $|5t| \leq |t| + 3$
27. $|w - 3| < |3 - w|$
28. $2 \leq |4 - y| < 7$
29. $1 < |2w - 9| \leq 3$
30. $3 > 2|\sqrt{3} - x| > 1$
31. With help from your classmates, solve:
    (a) $|5 - |2x - 3|| = 4$
    (b) $|5 - |2x - 3|| < 4$

A.7.4 Answers

1. $x = -6$ or $x = 6$

2. $t = -3$ or $t = \frac{11}{3}$

3. $w = -3$ or $w = 11$

4. $y = -1$ or $y = 1$

5. $m = -\frac{1}{2}$ or $m = \frac{1}{10}$

6. No solution

7. $x = -3$ or $x = 3$

8. $w = -\frac{13}{8}$ or $w = \frac{53}{8}$

9. $t = \frac{\sqrt{2} \pm 2}{3}$

10. $v = -1$ or $v = 0$

11. No solution

12. $y = \frac{3}{2}$

13. $t = -1$ or $t = 9$

14. $x = -\frac{1}{7}$ or $x = 1$

15. $y = 0$ or $y = \frac{2}{\sqrt{2} - 1}$

16. $x = 1$

17. $z = -\frac{3}{10}$

18. $w = \frac{\sqrt{3} \pm 2}{\sqrt{3} \mp 2}$
 See footnote[4]

19. $\left[\frac{1}{3}, 3\right]$

20. $\left(-\infty, -\frac{12}{7}\right) \cup \left(\frac{8}{7}, \infty\right)$

21. $(-3, 2)$

22. $(-\infty, 1] \cup [3, \infty)$

23. No solution

24. $(-\infty, \infty)$

25. $(-\infty, -6 - \sqrt{5}) \cup (6 - \sqrt{5}, \infty)$

26. $\left[-\frac{3}{4}, \frac{3}{4}\right]$

27. No solution

28. $(-3, 2] \cup [6, 11)$

29. $[3, 4) \cup (5, 6]$

30. $\left(\frac{2\sqrt{3} - 3}{2}, \frac{2\sqrt{3} - 1}{2}\right) \cup \left(\frac{2\sqrt{3} + 1}{2}, \frac{2\sqrt{3} + 3}{2}\right)$

31.
 (a) $x = -3$, or $x = 1$, or $x = 2$, or $x = 6$
 (b) $(-3, 1) \cup (2, 6)$

A.8 Polynomial Arithmetic

In this section, we review the vocabulary and arithmetic of **polynomials**. We start by defining what is meant by the word ‘polynomial’ in general. A more narrow definition of a ‘polynomial function’ will be given in Chapter **??**. The general definition suffices for the purposes of this review.

Definition A.8.1. A **polynomial** is a sum of terms each of which is a real number or a real number multiplied by one or more variables to natural number powers.

Some examples of polynomials are $x^2 + x\sqrt{3} + 4$, $27x^2y + \frac{7x}{2}$ and 6. Things like $3\sqrt{x}$, $4x - \frac{2}{x+1}$ and $13x^{2/3}y^2$ are **not** polynomials. In the box below we review some of the terminology associated with polynomials.

Definition A.8.2. Polynomial Vocabulary

- **Constant Terms:** Terms in polynomials without variables are called **constant** terms.
- **Coefficient:** In non-constant terms, the real number factor in the expression is called the **coefficient** of the term.
- **Degree:** The **degree** of a non-constant term is the sum of the exponents on the variables in the term; non-zero constant terms are defined to have degree 0. The degree of a polynomial is the highest degree of the nonzero terms.
- **Like Terms:** Terms in a polynomial are called **like** terms if they have the same variables each with the same corresponding exponents.
- **Simplified:** A polynomial is said to be **simplified** if all arithmetic operations have been completed and there are no longer any like terms.
- **Classification by Number of Terms:** A simplified polynomial is called a
  - **monomial** if it has exactly one nonzero term
  - **binomial** if it has exactly two nonzero terms
  - **trinomial** if it has exactly three nonzero terms

For example, $x^2 + x\sqrt{3} + 4$ is a trinomial of degree 2. The coefficient of x^2 is 1 and the constant term is 4. The polynomial $27x^2y + \frac{7x}{2}$ is a binomial of degree 3 ($x^2y = x^2y^1$) with constant term 0.

The concept of 'like' terms really amounts to finding terms which can be combined using the Distributive Property. For example, in the polynomial $17x^2y - 3xy^2 + 7xy^2$, $-3xy^2$ and $7xy^2$ are like terms, since they have the same variables with the same corresponding exponents. This allows us to combine these two terms as follows:

$$17x^2y-3xy^2+7xy^2 = 17x^2y+(-3)xy^2+7xy^2+17x^2y+(-3+7)xy^2 = 17x^2y+4xy^2$$

Note that even though $17x^2y$ and $4xy^2$ have the same variables, they are not like terms since in the first term we have x^2 and $y = y^1$ but in the second we have $x = x^1$ and $y = y^2$ so the corresponding exponents aren't the same. Hence, $17x^2y + 4xy^2$ is the simplified form of the polynomial.

There are four basic operations we can perform with polynomials: addition, subtraction, multiplication and division. The first three of these follow directly from properties of real number arithmetic and will be discussed together. Division, on the other hand, is a bit more complicated and will be discussed separately.

A.8.1 Polynomial Addition, Subtraction and Multiplication.

Adding and subtracting polynomials comes down to identifying like terms and then adding or subtracting the coefficients of those like terms. Multiplying polynomials comes to us courtesy of the Generalized Distributive Property.

> **Theorem A.8.1. Generalized Distributive Property:** To multiply a quantity of n terms by a quantity of m terms, multiply each of the n terms of the first quantity by each of the m terms in the second quantity and add the resulting $n \cdot m$ terms together.

In particular, Theorem A.8.1 says that, before combining like terms, a product of an n-term polynomial and an m-term polynomial will generate $(n \cdot m)$-terms. For example, a binomial times a trinomial will produce six terms some of which may be like terms. Thus the simplified end result may have fewer than six terms but you will start with six terms.

A special case of Theorem A.8.1 is the famous **F.O.I.L.**, listed here:[1]

[1] We caved to peer pressure on this one. Apparently all of the cool Precalculus books have FOIL in them even though it's redundant once you know how to distribute multiplication across addition. In general, we don't like mechanical short-cuts that interfere with a student's understanding of the material and FOIL is one of the worst.

Theorem A.8.2. F.O.I.L: The terms generated from the product of two binomials: $(a+b)(c+d)$ can be verbalized as follows: "Take the sum of

- the product of the **F**irst terms a and c, ac
- the product of the **O**uter terms a and d, ad
- the product of the **I**nner terms b and c, bc
- the product of the **L**ast terms b and d, bd."

That is, $(a+b)(c+d) = ac + ad + bc + bd$.

Theorem A.8.1 is best proved using the technique known as Mathematical Induction which is covered in Section **??**. The result is really nothing more than repeated applications of the Distributive Property so it seems reasonable and we'll use it without proof for now. The other major piece of polynomial multiplication is one of the Power Rules of Exponents from page 42 in Section A.2, namely $a^n a^m = a^{n+m}$. The Commutative and Associative Properties of addition and multiplication are also used extensively. We put all of these properties to good use in the next example.

Example A.8.1. Perform the indicated operations and simplify.

1. $\left(3x^2 - 2x + 1\right) - (7x - 3)$
2. $4xz^2 - 3z(xz - x + 4)$
3. $(2t+1)(3t-7)$
4. $\left(3y - \sqrt[3]{2}\right)\left(9y^2 + 3\sqrt[3]{2}y + \sqrt[3]{4}\right)$
5. $\left(4w - \dfrac{1}{2}\right)^2$
6. $\left[2(x+h) - (x+h)^2\right] - \left(2x - x^2\right)$

Solution.

1. We begin 'distributing the negative' as indicated on page 32 in Section A.2, then we rearrange and combine like terms:

$$\left(3x^2 - 2x + 1\right) - (7x - 3) = 3x^2 - 2x + 1 - 7x + 3 \quad \text{(Distribute)}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= 3x^2 - 2x - 7x + 1 + 3 \\
&\qquad \text{(Rearrange terms)} \\
&= 3x^2 - 9x + 4 \quad \text{(Combine like terms)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Our answer is $3x^2 - 9x + 4$.

2. Following in our footsteps from the previous example, we first distribute the $-3z$ through, then rearrange and combine like terms:

$$
\begin{aligned}
4xz^2 - 3z(xz - x + 4) &= 4xz^2 - 3z(xz) + 3z(x) - 3z(4) \\
&\qquad \text{(Distribute)} \\
&= 4xz^2 - 3xz^2 + 3xz - 12z \qquad \text{(Multiply)} \\
&= xz^2 + 3xz - 12z \quad \text{(Combine like terms)}
\end{aligned}
$$

We get our final answer: $xz^2 + 3xz - 12z$.

3. At last, we have a chance to use our F.O.I.L. technique:

$$
\begin{aligned}
(2t + 1)(3t - 7) &= (2t)(3t) + (2t)(-7) + (1)(3t) + (1)(-7) \\
&\qquad \text{(F.O.I.L.)} \\
&= 6t^2 - 14t + 3t - 7 \qquad \text{(Multiply)} \\
&= 6t^2 - 11t - 7 \qquad \text{(Combine like terms)}
\end{aligned}
$$

We get $6t^2 - 11t - 7$ as our final answer.

4. We use the Generalized Distributive Property here, multiplying each term in the second quantity first by $3y$, then by $-\sqrt[3]{2}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(3y - \sqrt[3]{2}\right)\left(9y^2 + 3\sqrt[3]{2}y + \sqrt[3]{4}\right) &= 3y\left(9y^2\right) + 3y\left(3\sqrt[3]{2}y\right) + 3y\left(\sqrt[3]{4}\right) \\
&\quad - \sqrt[3]{2}\left(9y^2\right) - \sqrt[3]{2}\left(3\sqrt[3]{2}y\right) - \sqrt[3]{2}\left(\sqrt[3]{4}\right) \\
&= 27y^3 + 9y^2\sqrt[3]{2} + 3y\sqrt[3]{4} - 9y^2\sqrt[3]{2} - 3y\sqrt[3]{} \\
&= 27y^3 + 9y^2\sqrt[3]{2} - 9y^2\sqrt[3]{2} + 3y\sqrt[3]{4} - 3y\sqrt[3]{} \\
&= 27y^3 - 2
\end{aligned}$$

To our surprise and delight, this product reduces to $27y^3 - 2$.

5. Exponents do **not** distribute across powers[2] so we know that $\left(4w - \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 \neq (4w)^2 - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2$. Instead, we proceed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(4w - \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 &= \left(4w - \frac{1}{2}\right)\left(4w - \frac{1}{2}\right) \\
&= (4w)(4w) + (4w)\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)(4w) + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) && \text{(F.O.I.L.)} \\
&= 16w^2 - 2w - 2w + \frac{1}{4} && \text{(Multiply)} \\
&= 16w^2 - 4w + \frac{1}{4} && \text{(Combine like terms)}
\end{aligned}$$

Our (correct) final answer is $16w^2 - 4w + \frac{1}{4}$.

6. Our last example has two levels of grouping symbols. We begin simplifying the quantity inside the brackets, expanding $(x+h)^2$ in the same way we expanded $(4w - \frac{1}{2})^2$ in our previous example:

$$(x+h)^2 = (x+h)(x+h) = (x)(x) + (x)(h) + (h)(x) + (h)(h) = x^2 + 2xh + h^2$$

[2] See the remarks following the Properties of Exponents on 42.

When we substitute this into our expression, we envelope it in parentheses, as usual, so that we don't forget to distribute the negative.

$$\left[2(x+h)-(x+h)^2\right]-\left(2x-x^2\right)$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \left[2(x+h)-\left(x^2+2xh+h^2\right)\right]-\left(2x-x^2\right) && \text{(Substitute)}\\
&= \left[2x+2h-x^2-2xh-h^2\right]-\left(2x-x^2\right) && \text{(Distribute)}\\
&= 2x+2h-x^2-2xh-h^2-2x+x^2 && \text{(Distribute)}\\
&= 2x-2x+2h-x^2+x^2-2xh-h^2 && \text{(Rearrange terms)}\\
&= 2h-2xh-h^2 && \text{(Combine like terms)}
\end{aligned}
$$

We find no like terms in $2h-2xh-h^2$ so we are finished. □

We conclude our discussion of polynomial multiplication by showcasing two special products which happen often enough they should be committed to memory.

Theorem A.8.3. Special Products: Let a and b be real numbers:

- **Perfect Square:** $(a+b)^2 = a^2+2ab+b^2$ and $(a-b)^2 = a^2-2ab+b^2$
- **Difference of Two Squares:** $(a-b)(a+b) = a^2-b^2$

The formulas in Theorem A.8.3 can be verified by working through the multiplication.[3]

A.8.2 Polynomial Long Division.

We now turn our attention to polynomial long division. Dividing two polynomials follows the same algorithm, in principle, as dividing two natural

[3] These are both special cases of F.O.I.L.

numbers so we review that process first. Suppose we wished to divide 2585 by 79. The standard division tableau is given below.

$$
\begin{array}{rr}
 & 32 \\
79 & \overline{)2585} \\
 & -\underline{237}\downarrow \\
 & 215 \\
 & -\underline{158} \\
 & 57
\end{array}
$$

In this case, 79 is called the **divisor**, 2585 is called the **dividend**, 32 is called the **quotient** and 57 is called the **remainder**. We can check our answer by showing:

$$\text{dividend} = (\text{divisor})(\text{quotient}) + \text{remainder}$$

or in this case, $2585 = (79)(32) + 57\checkmark$. We hope that the long division tableau evokes warm, fuzzy memories of your formative years as opposed to feelings of hopelessness and frustration. If you experience the latter, keep in mind that the Division Algorithm essentially is a two-step process, iterated over and over again. First, we guess the number of times the divisor goes into the dividend and then we subtract off our guess. We repeat those steps with what's left over until what's left over (the remainder) is less than what we started with (the divisor). That's all there is to it!

The division algorithm for polynomials has the same basic two steps but when we subtract polynomials, we must take care to subtract *like terms* only. As a transition to polynomial division, let's write out our previous division tableau in expanded form.

$$
\begin{array}{rllll}
 & & & 3\cdot 10 & +\,2 \\ \cline{2-5}
7\cdot 10+9 & \multicolumn{1}{|l}{2\cdot 10^3} & +\,5\cdot 10^2 & +\,8\cdot 10 & +\,5 \\
 & -\big(2\cdot 10^3 & +\,3\cdot 10^2 & +\,7\cdot 10\big) & \downarrow \\ \cline{2-4}
 & & 2\cdot 10^2 & +\,1\cdot 10 & +\,5 \\
 & & -\big(1\cdot 10^2 & +\,5\cdot 10 & +\,8\big) \\ \cline{3-4}
 & & & 5\cdot 10 & +\,7
\end{array}
$$

Written this way, we see that when we line up the digits we are really lining up the coefficients of the corresponding powers of 10 - much like how we'll have to keep the powers of x lined up in the same columns. The big difference between polynomial division and the division of natural numbers is that the value of x is an unknown quantity. So unlike using the known value of 10, when we subtract there can be no regrouping of coefficients as in our previous example. (The subtraction $215 - 158$ requires us to 'regroup' or 'borrow' from the tens digit, then the hundreds digit.) This actually makes polynomial division easier.[4] Before we dive into examples, we first state a theorem telling us when we can divide two polynomials, and what to expect when we do so.

Theorem A.8.4. Polynomial Division: Let d and p be nonzero polynomials where the degree of p is greater than or equal to the degree of d. There exist two unique polynomials, q and r, such that $p = d \cdot q + r$, where either $r = 0$ or the degree of r is strictly less than the degree of d.

Essentially, Theorem A.8.4 tells us that we can divide polynomials whenever the degree of the divisor is less than or equal to the degree of the dividend. We know we're done with the division when the polynomial left over (the remainder) has a degree strictly less than the divisor. It's time to walk through a few examples to refresh your memory.

[4] In our opinion - you can judge for yourself.

Example A.8.2. Perform the indicated division. Check your answer by showing

$$\text{dividend} = (\text{divisor})(\text{quotient}) + \text{remainder}$$

1. $\left(x^3 + 4x^2 - 5x - 14\right) \div (x - 2)$
2. $(2t + 7) \div (3t - 4)$
3. $\left(6y^2 - 1\right) \div (2y + 5)$
4. $\left(w^3\right) \div \left(w^2 - \sqrt{2}\right)$.

Solution.

1. To begin $\left(x^3 + 4x^2 - 5x - 14\right) \div (x - 2)$, we divide the first term in the dividend, namely x^3, by the first term in the divisor, namely x, and get $\frac{x^3}{x} = x^2$. This then becomes the first term in the quotient. We proceed as in regular long division at this point: we multiply the entire divisor, $x - 2$, by this first term in the quotient to get $x^2(x-2) = x^3 - 2x^2$. We then subtract this result from the dividend.

$$\begin{array}{r|l}
 & x^2 \\ \hline
x-2 & x^3 + 4x^2 - 5x - 14 \\
 & -\underline{\left(x^3 - 2x^2\right)} \quad \downarrow \\
 & \qquad 6x^2 - 5x
\end{array}$$

Now we 'bring down' the next term of the quotient, namely $-5x$, and repeat the process. We divide $\frac{6x^2}{x} = 6x$, and add this to the quotient polynomial, multiply it by the divisor (which yields $6x(x - 2) = 6x^2 - 12x$) and subtract.

$$\begin{array}{r|l}
 & x^2 + 6x \\ \hline
x-2 & x^3 + 4x^2 - 5x - 14 \\
 & -\underline{\left(x^3 - 2x^2\right)} \qquad \downarrow \\
 & \qquad 6x^2 - 5x \quad \downarrow \\
 & \qquad -\underline{\left(6x^2 - 12x\right)} \quad \downarrow \\
 & \qquad\qquad 7x - 14
\end{array}$$

Finally, we 'bring down' the last term of the dividend, namely -14, and repeat the process. We divide $\frac{7x}{x} = 7$, add this to the quotient, multiply it by the divisor (which yields $7(x-2) = 7x - 14$) and subtract.

$$
\begin{array}{rrrrr}
 & x^2 & +\ 6x & +\ 7 & \\
\cline{2-5}
x-2 \big) & x^3 & +\ 4x^2 & -\ 5x & -\ 14 \\
 & -\left(x^3 - 2x^2\right) & & & \\
\cline{2-3}
 & & 6x^2 & -\ 5x & \\
 & & -\left(6x^2 - 12x\right) & & \\
\cline{3-4}
 & & & 7x & -\ 14 \\
 & & & -\ (7x & -\ 14) \\
\cline{4-5}
 & & & & 0
\end{array}
$$

In this case, we get a quotient of $x^2 + 6x + 7$ with a remainder of 0. To check our answer, we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
(x-2)\left(x^2 + 6x + 7\right) + 0 &= x^3 + 6x^2 + 7x - 2x^2 - 12x - 14 \\
&= x^3 + 4x^2 - 5x - 14 \checkmark
\end{aligned}
$$

2. To compute $(2t+7) \div (3t-4)$, we start as before. We find $\frac{2t}{3t} = \frac{2}{3}$, so that becomes the first (and only) term in the quotient. We multiply the divisor $(3t-4)$ by $\frac{2}{3}$ and get $2t - \frac{8}{3}$. We subtract this from the divided and get $\frac{29}{3}$.

$$
\begin{array}{rrr}
 & & \frac{2}{3} \\
\cline{2-3}
3t-4 \big) & 2t & +\ 7 \\
 & -\left(2t - \frac{8}{3}\right) & \\
\cline{2-3}
 & & \frac{29}{3}
\end{array}
$$

Our answer is $\frac{2}{3}$ with a remainder of $\frac{29}{3}$. To check our answer, we compute

$$(3t-4)\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)+\frac{29}{3}=2t-\frac{8}{3}+\frac{29}{3}=2t+\frac{21}{3}=2t+7\ \checkmark$$

3. When we set-up the tableau for $\left(6y^2-1\right)\div(2y+5)$, we must first issue a 'placeholder' for the 'missing' y-term in the dividend, $6y^2-1=6y^2+0y-1$. We then proceed as before. Since $\frac{6y^2}{2y}=3y$, $3y$ is the first term in our quotient. We multiply $(2y+5)$ times $3y$ and subtract it from the dividend. We bring down the -1, and repeat.

$$\begin{array}{r|rrrrr}
\multicolumn{1}{r}{} & 3y & & & - & \frac{15}{2} \\ \cline{2-6}
2y+5 & 6y^2 & + & 0y & - & 1 \\
\multicolumn{1}{r}{-} & \left(6y^2\right. & + & \left.15y\right) & & \downarrow \\ \cline{2-4}
\multicolumn{1}{r}{} & & & -15y & - & 1 \\
\multicolumn{1}{r}{} & & - & \multicolumn{3}{r}{\left(-15y-\frac{75}{2}\right)} \\ \cline{3-6}
\multicolumn{1}{r}{} & & & & & \frac{73}{2}
\end{array}$$

Our answer is $3y-\frac{15}{2}$ with a remainder of $\frac{73}{2}$. To check our answer, we compute:

$$(2y+5)\left(3y-\frac{15}{2}\right)+\frac{73}{2}=6y^2-15y+15y-\frac{75}{2}+\frac{73}{2}=6y^2-1\ \checkmark$$

4. For our last example, we need 'placeholders' for both the divisor $w^2-\sqrt{2}=w^2+0w-\sqrt{2}$ and the dividend $w^3=w^3+0w^2+0w+0$. The first term in the quotient is $\frac{w^3}{w^2}=w$, and when we multiply and subtract this from the dividend, we're left with just $0w^2+w\sqrt{2}+0=w\sqrt{2}$.

$$\begin{array}{r|l} & \qquad\qquad\quad w \\ \cline{2-2} w^2+0w-\sqrt{2} & w^3 + 0w^2 + \ 0w \ + 0 \\ - & \underline{\left(w^3 + 0w^2 - w\sqrt{2}\right)} \ \downarrow \\ & \qquad 0w^2 + \ w\sqrt{2} + 0 \end{array}$$

Since the degree of $w\sqrt{2}$ (which is 1) is less than the degree of the divisor (which is 2), we are done.[5] Our answer is w with a remainder of $w\sqrt{2}$. To check, we compute:

$$\left(w^2 - \sqrt{2}\right) w + w\sqrt{2} = w^3 - w\sqrt{2} + w\sqrt{2} = w^3 \checkmark$$

□

[5]Since $\frac{0w^2}{w^2} = 0$, we could proceed, write our quotient as $w + 0$, and move on... but even pedants have limits.

A.8.3 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 15., perform the indicated operations and simplify.

1. $(4-3x)+(3x^2+2x+7)$
2. $t^2+4t-2(3-t)$
3. $q(200-3q)-(5q+500)$
4. $(3y-1)(2y+1)$
5. $\left(3-\dfrac{x}{2}\right)(2x+5)$
6. $-(4t+3)(t^2-2)$
7. $2w(w^3-5)(w^3+5)$
8. $(5a^2-3)(25a^4+15a^2+9)$
9. $(x^2-2x+3)(x^2+2x+3)$
10. $(\sqrt{7}-z)(\sqrt{7}+z)$
11. $(x-\sqrt[3]{5})^3$
12. $(x-\sqrt[3]{5})(x^2+x\sqrt[3]{5}+\sqrt[3]{25})$
13. $(w-3)^2-(w^2+9)$
14. $(x+h)^2-2(x+h)-(x^2-2x)$
15. $(x-[2+\sqrt{5}])(x-[2-\sqrt{5}])$

In Exercises 16. - 27., perform the indicated division. Check your answer by showing

$$\text{dividend} = (\text{divisor})(\text{quotient}) + \text{remainder}$$

16. $(5x^2-3x+1)\div(x+1)$
17. $(3y^2+6y-7)\div(y-3)$
18. $(6w-3)\div(2w+5)$
19. $(2x+1)\div(3x-4)$
20. $(t^2-4)\div(2t+1)$
21. $(w^3-8)\div(5w-10)$
22. $(2x^2-x+1)\div(3x^2+1)$
23. $(4y^4+3y^2+1)\div(2y^2-y+1)$
24. $w^4\div(w^3-2)$
25. $(5t^3-t+1)\div(t^2+4)$
26. $(t^3-4)\div(t-\sqrt[3]{4})$
27. $(x^2-2x-1)\div(x-[1-\sqrt{2}])$

In Exercises 28. - 33. verify the given formula by showing the left hand side of the equation simplifies to the right hand side of the equation.

28. **Perfect Cube:** $(a+b)^3=a^3+3a^2b+3ab^2+b^3$
29. **Difference of Cubes:** $(a-b)(a^2+ab+b^2)=a^3-b^3$
30. **Sum of Cubes:** $(a+b)(a^2-ab+b^2)=a^3+b^3$
31. **Perfect Quartic:** $(a+b)^4=a^4+4a^3b+6a^2b^2+4ab^3+b^4$
32. **Difference of Quartics:** $(a-b)(a+b)(a^2+b^2)=a^4-b^4$
33. **Sum of Quartics:** $(a^2+ab\sqrt{2}+b^2)(a^2-ab\sqrt{2}+b^2)=a^4+b^4$
34. With help from your classmates, determine under what conditions $(a+b)^2=a^2+b^2$. What about $(a+b)^3=a^3+b^3$? In general, when does $(a+b)^n=a^n+b^n$ for a natural number $n\geq 2$?

A.8.4 Answers

1. $3x^2 - x + 11$
2. $t^2 + 6t - 6$
3. $-3q^2 + 195q - 500$
4. $6y^2 + y - 1$
5. $-x^2 + \frac{7}{2}x + 15$
6. $-4t^3 - 3t^2 + 8t + 6$
7. $2w^7 - 50w$
8. $125a^6 - 27$
9. $x^4 + 2x^2 + 9$
10. $7 - z^2$
11. $x^3 - 3x^2\sqrt[3]{5} + 3x\sqrt[3]{25} - 5$
12. $x^3 - 5$
13. $-6w$
14. $h^2 + 2xh - 2h$
15. $x^2 - 4x - 1$
16. quotient: $5x - 8$, remainder: 9
17. quotient: $3y + 15$, remainder: 38
18. quotient: 3, remainder: 18
19. quotient: $\frac{2}{3}$, remainder: $\frac{11}{3}$
20. quotient: $\frac{t}{2} - \frac{1}{4}$, remainder: $-\frac{15}{4}$
21. quotient: $\frac{w^2}{5} + \frac{2w}{5} + \frac{4}{5}$, remainder: 0
22. quotient: $\frac{2}{3}$, remainder: $-x + \frac{1}{3}$
23. quotient: $2y^2 + y + 1$, remainder: 0
24. quotient: w, remainder: $2w$
25. quotient: $5t$, remainder: $-21t + 1$
26. quotient:[6] $t^2 + t\sqrt[3]{4} + 2\sqrt[3]{2}$, remainder: 0
27. quotient: $x - 1 - \sqrt{2}$, remainder: 0

A.9 Basic Factoring Techniques

Now that we have reviewed the basics of polynomial arithmetic it's time to review the basic techniques of factoring polynomial expressions. Our goal is to apply these techniques to help us solve certain specialized classes of non-linear equations. Given that 'factoring' literally means to resolve a product into its factors, it is, in the purest sense, 'undoing' multiplication. If this sounds like division to you then you've been paying attention. Let's start with a numerical example.

Suppose we are asked to factor 16337. We could write $16337 = 16337 \cdot 1$, and while this is technically a factorization of 16337, it's probably not an answer the poser of the question would accept. Usually, when we're asked to factor a natural number, we are being asked to resolve it into to a product of so-called 'prime' numbers.[1] Recall that **prime numbers** are defined as natural numbers whose only (natural number) factors are themselves and 1. They are, in essence, the 'building blocks' of natural numbers as far as multiplication is concerned. Said differently, we can build - via multiplication - any natural number given enough primes.

So how do we find the prime factors of 16337? We start by dividing each of the primes: 2, 3, 5, 7, etc., into 16337 until we get a remainder of 0. Eventually, we find that $16337 \div 17 = 961$ with a remainder of 0, which means $16337 = 17 \cdot 961$. So factoring and division are indeed closely related - factors of a number are precisely the divisors of that number which produce a zero remainder.[3] We continue our efforts to see if 961 can be factored down further, and we find that $961 = 31 \cdot 31$. Hence, 16337 can be 'completely factored' as $17 \cdot 31^2$. (This factorization is called the **prime factorization** of 16337.)

In factoring natural numbers, our building blocks are prime numbers, so to be completely factored means that every number used in the factorization

[1] As mentioned in Section A.2, this is possible, in only one way, thanks to the Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic.[2]

[3] We'll refer back to this when we get to Section **??**.

of a given number is prime. One of the challenges when it comes to factoring polynomial expressions is to explain what it means to be 'completely factored'. In this section, our 'building blocks' for factoring polynomials are 'irreducible' polynomials as defined below.

Definition A.9.1. A polynomial is said to be **irreducible** if it cannot be written as the product of polynomials of lower degree.

While Definition A.9.1 seems straightforward enough, sometimes a greater level of specificity is required. For example, $x^2 - 3 = (x - \sqrt{3})(x + \sqrt{3})$. While $x - \sqrt{3}$ and $x + \sqrt{3}$ are perfectly fine polynomials, factoring which requires irrational numbers is usually saved for a more advanced treatment of factoring.[4] For now, we will restrict ourselves to factoring using rational coefficients. So, while the polynomial $x^2 - 3$ can be factored using irrational numbers, it is called irreducible **over the rationals**, since there are no polynomials with *rational* coefficients of smaller degree which can be used to factor it.[5]

Since polynomials involve terms, the first step in any factoring strategy involves pulling out factors which are common to all of the terms. For example, in the polynomial $18x^2y^3 - 54x^3y^2 - 12xy^2$, each coefficient is a multiple of 6 so we can begin the factorization as $6(3x^2y^3 - 9x^3y^2 - 2xy^2)$. The remaining coefficients: 3, 9 and 2, have no common factors so 6 was the greatest common factor. What about the variables? Each term contains an x, so we can factor an x from each term. When we do this, we are effectively dividing each term by x which means the exponent on x in each term is reduced by 1: $6x(3xy^3 - 9x^2y^2 - 2y^2)$. Next, we see that each term has a factor of y in it. In fact, each term has at least *two* factors of y in it, since the lowest exponent on y in each term is 2. This means that we can factor y^2 from each term. Again, factoring out y^2 from each term is tantamount to dividing each term by y^2 so the exponent on y in each term is reduced by *two*: $6xy^2(3xy - 9x^2 - 2)$. Just like

[4] See Section **??**.

[5] If this isn't immediately obvious, don't worry - in some sense, it shouldn't be. We'll talk more about this later.

we checked our division by multiplication in the previous section, we can check our factoring here by multiplication, too. $6xy^2(3xy - 9x^2 - 2) = (6xy^2)(3xy) - (6xy^2)(9x^2) - (6xy^2)(2) = 18x^2y^3 - 54x^3y^2 - 12xy^2$ ✓. We summarize how to find the Greatest Common Factor (G.C.F.) of a polynomial expression in Box A.9.1.

> **Box A.9.1: Finding the G.C.F. of a Polynomial Expression**
>
> - If the coefficients are integers, find the G.C.F. of the coefficients.
>   **NOTE 1:** If all of the coefficients are negative, consider the negative as part of the G.C.F..
>   **NOTE 2:** If the coefficients involve fractions, get a common denominator, combine numerators, reduce to lowest terms and apply this step to the polynomial in the numerator.
> - If a variable is common to all of the terms, the G.C.F. contains that variable to the smallest exponent which appears among the terms.

For example, to factor $-\frac{3}{5}z^3 - 6z^2$, we would first get a common denominator and factor as:

$$-\frac{3}{5}z^3 - 6z^2 = \frac{-3z^3 - 30z^2}{5} = \frac{-3z^2(z+10)}{5} = -\frac{3z^2(z+10)}{5} = -\frac{3}{5}z^2(z+10)$$

We now list some common factoring formulas, each of which can be verified by multiplying out the right side of the equation. While they all should look familiar - this is a review section after all - some should look more familiar than others since they appeared as 'special product' formulas in the previous section.

The following example gives us practice with these formulas.

Example A.9.1. Factor the following polynomials completely over the rationals. That is, write each polynomial as a product polynomials of lowest degree which are irreducible over the rationals.

1.	$18x^2 - 48x + 32$	2.	$64y^2 - 1$	3.	$75t^4 + 30t^3 + 3t^2$
4.	$w^4z - wz^4$	5.	$81 - 16t^4$	6.	$x^6 - 64$

Box A.9.2: Common Factoring Formulas

- **Perfect Square Trinomials:** $a^2 + 2ab + b^2 = (a + b)^2$ and $a^2 - 2ab + b^2 = (a - b)^2$
- **Difference of Two Squares:** $a^2 - b^2 = (a - b)(a + b)$
  NOTE: In general, the sum of squares, $a^2 + b^2$ is irreducible over the rationals.
- **Sum of Two Cubes:** $a^3 + b^3 = (a + b)(a^2 - ab + b^2)$
  NOTE: In general, $a^2 - ab + b^2$ is irreducible over the rationals.
- **Difference of Two Cubes:** $a^3 - b^3 = (a - b)(a^2 + ab + b^2)$
  NOTE: In general, $a^2 + ab + b^2$ is irreducible over the rationals.

Solution.

1. Our first step is to factor out the G.C.F. which in this case is 2. To match what is left with one of the special forms, we rewrite $9x^2 = (3x)^2$ and $16 = 4^2$. Since the 'middle' term is $-24x = -2(4)(3x)$, we see that we have a perfect square trinomial.

$$\begin{aligned} 18x^2 - 48x + 32 &= 2(9x^2 - 24x + 16) && \text{(Factor out G.C.F.)} \\ &= 2((3x)^2 - 2(4)(3x) + (4)^2) \\ &= 2(3x - 4)^2 \\ & \qquad \text{(Perfect Square Trinomial: } a = 3x,\ b = 4) \end{aligned}$$

   Our final answer is $2(3x - 4)^2$. To check our work, we multiply out $2(3x - 4)^2$ to show that it equals $18x^2 - 48x + 32$.

2. For $64y^2 - 1$, we note that the G.C.F. of the terms is just 1, so there is nothing (of substance) to factor out of both terms. Since $64y^2 - 1$ is the difference of two terms, one of which is a square, we look to the Difference of Squares Formula for inspiration. Seeing $64y^2 = (8y)^2$ and $1 = 1^2$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} 64y^2 - 1 &= (8y)^2 - 1^2 \\ &= (8y-1)(8y+1) \\ &\qquad \text{(Difference of Squares, } a = 8y,\ b = 1) \end{aligned}$$

As before, we can check our answer by multiplying out $(8y-1)(8y+1)$ to show that it equals $64y^2 - 1$.

3. The G.C.F. of the terms in $75t^4 + 30t^3 + 3t^2$ is $3t^2$, so we factor that out first. We identify what remains as a perfect square trinomial:

$$\begin{aligned} 75t^4 + 30t^3 + 3t^2 &= 3t^2(25t^2 + 10t + 1) && \text{(Factor out G.C.F.)} \\ &= 3t^2((5t)^2 + 2(1)(5t) + 1^2) \\ &= 3t^2(5t+1)^2 \\ &\qquad \text{(Perfect Square Trinomial, } a = 5t,\ b = 1) \end{aligned}$$

Our final answer is $3t^2(5t+1)^2$, which the reader is invited to check.

4. For $w^4z - wz^4$, we identify the G.C.F. as wz and once we factor it out a difference of cubes is revealed:

$$\begin{aligned} w^4z - wz^4 &= wz(w^3 - z^3) && \text{(Factor out G.C.F.)} \\ &= wz(w-z)(w^2 + wz + z^2) \\ &\qquad \text{(Difference of Cubes, } a = w,\ b = z) \end{aligned}$$

Our final answer is $wz(w-z)(w^2 + wz + z^2)$. The reader is strongly encouraged to multiply this out to see that it reduces to $w^4z - wz^4$.

5. The G.C.F. of the terms in $81 - 16t^4$ is just 1 so there is nothing of substance to factor out from both terms. With just a difference of

two terms, we are limited to fitting this polynomial into either the Difference of Two Squares or Difference of Two Cubes formula. Since the variable here is t^4, and 4 is a multiple of 2, we can think of $t^4 = (t^2)^2$. This means that we can write $16t^4 = (4t^2)^2$ which is a perfect square. (Since 4 is not a multiple of 3, we cannot write t^4 as a perfect cube of a polynomial.) Identifying $81 = 9^2$ and $16t^4 = (4t^2)^2$, we apply the Difference of Squares Formula to get:

$$\begin{aligned} 81 - 16t^4 &= 9^2 - (4t^2)^2 \\ &= (9 - 4t^2)(9 + 4t^2) \\ &\qquad \text{(Difference of Squares, } a = 9,\ b = 4t^2) \end{aligned}$$

At this point, we have an opportunity to proceed further. Identifying $9 = 3^2$ and $4t^2 = (2t)^2$, we see that we have another difference of squares in the first quantity, which we can reduce. (The sum of two squares in the second quantity <u>cannot</u> be factored over the rationals.)

$$\begin{aligned} 81 - 16t^4 &= (9 - 4t^2)(9 + 4t^2) \\ &= (3^2 - (2t)^2)(9 + 4t^2) \\ &= (3 - 2t)(3 + 2t)(9 + 4t^2) \\ &\qquad \text{(Difference of Squares, } a = 3,\ b = 2t) \end{aligned}$$

As always, the reader is encouraged to multiply out $(3-2t)(3+2t)(9+4t^2)$ to check the result.

6. With a G.C.F. of 1 and just two terms, $x^6 - 64$ is a candidate for both the Difference of Squares and the Difference of Cubes formulas. Notice that we can identify $x^6 = (x^3)^2$ and $64 = 8^2$ (both perfect

squares), but also $x^6 = (x^2)^3$ and $64 = 4^3$ (both perfect cubes). If we follow the Difference of Squares approach, we get:

$$\begin{aligned} x^6 - 64 &= (x^3)^2 - 8^2 \\ &= (x^3 - 8)(x^3 + 8) \\ &\qquad \text{(Difference of Squares, } a = x^3 \text{ and } b = 8\text{)} \end{aligned}$$

At this point, we have an opportunity to use both the Difference and Sum of Cubes formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} x^6 - 64 &= (x^3 - 2^3)(x^3 + 2^3) \\ &= (x - 2)(x^2 + 2x + 2^2)(x + 2)(x^2 - 2x + 2^2) \\ &\qquad \text{(Sum / Difference of Cubes, } a = x,\ b = 2\text{)} \\ &= (x - 2)(x + 2)(x^2 - 2x + 4)(x^2 + 2x + 4) \\ &\qquad \text{(Rearrange factors)} \end{aligned}$$

From this approach, our final answer is $(x-2)(x+2)(x^2-2x+4)(x^2+2x+4)$.

Following the Difference of Cubes Formula approach, we get

$$\begin{aligned} x^6 - 64 &= (x^2)^3 - 4^3 \\ &= (x^2 - 4)((x^2)^2 + 4x^2 + 4^2) \\ &\qquad \text{(Difference of Cubes, } a = x^2,\ b = 4\text{)} \\ &= (x^2 - 4)(x^4 + 4x^2 + 16) \end{aligned}$$

At this point, we recognize $x^2 - 4$ as a difference of two squares:

$$\begin{aligned} x^6 - 64 &= (x^2 - 2^2)(x^4 + 4x^2 + 16) \\ &= (x-2)(x+2)(x^4 + 4x^2 + 16) \\ &\qquad \text{(Difference of Squares, } a = x,\ b = 2\text{)} \end{aligned}$$

Unfortunately, the remaining factor $x^4 + 4x^2 + 16$ is not a perfect square trinomial - the middle term would have to be $8x^2$ for this to work - so our final answer using this approach is $(x-2)(x+2)(x^4 + 4x^2 + 16)$. This isn't as factored as our result from the Difference of Squares approach which was $(x-2)(x+2)(x^2-2x+4)(x^2+2x+4)$. While it is true that $x^4+4x^2+16 = (x^2-2x+4)(x^2+2x+4)$, there is no 'intuitive' way to motivate this factorization at this point.[6] The moral of the story? When given the option between using the Difference of Squares and Difference of Cubes, start with the Difference of Squares. Our final answer to this problem is $(x-2)(x+2)(x^2-2x+4)(x^2+2x+4)$. The reader is strongly encouraged to show that this reduces down to x^6-64 after performing all of the multiplication. □

The formulas on page 169, while useful, can only take us so far. Thus we need to review some additional factoring strategies which should be good friends from back in the day!

The techniques of 'un-F.O.I.L.ing' and 'factoring by grouping' are difficult to describe in general but should make sense to you with enough practice. Be forewarned - like all 'Rules of Thumb', these strategies work just often enough to be useful, but you can be sure there are exceptions which will defy any advice given here and will require some 'inspiration' to solve.[7] Even though Chapter **??** will give us more powerful factoring methods,

[6] Of course, this begs the question, "How do we know $x^2 - 2x + 4$ and $x^2 + 2x + 4$ are irreducible?" (We were told so on page 169, but no reason was given.) Stay tuned! We'll get back to this in due course.

[7] Jeff will be sure to pepper the Exercises with these.

Box A.9.3: Additional Factoring Formulas

- **'un-F.O.I.L.ing':** Given a trinomial $Ax^2 + Bx + C$, try to reverse the F.O.I.L. process.
  That is, find a, b, c and d such that $Ax^2+Bx+C = (ax+b)(cx+d)$.
  NOTE: This means $ac = A$, $bd = C$ and $B = ad + bc$.
- **Factor by Grouping:** If the expression contains four terms with no common factors among the four terms, try 'factor by grouping':

$$ac + bc + ad + bd = (a + b)c + (a + b)d = (a + b)(c + d)$$

we'll find that, in the end, there is no single algorithm for factoring which works for every polynomial. In other words, there will be times when you just have to try something and see what happens.

Example A.9.2. Factor the following polynomials completely over the integers.[8]

1.	$x^2 - x - 6$	2.	$2t^2 - 11t + 5$
3.	$36 - 11y - 12y^2$	4.	$18xy^2 - 54xy - 180x$
5.	$2t^3 - 10t^2 + 3t - 15$	6.	$x^4 + 4x^2 + 16$

Solution.

1. The G.C.F. of the terms $x^2 - x - 6$ is 1 and $x^2 - x - 6$ isn't a perfect square trinomial (Think about why not.) so we try to reverse the F.O.I.L. process and look for integers a, b, c and d such that $(ax + b)(cx + d) = x^2 - x - 6$. To get started, we note that $ac = 1$. Since a and c are meant to be integers, that leaves us with either a and c both being 1, or a and c both being -1. We'll go with $a = c = 1$, since we can factor[9] the negatives into our choices for b and d. This yields $(x + b)(x + d) = x^2 - x - 6$. Next, we use the fact

[8]This means that all of the coefficients in the factors will be integers. In a rare departure from form, Carl decided to avoid fractions in this set of examples. Don't get complacent, though, because fractions will return with a vengeance soon enough.

[9]Pun intended!

that $bd = -6$. The product is negative so we know that one of b or d is positive and the other is negative. Since b and d are integers, one of b or d is ± 1 and the other is ∓ 6 OR one of b or d is ± 2 and the other is ∓ 3. After some guessing and checking,[10] we find that $x^2 - x - 6 = (x+2)(x-3)$.

2. As with the previous example, we check the G.C.F. of the terms in $2t^2 - 11t + 5$, determine it to be 1 and see that the polynomial doesn't fit the pattern for a perfect square trinomial. We now try to find integers a, b, c and d such that $(at+b)(ct+d) = 2t^2 - 11t + 5$. Since $ac = 2$, we have that one of a or c is 2, and the other is 1. (Once again, we ignore the negative options.) At this stage, there is nothing really distinguishing a from c so we choose $a = 2$ and $c = 1$. Now we look for b and d so that $(2t+b)(t+d) = 2t^2 - 11t + 5$. We know $bd = 5$ so one of b or d is ± 1 and the other ± 5. Given that bd is positive, b and d must have the same sign. The negative middle term $-11t$ guides us to guess $b = -1$ and $d = -5$ so that we get $(2t-1)(t-5) = 2t^2 - 11t + 5$. We verify our answer by multiplying.[11]

3. Once again, we check for a nontrivial G.C.F. and see if $36 - 11y - 12y^2$ fits the pattern of a perfect square. Twice disappointed, we rewrite $36 - 11y - 12y^2 = -12y^2 - 11y + 36$ for notational convenience. We now look for integers a, b, c and d such that $-12y^2 - 11y + 36 = (ay+b)(cy+d)$. Since $ac = -12$, we know that one of a or c is ± 1 and the other ± 12 OR one of them is ± 2 and the other is ± 6 OR one of them is ± 3 while the other is ± 4. Since their product is -12, however, we know one of them is positive, while the other is negative. To make matters worse, the constant term 36 has its fair share of factors, too. Our answers for b and d lie among the pairs ± 1 and ± 36, ± 2 and ± 18, ± 4 and ± 9, or ± 6. Since we know one of a or c will be negative, we can simplify our choices for b and d and just look at the positive possibilities. After some guessing and

[10] The authors have seen some strange gimmicks that allegedly help students with this step. We don't like them so we're sticking with good old-fashioned guessing and checking.

[11] That's the 'checking' part of 'guessing and checking'.

checking,[12] we find $(-3y+4)(4y+9) = -12y^2 - 11y + 36$.

4. Since the G.C.F. of the terms in $18xy^2 - 54xy - 180x$ is $18x$, we begin the problem by factoring it out first: $18xy^2 - 54xy - 180x = 18x(y^2 - 3y - 10)$. We now focus our attention on $y^2 - 3y - 10$. We can take a and c to both be 1 which yields $(y+b)(y+d) = y^2 - 3y - 10$. Our choices for b and d are among the factor pairs of -10: ± 1 and ± 10 or ± 2 and ± 5, where one of b or d is positive and the other is negative. We find $(y-5)(y+2) = y^2 - 3y - 10$. Our final answer is $18xy^2 - 54xy - 180x = 18x(y-5)(y+2)$.

5. Since $2t^3 - 10t^2 - 3t + 15$ has four terms, we are pretty much resigned to factoring by grouping. The strategy here is to factor out the G.C.F. from two *pairs* of terms, and see if this reveals a common factor. If we group the first two terms, we can factor out a $2t^2$ to get $2t^3 - 10t^2 = 2t^2(t-5)$. We now try to factor something out of the last two terms that will leave us with a factor of $(t-5)$. Sure enough, we can factor out a -3 from both: $-3t + 15 = -3(t-5)$. Hence, we get

$$2t^3 - 10t^2 - 3t + 15 = 2t^2(t-5) - 3(t-5) = (2t^2 - 3)(t-5)$$

Now the question becomes can we factor $2t^2 - 3$ over the integers? This would require integers a, b, c and d such that $(at+b)(ct+d) = 2t^2 - 3$. Since $ab = 2$ and $cd = -3$, we aren't left with many options - in fact, we really have only four choices: $(2t-1)(t+3)$, $(2t+1)(t-3)$, $(2t-3)(t+1)$ and $(2t+3)(t-1)$. None of these produces $2t^2 - 3$ - which means it's irreducible over the integers - thus our final answer is $(2t^2 - 3)(t-5)$.

6. Our last example, $x^4 + 4x^2 + 16$, is our old friend from Example A.9.1. As noted there, it is not a perfect square trinomial, so we could try to reverse the F.O.I.L. process. This is complicated by the fact that our highest degree term is x^4, so we would have to look at factorizations of the form $(x+b)(x^3+d)$ as well as $(x^2+b)(x^2+d)$. We leave it to

[12] Some of these guesses can be more 'educated' than others. Since the middle term is relatively 'small,' we don't expect the 'extreme' factors of 36 and 12 to appear, for instance.

the reader to show that neither of those work. This is an example of where 'trying something' pays off. Even though we've stated that it is not a perfect square trinomial, it's pretty close. Identifying $x^4 = (x^2)^2$ and $16 = 4^2$, we'd have $(x^2+4)^2 = x^4+8x^2+16$, but instead of $8x^2$ as our middle term, we only have $4x^2$. We could add in the extra $4x^2$ we need, but to keep the balance, we'd have to subtract it off. Doing so produces an unexpected opportunity:

$$\begin{aligned}
x^4+4x^2+16 &= x^4+4x^2+16+(4x^2-4x^2) \\
&\qquad\qquad \text{(Adding and subtracting the same term)} \\
&= x^4+8x^2+16-4x^2 \qquad \text{(Rearranging terms)} \\
&= (x^2+4)^2-(2x)^2 \\
&\qquad\qquad \text{(Factoring perfect square trinomial)} \\
&= [(x^2+4)-2x][(x^2+4)+2x] \\
&\qquad\qquad \text{(Difference of Squares: } a=(x^2+4),\ b=2x\text{)} \\
&= (x^2-2x+4)(x^2+2x+4) \qquad \text{(Rearraging terms)}
\end{aligned}$$

We leave it to the reader to check that neither x^2-2x+4 nor x^2+2x+4 factor over the integers, so we are done. □

A.9.1 Solving Equations by Factoring

Many students wonder why they are forced to learn how to factor. Simply put, factoring is our main tool for solving the non-linear equations which arise in many of the applications of Mathematics.[13] We use factoring in conjunction with the Zero Product Property of Real Numbers which was first stated on page 31 and is given here again for reference.

[13] Also known as 'story problems' or 'real-world examples'.

The Zero Product Property of Real Numbers: If a and b are real numbers with $ab = 0$ then either $a = 0$ or $b = 0$ or both.

Consider the equation $6x^2 + 11x = 10$. To see how the Zero Product Property is used to help us solve this equation, we first set the equation equal to zero and then apply the techniques from Example A.9.2:

$$
\begin{aligned}
6x^2 + 11x &= 10 \\
6x^2 + 11x - 10 &= 0 && \text{(Subtract 10 from both sides)} \\
(2x+5)(3x-2) &= 0 && \text{(Factor)} \\
2x + 5 = 0 &\text{ or } 3x - 2 = 0 \\
&&& \text{(Zero Product Property with } a = 2x+5,\ b = 3x-2\text{)} \\
x = -\frac{5}{2} &\text{ or } x = \frac{2}{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

The reader should check that both of these solutions satisfy the original equation.

It is critical that you see the importance of setting the expression equal to 0 before factoring. Otherwise, we'd get something silly like:

$$
\begin{aligned}
6x^2 + 11x &= 10 \\
x(6x + 11) &= 10 && \text{(Factor)}
\end{aligned}
$$

What we **cannot** deduce from this equation is that $x = 10$ or $6x + 11 = 10$ or that $x = 2$ and $6x + 11 = 5$. (It's wrong and you should feel bad if you do it.) It is precisely because 0 plays such a special role in the arithmetic of real numbers (as the Additive Identity) that we can assume a factor is 0 when the product is 0. No other real number has that ability.

Box A.9.4: Strategy for Solving Non-linear Equations

1. Put all of the nonzero terms on one side of the equation so that the other side is 0.
2. Factor.
3. Use the Zero Product Property of Real Numbers and set each factor equal to 0.
4. Solve each of the resulting equations.

We summarize the **correct** equation solving strategy in Box A.9.4.

Let's finish the section with a collection of examples in which we use this strategy.

Example A.9.3. Solve the following equations.

1.	$3x^2 = 35 - 16x$	2.	$t = \dfrac{1+4t^2}{4}$
3.	$(y-1)^2 = 2(y-1)$	4.	$\dfrac{w^4}{3} = \dfrac{8w^3-12}{12} - \dfrac{w^2-4}{4}$
5.	$z(z(18z+9)-50) = 25$	6.	$x^4 - 8x^2 - 9 = 0$

Solution.

1. We begin by gathering all of the nonzero terms to one side getting 0 on the other and then we proceed to factor and apply the Zero Product Property.

$$\begin{aligned}
3x^2 &= 35 - 16x && \\
3x^2 + 16x - 35 &= 0 && \text{(Add } 16x\text{, subtract 35)}\\
(3x-5)(x+7) &= 0 && \text{(Factor)}\\
3x - 5 = 0 &\text{ or } x + 7 = 0 && \text{(Zero Product Property)}\\
x = \frac{5}{3} &\text{ or } x = -7 &&
\end{aligned}$$

We check our answers by substituting each of them into the original equation. Plugging in $x = \frac{5}{3}$ yields $\frac{25}{3}$ on both sides while $x = -7$ gives 147 on both sides.

2. To solve $t = \frac{1+4t^2}{4}$, we first clear fractions then move all of the nonzero terms to one side of the equation, factor and apply the Zero Product Property.

$$\begin{aligned}
t &= \frac{1+4t^2}{4} && \\
4t &= 1 + 4t^2 && \text{(Clear fractions (multiply by 4))} \\
0 &= 1 + 4t^2 - 4t && \text{(Subtract 4)} \\
0 &= 4t^2 - 4t + 1 && \text{(Rearrange terms)} \\
0 &= (2t-1)^2 && \text{(Factor—Perfect Square Trinomial))}
\end{aligned}$$

At this point, we get $(2t-1)^2 = (2t-1)(2t-1) = 0$, so, the Zero Product Property gives us $2t - 1 = 0$ in both cases.[14] Our final answer is $t = \frac{1}{2}$, which we invite the reader to check.

3. Following the strategy outlined above, the first step to solving $(y-1)^2 = 2(y-1)$ is to gather the nonzero terms on one side of the equation with 0 on the other side and factor.

$$\begin{aligned}
(y-1)^2 &= 2(y-1) && \\
(y-1)^2 - 2(y-1) &= 0 && \text{(Subtract } 2(y-1)\text{)} \\
(y-1)[(y-1)-2] &= 0 && \text{(Factor out G.C.F.)} \\
(y-1)(y-3) &= 0 && \text{(Simplify)} \\
y - 1 = 0 &\text{ or } y - 3 = 0 && \\
y = 1 &\text{ or } y = 3 &&
\end{aligned}$$

[14] More generally, given a positive power p, the only solution to $x^p = 0$ is $x = 0$.

Both of these answers are easily checked by substituting them into the original equation.

An alternative method to solving this equation is to begin by dividing both sides by $(y - 1)$ to simplify things outright. As we saw in Example A.4.1, however, whenever we divide by a variable quantity, we make the explicit assumption that this quantity is nonzero. Thus we must stipulate that $y - 1 \neq 0$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{(y-1)^2}{(y-1)} &= \frac{2(y-1)}{(y-1)} && \text{(Divide by } y-1\text{. This assumes } y-1 \neq 0) \\
y - 1 &= 2 \\
y &= 3
\end{aligned}$$

Note that in this approach, we obtain the $y = 3$ solution, but we 'lose' the $y = 1$ solution. How did that happen? Assuming $y - 1 \neq 0$ is equivalent to assuming $y \neq 1$. This is an issue because $y = 1$ is a solution to the original equation and it was 'divided out' too early. The moral of the story? If you decide to divide by a variable expression, double check that you aren't excluding any solutions.[15]

4. Proceeding as before, we clear fractions, gather the nonzero terms on one side of the equation, have 0 on the other and factor.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{w^4}{3} &= \frac{8w^3 - 12}{12} - \frac{w^2 - 4}{4} \\
12\left(\frac{w^4}{3}\right) &= 12\left(\frac{8w^3 - 12}{12} - \frac{w^2 - 4}{4}\right) && \text{(Multiply by 12)} \\
4w^4 &= (8w^3 - 12) - 3(w^2 - 4) && \text{(Distribute)}
\end{aligned}$$

[15]You will see other examples throughout this text where dividing by a variable quantity does more harm than good. Keep this basic one in mind as you move on in your studies - it's a good cautionary tale.

$$
\begin{aligned}
4w^4 &= 8w^3 - 12 - 3w^2 + 12 && \text{(Distribute)} \\
0 &= 8w^3 - 12 - 3w^2 + 12 - 4w^4 && \text{(Subtract } 4w^4\text{)} \\
0 &= 8w^3 - 3w^2 - 4w^4 && \text{(Gather like terms)} \\
0 &= w^2(8w - 3 - 4w^2) && \text{(Factor out G.C.F.)}
\end{aligned}
$$

At this point, we apply the Zero Product Property to deduce that $w^2 = 0$ or $8w - 3 - 4w^2 = 0$. From $w^2 = 0$, we get $w = 0$. To solve $8w - 3 - 4w^2 = 0$, we rearrange terms and factor: $-4w^2 + 8w - 3 = (2w - 1)(-2w + 3) = 0$. Applying the Zero Product Property again, we get $2w - 1 = 0$ (which gives $w = \frac{1}{2}$), or $-2w + 3 = 0$ (which gives $w = \frac{3}{2}$). Our final answers are $w = 0$, $w = \frac{1}{2}$ and $w = \frac{3}{2}$. The reader is encouraged to check each of these answers in the original equation. (You need the practice with fractions!)

5. For our next example, we begin by subtracting the 25 from both sides then work out the indicated operations before factoring by grouping.

$$
\begin{aligned}
z(z(18z + 9) - 50) &= 25 && \\
z(z(18z + 9) - 50) - 25 &= 0 && \text{(Subtract 25)} \\
z(18z^2 + 9z - 50) - 25 &= 0 && \text{(Distribute)} \\
18z^3 + 9z^2 - 50z - 25 &= 0 && \text{(Distribute)} \\
9z^2(2z + 1) - 25(2z + 1) &= 0 && \text{(Factor)} \\
(9z^2 - 25)(2z + 1) &= 0 && \text{(Factor)}
\end{aligned}
$$

At this point, we use the Zero Product Property and get $9z^2 - 25 = 0$ or $2z + 1 = 0$. The latter gives $z = -\frac{1}{2}$ whereas the former factors as $(3z - 5)(3z + 5) = 0$. Applying the Zero Product Property again gives $3z - 5 = 0$ (so $z = \frac{5}{3}$) or $3z + 5 = 0$ (so $z = -\frac{5}{3}$.) Our final answers are $z = -\frac{1}{2}$, $z = \frac{5}{3}$ and $z = -\frac{5}{3}$, each of which is good fun to check.

6. The nonzero terms of the equation $x^4 - 8x^2 - 9 = 0$ are already on one side of the equation so we proceed to factor. This trinomial doesn't fit the pattern of a perfect square so we attempt to reverse the F.O.I.L.ing process. With an x^4 term, we have two possible forms to try: $(ax^2 + b)(cx^2 + d)$ and $(ax^3 + b)(cx + d)$. We leave it to you to show that $(ax^3 + b)(cx + d)$ does not work and we show that $(ax^2 + b)(cx^2 + d)$ does.

   Since the coefficient of x^4 is 1, we take $a = c = 1$. The constant term is -9 so we know b and d have opposite signs and our choices are limited to two options: either b and d come from ± 1 and ± 9 OR one is 3 while the other is -3. After some trial and error, we get $x^4 - 8x^2 - 9 = (x^2 - 9)(x^2 + 1)$. Hence $x^4 - 8x^2 - 9 = 0$ reduces to $(x^2 - 9)(x^2 + 1) = 0$. The Zero Product Property tells us that either $x^2 - 9 = 0$ or $x^2 + 1 = 0$. To solve the former, we factor: $(x - 3)(x + 3) = 0$, so $x - 3 = 0$ (hence, $x = 3$) or $x + 3 = 0$ (hence, $x = -3$). The equation $x^2 + 1 = 0$ has no (real) solution, since for any real number x, x^2 is always 0 or greater. Thus $x^2 + 1$ is always positive. Our final answers are $x = 3$ and $x = -3$. As always, the reader is invited to check both answers in the original equation. $\square$

A.9.2 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 30., factor completely over the integers. Check your answer by multiplication.

1. $2x - 10x^2$
2. $12t^5 - 8t^3$
3. $16xy^2 - 12x^2y$
4. $5(m+3)^2 - 4(m+3)^3$
5. $(2x-1)(x+3) - 4(2x-1)$
6. $t^2(t-5) + t - 5$
7. $w^2 - 121$
8. $49 - 4t^2$
9. $81t^4 - 16$
10. $9z^2 - 64y^4$
11. $(y+3)^2 - 4y^2$
12. $(x+h)^3 - (x+h)$
13. $y^2 - 24y + 144$
14. $25t^2 + 10t + 1$
15. $12x^3 - 36x^2 + 27x$
16. $m^4 + 10m^2 + 25$
17. $27 - 8x^3$
18. $t^6 + t^3$
19. $x^2 - 5x - 14$
20. $y^2 - 12y + 27$
21. $3t^2 + 16t + 5$
22. $6x^2 - 23x + 20$
23. $35 + 2m - m^2$
24. $7w - 2w^2 - 3$
25. $3m^3 + 9m^2 - 12m$
26. $x^4 + x^2 - 20$
27. $4(t^2-1)^2 + 3(t^2-1) - 10$
28. $x^3 - 5x^2 - 9x + 45$
29. $3t^2 + t - 3 - t^3$
30. [16] $y^4 + 5y^2 + 9$

In Exercises 1. - 15., find all rational number solutions. Check your answers.

1. $(7x+3)(x-5) = 0$
2. $(2t-1)^2(t+4) = 0$
3. $(y^2+4)(3y^2+y-10) = 0$
4. $4t = t^2$
5. $y + 3 = 2y^2$
6. $26x = 8x^2 + 21$
7. $16x^4 = 9x^2$
8. $w(6w+11) = 10$
9. $2w^2 + 5w + 2 = -3(2w+1)$
10. $x^2(x-3) = 16(x-3)$
11. $(2t+1)^3 = (2t+1)$
12. $a^4 + 4 = 6 - a^2$
13. $\dfrac{8t^2}{3} = 2t + 3$
14. $\dfrac{x^3+x}{2} = \dfrac{x^2+1}{3}$
15. $\dfrac{y^4}{3} - y^2 = \dfrac{3}{2}(y^2+3)$
16. With help from your classmates, factor $4x^4 + 8x^2 + 9$.
17. With help from your classmates, find an equation which has 3, $-\frac{1}{2}$, and 117 as solutions.

A.9.3 Answers

1. $2x(1-5x)$
2. $4t^3(3t^2-2)$
3. $4xy(4y-3x)$
4. $-(m+3)^2(4m+7)$
5. $(2x-1)(x-1)$
6. $(t-5)(t^2+1)$
7. $(w-11)(w+11)$
8. $(7-2t)(7+2t)$
9. $(3t-2)(3t+2)(9t^2+4)$
10. $(3z-8y^2)(3z+8y^2)$
11. $-3(y-3)(y+1)$
12. $(x+h)(x+h-1)(x+h+1)$
13. $(y-12)^2$
14. $(5t+1)^2$
15. $3x(2x-3)^2$
16. $(m^2+5)^2$
17. $(3-2x)(9+6x+4x^2)$
18. $t^3(t+1)(t^2-t+1)$
19. $(x-7)(x+2)$
20. $(y-9)(y-3)$
21. $(3t+1)(t+5)$
22. $(2x-5)(3x-4)$
23. $(7-m)(5+m)$
24. $(-2w+1)(w-3)$
25. $3m(m-1)(m+4)$
26. $(x-2)(x+2)(x^2+5)$
27. $(2t-3)(2t+3)(t^2+1)$
28. $(x-3)(x+3)(x-5)$
29. $(t-3)(1-t)(1+t)$
30. $(y^2-y+3)(y^2+y+3)$
31. $x=-\frac{3}{7}$ or $x=5$
32. $t=\frac{1}{2}$ or $t=-4$
33. $y=\frac{5}{3}$ or $y=-2$
34. $t=0$ or $t=4$
35. $y=-1$ or $y=\frac{3}{2}$
36. $x=\frac{3}{2}$ or $x=\frac{7}{4}$
37. $x=0$ or $x=\pm\frac{3}{4}$
38. $w=-\frac{5}{2}$ or $w=\frac{2}{3}$
39. $w=-5$ or $w=-\frac{1}{2}$
40. $x=3$ or $x=\pm 4$
41. $t=-1$, $t=-\frac{1}{2}$, or $t=0$
42. $a=\pm 1$
43. $t=-\frac{3}{4}$ or $t=\frac{3}{2}$
44. $x=\frac{2}{3}$
45. $y=\pm 3$

A.10 Quadratic Equations

In Section A.9.1, we reviewed how to solve basic non-linear equations by factoring. The astute reader should have noticed that all of the equations in that section were carefully constructed so that the polynomials could be factored using the integers. To demonstrate just how contrived the equations had to be, we can solve $2x^2 + 5x - 3 = 0$ by factoring, $(2x - 1)(x+3) = 0$, from which we obtain $x = \frac{1}{2}$ and $x = -3$. If we change the 5 to a 6 and try to solve $2x^2 + 6x - 3 = 0$, however, we find that this polynomial doesn't factor over the integers and we are stuck. It turns out that there are two real number solutions to this equation, but they are *irrational* numbers, and the goal of this section is to review the techniques which allow us to find these solutions.[1] In this section, we focus our attention on **quadratic** equations.

Definition A.10.1. An equation is said to be **quadratic** in a variable x if it can be written in the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ where a, b and c are expressions which do not involve x and $a \neq 0$.

Think of quadratic equations as equations that are one degree up from linear equations - instead of the highest power of x being just $x = x^1$, it's x^2. The simplest class of quadratic equations to solve are the ones in which $b = 0$. In that case, we have the following.

Box A.10.1: Solving Quadratic Equations by Extracting Square Roots

If c is a real number with $c \geq 0$, the solutions to $x^2 = c$ are $x = \pm\sqrt{c}$.

Note: If $c < 0$, $x^2 = c$ has no real number solutions.

[1]While our discussion in this section departs from factoring, we'll see in Chapter **??** that the same correspondence between factoring and solving equations holds whether or not the polynomial factors over the integers.

There are a couple different ways to see why Extracting Square Roots works, both of which are demonstrated by solving the equation $x^2 = 3$. If we follow the procedure outlined in the previous section, we subtract 3 from both sides to get $x^2 - 3 = 0$ and we now try to factor $x^2 - 3$. As mentioned in the remarks following Definition A.9.1, we could think of $x^2 - 3 = x^2 - (\sqrt{3})^2$ and apply the Difference of Squares formula to factor $x^2 - 3 = (x - \sqrt{3})(x + \sqrt{3})$. We solve $(x - \sqrt{3})(x + \sqrt{3}) = 0$ by using the Zero Product Property as before by setting each factor equal to zero: $x - \sqrt{3} = 0$ and $x + \sqrt{3} - 0$. We get the answers $x = \pm\sqrt{3}$. In general, if $c \geq 0$, then $\sqrt{c}$ is a real number, so $x^2 - c = x^2 - (\sqrt{c})^2 = (x - \sqrt{c})(x + \sqrt{c})$. Replacing the '3' with 'c' in the above discussion gives the general result.

Another way to view this result is to visualize 'taking the square root' of both sides: since $x^2 = c$, $\sqrt{x^2} = \sqrt{c}$. How do we simplify $\sqrt{x^2}$? We have to exercise a bit of caution here. Note that $\sqrt{(5)^2}$ and $\sqrt{(-5)^2}$ both simplify to $\sqrt{25} = 5$. In both cases, $\sqrt{x^2}$ returned a *positive* number, since the negative in -5 was 'squared away' *before* we took the square root. In other words, $\sqrt{x^2}$ is x if x is positive, or, if x is negative, we make x positive - that is, $\sqrt{x^2} = |x|$, the absolute value of x. So from $x^2 = 3$, we 'take the square root' of both sides of the equation to get $\sqrt{x^2} = \sqrt{3}$. This simplifies to $|x| = \sqrt{3}$, which by Theorem A.7.2 is equivalent to $x = \sqrt{3}$ or $x = -\sqrt{3}$. Replacing the '3' in the previous argument with 'c,' gives the general result.

As you might expect, Extracting Square Roots can be applied to more complicated equations. Consider the equation below. We can solve it by Extracting Square Roots provided we first isolate the quantity that is being squared :

$$\begin{aligned} 2\left(x + \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 - \frac{15}{2} &= 0 \\ 2\left(x + \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 &= \frac{15}{2} && \left(\text{Add } \frac{15}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(x+\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 &= \frac{15}{4} && \text{(Divide by 2)}\\
x+\frac{3}{2} &= \pm\sqrt{\frac{15}{4}} && \text{(Extract Square Roots)}\\
x+\frac{3}{2} &= \pm\frac{\sqrt{15}}{2} && \text{(Property of Radicals)}\\
x &= -\frac{3}{2}\pm\frac{\sqrt{15}}{2} && \text{(Subtract } \tfrac{3}{2}\text{)}\\
x &= -\frac{3\pm\sqrt{15}}{2} && \text{(Add fractions)}
\end{aligned}$$

Let's return to the equation $2x^2 + 6x - 3 = 0$ from the beginning of the section. We leave it to the reader to expand the left side and show that

$$2\left(x+\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 - \frac{15}{2} = 2x^2 + 6x - 3.$$

In other words, we can solve $2x^2+6x-3 = 0$ by *transforming* into an equivalent equation. This process, you may recall, is called 'Completing the Square.' We'll revisit Completing the Square in Section **??** in more generality and for a different purpose but for now we revisit the steps needed to complete the square to solve a quadratic equation.

To refresh our memories, we apply this method to solve $3x^2 - 24x + 5 = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
3x^2 - 24x + 5 &= 0 && \\
3x^2 - 24x &= -5 && \text{(Subtract } c = 55\text{)}\\
x^2 - 8x &= -\frac{5}{3} && \text{(Divide by } a = 3\text{)}\\
x^2 - 8x + 16 &= -\frac{5}{3} + 16 && \text{(Add } \left(\tfrac{b}{2a}\right)^2 = (-4)^2 = 16\text{)}\\
(x-4)^2 &= \frac{43}{3} && \text{(Factor: Perfect Square Trinomial)}
\end{aligned}$$

Box A.10.2: Solving Quadratic Equations: Completing the Square

To solve a quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ by Completing the Square:

1. Subtract the constant c from both sides.
2. Divide both sides by a, the coefficient of x^2. (Remember: $a \neq 0$.)
3. Add $\left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2$ to both sides of the equation. (That's half the coefficient of x, squared.)
4. Factor the left hand side of the equation as $\left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2$.
5. Extract Square Roots.
6. Subtract $\frac{b}{2a}$ from both sides.

$$x - 4 = \pm\sqrt{\frac{43}{3}} \qquad \text{(Extract Square Roots)}$$

$$x = 4 \pm \sqrt{\frac{43}{3}} \qquad \text{(Add 4)}$$

At this point, we use properties of fractions and radicals to 'rationalize' the denominator:[2]

$$\sqrt{\frac{43}{3}} = \sqrt{\frac{43 \cdot 3}{3 \cdot 3}} = \frac{\sqrt{129}}{\sqrt{9}} = \frac{\sqrt{129}}{3}$$

We can now get a common (integer) denominator which yields:

$$x = 4 \pm \sqrt{\frac{43}{3}} = 4 \pm \frac{\sqrt{129}}{3} = \frac{12 \pm \sqrt{129}}{3}$$

The key to Completing the Square is that the procedure always produces a perfect square trinomial. To see why this works *every single time*, we start with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ and follow the procedure:

[2] Recall that this means we want to get a denominator with rational (more specifically, integer) numbers.

$$\begin{aligned} ax^2 + bx + c &= 0 \\ ax^2 + bx &= -c && \text{(Subtract } c\text{)} \\ x^2 + \frac{bx}{a} &= -\frac{c}{a} && \text{(Divide by } a \neq 0\text{)} \\ x^2 + \frac{bx}{a} + \left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 &= -\frac{c}{a} + \left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 && \text{(Add } \left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2\text{)} \end{aligned}$$

(Hold onto the line above for a moment.) Here's the heart of the method - we need to show that

$$x^2 + \frac{bx}{a} + \left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 = \left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2$$

To show this, we start with the right side of the equation and apply the Perfect Square Formula from Theorem A.8.3

$$\left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 = x^2 + 2\left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)x + \left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 = x^2 + \frac{bx}{a} + \left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 \ \checkmark$$

With just a few more steps we can solve the general equation $ax^2+bx+c = 0$ so let's pick up the story where we left off. (The line on the previous page we told you to hold on to.)

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + \frac{bx}{a} + \left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 &= -\frac{c}{a} + \left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 \\ \left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 &= -\frac{c}{a} + \frac{b^2}{4a^2} && \text{(Factor: Perfect Square Trinomial)} \\ \left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 &= -\frac{4ac}{4a^2} + \frac{b^2}{4a^2} && \text{(Get a common denominator)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\left(x+\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 = \frac{b^2-4ac}{4a^2} \qquad \text{(Add fractions)}$$

$$x+\frac{b}{2a} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{b^2-4ac}{4a^2}} \qquad \text{(Extract Square Roots)}$$

$$x+\frac{b}{2a} = \pm\frac{\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2a} \qquad \text{(Properties of Radicals)}$$

$$x = -\frac{b}{2a} \pm \frac{\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2a} \qquad \text{(Subtract } \tfrac{b}{2a}\text{)}$$

$$x = \frac{-b\pm\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2a} \qquad \text{(Add fractions.)}$$

Lo and behold, we have derived the legendary **Quadratic Formula**!

Theorem A.10.1. Quadratic Formula: The solution(s) to $ax^2+bx+c=0$ with $a \neq 0$ is/are:

$$x = \frac{-b\pm\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2a}$$

We can check our earlier solutions to $2x^2+6x-3=0$ and $3x^2-24x+5=0$ using the Quadratic Formula. For $2x^2+6x-3=0$, we identify $a=2$, $b=6$ and $c=-3$. The quadratic formula gives:

$$x = \frac{-6\pm\sqrt{6^2-4(2)(-3)}}{2(2)} = \frac{-6\pm\sqrt{36+24}}{4} = \frac{-6\pm\sqrt{60}}{4}$$

Using properties of radicals ($\sqrt{60} = 2\sqrt{15}$), this reduces to $\frac{2(-3\pm\sqrt{15})}{4} = \frac{-3\pm\sqrt{15}}{2}$. We leave it to the reader to show these two answers are the same as $-\frac{3\pm\sqrt{15}}{2}$, as required.[3]

[3] Think about what $-(3\pm\sqrt{15})$ is really telling you.

For $3x^2 - 24x + 5 = 0$, we identify $a = 3$, $b = -24$ and $c = 5$. Here, we get:

$$x = \frac{-(-24) \pm \sqrt{(-24)^2 - 4(3)(5)}}{2(3)} = \frac{24 \pm \sqrt{516}}{6}$$

Since $\sqrt{516} = 2\sqrt{129}$, this reduces to $x = \frac{12 \pm \sqrt{129}}{3}$.

It is worth noting that the Quadratic Formula applies to all quadratic equations - even ones we could solve using other techniques. For example, to solve $2x^2 + 5x - 3 = 0$ we identify $a = 2$, $b = 5$ and $c = -3$. Plugging those into the Quadratic Formula yields:

$$x = \frac{-5 \pm \sqrt{5^2 - 4(2)(-3)}}{2(2)} = \frac{-5 \pm \sqrt{49}}{4} = \frac{-5 \pm 7}{4}$$

At this point, we have $x = \frac{-5+7}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$ and $x = \frac{-5-7}{4} = \frac{-12}{4} = -3$ - the same two answers we obtained factoring. We can also use it to solve $x^2 = 3$, if we wanted to. From $x^2 - 3 = 0$, we have $a = 1$, $b = 0$ and $c = -3$. The Quadratic Formula produces

$$x = \frac{-0 \pm \sqrt{0^2 - 4(1)(3)}}{2(1)} = \frac{\pm\sqrt{12}}{2} = \pm\frac{2\sqrt{3}}{2} = \pm\sqrt{3}$$

As this last example illustrates, while the Quadratic Formula *can* be used to solve every quadratic equation, that doesn't mean it *should* be used. Many times other methods are more efficient. We now provide a more comprehensive approach to solving Quadratic Equations.

The reader is encouraged to pause for a moment to think about why 'Completing the Square' doesn't appear in our list of strategies despite the fact that we've spent the majority of the section so far talking about it.[4] Let's get some practice solving quadratic equations, shall we?

Example A.10.1. Find all real number solutions to the following equations.

[4] Unacceptable answers include "Jeff and Carl are mean" and "It was one of Carl's Pedantic Rants".

Box A.10.3: Strategies for Solving Quadratic Equations

- If the variable appears in the squared term only, isolate it and Extract Square Roots.
- Otherwise, put the nonzero terms on one side of the equation so that the other side is 0.
  - Try factoring.
  - If the expression doesn't factor easily, use the Quadratic Formula.

1. $3 - (2w-1)^2 = 0$
2. $5x - x(x-3) = 7$
3. $(y-1)^2 = 2 - \dfrac{y+2}{3}$
4. $5(25-21x) = \dfrac{59}{4} - 25x^2$
5. $-4.9t^2 + 10t\sqrt{3} + 2 = 0$
6. $2x^2 = 3x^4 - 6$

Solution.

1. Since $3 - (2w-1)^2 = 0$ contains a perfect square, we isolate it first then extract square roots:

$$\begin{aligned} 3 - (2w-1)^2 &= 0 \\ 3 &= (2w-1)^2 && \text{(Add } (2w-1)^2\text{)} \\ \pm\sqrt{3} &= 2w - 1 && \text{(Extract Square Roots)} \\ 1 \pm \sqrt{3} &= 2w && \text{(Add 1)} \\ \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{3}}{2} &= w && \text{(Divide by 2)} \end{aligned}$$

We find our two answers $w = \frac{1\pm\sqrt{3}}{2}$. The reader is encouraged to check both answers by substituting each into the original equation.[5]

[5] It's excellent practice working with radicals and fractions so we really, *really* want you to take the time to do it.

2. To solve $5x - x(x-3) = 7$, we perform the indicated operations and set one side equal to 0.

$$\begin{aligned}
5x - x(x-3) &= 7 & & \\
5x - x^2 + 3x &= 7 & & \text{(Distribute)} \\
-x^2 + 8x &= 7 & & \text{(Gather like terms)} \\
-x^2 + 8x - 7 &= 0 & & \text{(Subtract 7)}
\end{aligned}$$

At this point, we attempt to factor and find $-x^2 + 8x - 7 = (x - 1)(-x + 7)$. Using the Zero Product Property, we get $x - 1 = 0$ or $-x + 7 = 0$. Our answers are $x = 1$ or $x = 7$, which are easily verified.

3. Even though we have a perfect square in $(y-1)^2 = 2 - \frac{y+2}{3}$, Extracting Square Roots won't help matters since we have a y on the other side of the equation. Our strategy here is to perform the indicated operations (and clear the fraction for good measure) and get 0 on one side of the equation.

$$\begin{aligned}
(y-1)^2 &= 2 - \frac{y+2}{3} & & \\
y^2 - 2y + 1 &= 2 - \frac{y+2}{3} & & \\
& & & \text{(Perfect Square Trinomial)} \\
3(y^2 - 2y + 1) &= 3\left(2 - \frac{y+2}{3}\right) & & \text{(Multiply by 3)} \\
3y^2 - 6y + 3 &= 6 - 3\left(\frac{y+2}{3}\right) & & \text{(Distribute)} \\
3y^2 - 6y + 3 &= 6 - (y+2) & & \\
3y^2 - 6y + 3 - 6 + (y+2) &= 0 & & \text{(Subtract 6, Add } (y+2))
\end{aligned}$$

$$3y^2 - 5y - 1 = 0$$

A cursory attempt at factoring bears no fruit, so we run this through the Quadratic Formula with $a = 3$, $b = -5$ and $c = -1$.

$$\begin{aligned}
y &= \frac{-(-5) \pm \sqrt{(-5)^2 - 4(3)(-1)}}{2(3)} \\
y &= \frac{5 \pm \sqrt{25 + 12}}{6} \\
y &= \frac{5 \pm \sqrt{37}}{6}
\end{aligned}$$

Since 37 is prime, we have no way to reduce $\sqrt{37}$. Thus, our final answers are $y = \frac{5 \pm \sqrt{37}}{6}$. The reader is encouraged to supply the details of the challenging verification of the answers.

4. We proceed as before; our goal is to gather the nonzero terms on one side of the equation.

$$\begin{aligned}
5(25 - 21x) &= \frac{59}{4} - 25x^2 & & \\
125 - 105x &= \frac{59}{4} - 25x^2 & & \text{(Distribute)} \\
4(125 - 105x) &= 4\left(\frac{59}{4} - 25x^2\right) & & \text{(Multiply by 4)} \\
500 - 420x &= 59 - 100x^2 & & \text{(Distribute)} \\
500 - 420x - 59 + 100x^2 &= 0 & & \text{(Subtract 59, Add } 100x^2\text{)} \\
100x^2 - 420x + 441 &= 0 & & \text{(Gather like terms)}
\end{aligned}$$

With highly composite numbers like 100 and 441, factoring seems inefficient at best,[6] so we apply the Quadratic Formula with $a = 100$, $b = -420$ and $c = 441$:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{-(-420) \pm \sqrt{(-420)^2 - 4(100)(441)}}{2(100)} \\ &= \frac{420 \pm \sqrt{176000 - 176400}}{200} \\ &= \frac{420 \pm \sqrt{0}}{200} \\ &= \frac{420 \pm 0}{200} \\ &= \frac{420}{200} \\ &= \frac{21}{10} \end{aligned}$$

To our surprise and delight we obtain just one answer, $x = \frac{21}{10}$.

5. Our next equation $-4.9t^2 + 10t\sqrt{3} + 2 = 0$, already has 0 on one side of the equation, but with coefficients like -4.9 and $10\sqrt{3}$, factoring with integers is not an option. We could make things a *bit* easier by clearing the decimal (by multiplying through by 10) to get $-49t^2 + 100t\sqrt{3} + 20 = 0$ but we simply cannot rid ourselves of the irrational number $\sqrt{3}$. The Quadratic Formula is our only recourse. With $a = -49$, $b = 100\sqrt{3}$ and $c = 20$ we get:

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \frac{-100\sqrt{3} \pm \sqrt{(100\sqrt{3})^2 - 4(-49)(20)}}{2(-49)} \\ &= \frac{-100\sqrt{3} \pm \sqrt{30000 + 3920}}{-98} \end{aligned}$$

[6] This is actually the Perfect Square Trinomial $(10x - 21)^2$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{-100\sqrt{3} \pm \sqrt{33920}}{-98} \\
&= \frac{-100\sqrt{3} \pm 8\sqrt{530}}{-98} \\
&= \frac{2(-50\sqrt{3} \pm 4\sqrt{530})}{2(-49)} \\
&= \frac{-50\sqrt{3} \pm 4\sqrt{530}}{-49} && \text{(Reduce)} \\
&= \frac{-(-50\sqrt{3} \pm 4\sqrt{530})}{49} && \text{(Properties of Negatives)} \\
&= \frac{50\sqrt{3} \mp 4\sqrt{530}}{49} && \text{(Distribute)}
\end{aligned}
$$

You'll note that when we 'distributed' the negative in the last step, we changed the '$\pm$' to a '$\mp$.' While this is technically correct, at the end of the day both symbols mean 'plus or minus',[7] so we can write our answers as $t = \frac{50\sqrt{3} \pm 4\sqrt{530}}{49}$. Checking these answers are a true test of arithmetic mettle.

6. At first glance, the equation $2x^2 = 3x^4 - 6$ seems misplaced. The highest power of the variable x here is 4, not 2, so this equation isn't a quadratic equation - at least not in terms of the variable x. It is, however, an example of an equation that is 'Quadratic in Disguise'.[8] We introduce a new variable u to help us see the pattern - specifically we let $u = x^2$. Thus $u^2 = (x^2)^2 = x^4$. So in terms of the variable u, the equation $2x^2 = 3x^4 - 6$ is $2u = 3u^2 - 6$. The latter is a quadratic equation, which we can solve using the usual techniques:

[7]There are instances where we need both symbols, however. For example, the Sum and Difference of Cubes Formulas (page **??**) can be written as a single formula: $a^3 \pm b^3 = (a \pm b)(a^2 \mp ab + b^2)$. In this case, all of the 'top' symbols are read to give the sum formula; the 'bottom' symbols give the difference formula.

[8]More formally, **quadratic in form.** Carl likes 'Quadratics in Disguise' since it reminds him of the tagline of one of his beloved childhood cartoons and toy lines.

$$\begin{aligned} 2u &= 3u^2 - 6 \\ 0 &= 3u^2 - 2u - 6 && \text{(Subtract } 2u\text{)} \end{aligned}$$

After a few attempts at factoring, we resort to the Quadratic Formula with $a = 3$, $b = -2$ and $c = -6$ to get the following:

$$\begin{aligned} u &= \frac{-(-2) \pm \sqrt{(-2)^2 - 4(3)(-6)}}{2(3)} \\ &= \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{4 + 72}}{6} \\ &= \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{76}}{6} \\ &= \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{4 \cdot 19}}{6} \\ &= \frac{2 \pm 2\sqrt{19}}{6} && \text{(Properties of Radicals)} \\ &= \frac{2(1 \pm \sqrt{19})}{2(3)} && \text{(Factor)} \\ &= \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{19}}{3} && \text{(Reduce)} \end{aligned}$$

We've solved the equation for u, but what we still need to solve the original equation[9] - which means we need to find the corresponding values of x. Since $u = x^2$, we have two equations:

[9]Or, you've solved the equation for 'you' (u), now you have to solve it for your instructor (x).

$$x^2 = \frac{1+\sqrt{19}}{3} \text{ or } x^2 = \frac{1-\sqrt{19}}{3}$$

We can solve the first equation by extracting square roots to get $x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1+\sqrt{19}}{3}}$. The second equation, however, has no real number solutions because $\frac{1-\sqrt{19}}{3}$ is a negative number. For our final answers we can rationalize the denominator[10] to get:

$$x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1+\sqrt{19}}{3}} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1+\sqrt{19}}{3} \cdot \frac{3}{3}} = \pm\frac{\sqrt{3+3\sqrt{19}}}{3}$$

As with the previous exercise, the very challenging check is left to the reader. □

Our last example above, the 'Quadratic in Disguise', hints that the Quadratic Formula is applicable to a wider class of equations than those which are strictly quadratic. We give some general guidelines to recognizing these beasts in the wild on the next page.

For example, $3x^6 - 2x^3 + 1 = 0$ is a Quadratic in Disguise, since $6 = 2 \cdot 3$. If we let $u = x^3$, we get $u^2 = (x^3)^2 = x^6$, so the equation becomes $3u^2 - 2u + 1 = 0$. However, $3x^6 - 2x^2 + 1 = 0$ is *not* a Quadratic in Disguise, since $6 \neq 2 \cdot 2$. The substitution $u = x^2$ yields $u^2 = (x^2)^2 = x^4$, not x^6 as required. We'll see more instances of 'Quadratics in Disguise' in later sections.

We close this section with a review of the **discriminant** of a quadratic equation as defined below.

Definition A.10.2. The Discriminant: Given a quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, the quantity $b^2 - 4ac$ is called the **discriminant** of the equation.

[10] We'll say more about this technique in Section A.13.

Box A.10.4: Identifying Quadratics in Disguise

An equation is a 'Quadratic in Disguise' if it can be written in the form: $ax^{2m} + bx^m + c = 0$.

In other words:

- There are exactly three terms, two with variables and one constant term.
- The exponent on the variable in one term is *exactly twice* the variable on the other term.

To transform a Quadratic in Disguise to a quadratic equation, let $u = x^m$ so $u^2 = (x^m)^2 = x^{2m}$. This transforms the equation into $au^2 + bu + c = 0$.

The discriminant is the radicand of the square root in the quadratic formula:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

It *discriminates* between the nature and number of solutions we get from a quadratic equation. The results are summarized below.

Theorem A.10.2. Discriminant Theorem: Given a Quadratic Equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, let $D = b^2 - 4ac$ be the discriminant.

- If $D > 0$, there are two distinct real number solutions to the equation.
- If $D = 0$, there is one repeated real number solution.
  Note: 'Repeated' here comes from the fact that 'both' solutions $\frac{-b\pm 0}{2a}$ reduce to $-\frac{b}{2a}$.
- If $D < 0$, there are no real solutions.

For example, the equation $x^2 + x - 1 = 0$ has two real number solutions since the discriminant works out to be $(1)^2 - 4(1)(-1) = 5 > 0$. This results in a $\pm\sqrt{5}$ in the Quadratic Formula which then generates two different answers. On the other hand, $x^2 + x + 1 = 0$ has no real solutions since here, the discriminant is $(1)^2 - 4(1)(1) = -3 < 0$ which generates a $\pm\sqrt{-3}$

in the Quadratic Formula. The equation $x^2 + 2x + 1 = 0$ has discriminant $(2)^2 - 4(1)(1) = 0$ so in the Quadratic Formula we get a $\pm\sqrt{0} = 0$ thereby generating just one solution. More can be said as well. For example, the discriminant of $6x^2 - x - 40 = 0$ is 961. This is a perfect square, $\sqrt{961} = 31$, which means our solutions are rational numbers. When our solutions are rational numbers, the quadratic actually factors nicely. In our example $6x^2 - x - 40 = (2x + 5)(3x - 8)$. Admittedly, if you've already computed the discriminant, you're most of the way done with the problem and probably wouldn't take the time to experiment with factoring the quadratic at this point – but we'll see another use for this analysis of the discriminant in Example A.12.1.

A.10.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 21., find all real solutions. Check your answers, as directed by your instructor.

1. $3\left(x - \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{5}{12}$
2. $4 - (5t + 3)^2 = 3$
3. $3(y^2 - 3)^2 - 2 = 10$
4. $x^2 + x - 1 = 0$
5. $3w^2 = 2 - w$
6. $y(y + 4) = 1$
7. $\frac{z}{2} = 4z^2 - 1$
8. $0.1v^2 + 0.2v = 0.3$
9. $x^2 = x - 1$
10. $3 - t = 2(t + 1)^2$
11. $(x - 3)^2 = x^2 + 9$
12. $(3y - 1)(2y + 1) = 5y$
13. $w^4 + 3w^2 - 1 = 0$
14. $2x^4 + x^2 = 3$
15. $(2 - y)^4 = 3(2 - y)^2 + 1$
16. $3x^4 + 6x^2 = 15x^3$
17. $6p + 2 = p^2 + 3p^3$
18. $10v = 7v^3 - v^5$
19. $y^2 - \sqrt{8}y = \sqrt{18}y - 1$
20. $x^2\sqrt{3} = x\sqrt{6} + \sqrt{12}$
21. $\frac{v^2}{3} = \frac{v\sqrt{3}}{2} + 1$

In Exercises 22. - 27., find all real solutions and use a calculator to approximate your answers, rounded to two decimal places.

22. $5.54^2 + b^2 = 36$
23. $\pi r^2 = 37$
24. $54 = 8r\sqrt{2} + \pi r^2$
25. $-4.9t^2 + 100t = 410$
26. $x^2 = 1.65(3 - x)^2$
27. $(0.5 + 2A)^2 = 0.7(0.1 - A)^2$

In Exercises 28. - 30., use Theorem A.7.2 along with the techniques in this section to find all real solutions to the following.

28. $|x^2 - 3x| = 2$
29. $|2x - x^2| = |2x - 1|$
30. $|x^2 - x + 3| = |4 - x^2|$
31. Prove that for every nonzero number p, $x^2 + xp + p^2 = 0$ has no real solutions.
32. Solve for t: $-\frac{1}{2}gt^2 + vt + h = 0$. Assume $g > 0$, $v \geq 0$ and $h \geq 0$.

A.10.2 Answers

1. $x = \dfrac{3 \pm \sqrt{5}}{6}$
2. $t = -\dfrac{4}{5}, -\dfrac{2}{5}$
3. $y = \pm 1, \pm\sqrt{5}$
4. $x = \dfrac{-1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2}$
5. $w = -1, \dfrac{2}{3}$
6. $y = -2 \pm \sqrt{5}$
7. $z = \dfrac{1 \pm \sqrt{65}}{16}$
8. $v = -3, 1$
9. No real solution.
10. $t = \dfrac{-5 \pm \sqrt{33}}{4}$
11. $x = 0$
12. $y = \dfrac{2 \pm \sqrt{10}}{6}$
13. $w = \pm\sqrt{\dfrac{\sqrt{13} - 3}{2}}$
14. $x = \pm 1$
15. $y = \dfrac{4 \pm \sqrt{6 + 2\sqrt{13}}}{2}$
16. $x = 0, \dfrac{5 \pm \sqrt{17}}{2}$
17. $p = -\dfrac{1}{3}, \pm\sqrt{2}$
18. $v = 0, \pm\sqrt{2}, \pm\sqrt{5}$
19. $y = \dfrac{5\sqrt{2} \pm \sqrt{46}}{2}$
20. $x = \dfrac{\sqrt{2} \pm \sqrt{10}}{2}$
21. $v = -\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, 2\sqrt{3}$
22. $b = \pm\dfrac{\sqrt{13271}}{50} \approx \pm 2.30$
23. $r = \pm\sqrt{\dfrac{37}{\pi}} \approx \pm 3.43$
24. $r = \dfrac{-4\sqrt{2} \pm \sqrt{54\pi + 32}}{\pi}$, $r \approx -6.32, 2.72$
25. $t = \dfrac{500 \pm 10\sqrt{491}}{49}$, $t \approx 5.68, 14.73$
26. $x = \dfrac{99 \pm 6\sqrt{165}}{13}$, $x \approx 1.69, 13.54$
27. $A = \dfrac{-107 \pm 7\sqrt{70}}{330}$, $A \approx -0.50, -0.15$
28. $x = 1, 2, \dfrac{3 \pm \sqrt{17}}{2}$

29. $x = \pm 1, 2 \pm \sqrt{3}$

30. $x = -\frac{1}{2}, 1, 7$

31. The discriminant is: $D = p^2 - 4p^2 = -3p^2 < 0$. Since $D < 0$, there are no real solutions.

32. $t = \dfrac{v \pm \sqrt{v^2 + 2gh}}{g}$

A.11 Complex Numbers

The results of Section A.10 tell us that the equation $x^2 + 1 = 0$ has no real number solutions. However, it *would* have solutions if we could make sense of $\sqrt{-1}$. The **Complex Numbers** do just that - they give us a mechanism for working with $\sqrt{-1}$. As such, the set of complex numbers fill in an algebraic gap left by the set of real numbers.

Here's the basic plan. There is no real number x with $x^2 = -1$, since for any real number $x^2 \geq 0$. However, we could formally extract square roots and write $x = \pm\sqrt{-1}$. We build the complex numbers by relabeling the quantity $\sqrt{-1}$ as i, the unfortunately misnamed **imaginary unit**.[1] The number i, while not a real number, is defined so that it plays along well with real numbers and acts very much like any other radical expression. For instance, $3(2i) = 6i$, $7i - 3i = 4i$, $(2 - 7i) + (3 + 4i) = 5 - 3i$, and so forth. The key properties which distinguish i from the real numbers are listed below.

Definition A.11.1. The imaginary unit i satisfies the two following properties:

1. $i^2 = -1$
2. If c is a real number with $c \geq 0$ then $\sqrt{-c} = i\sqrt{c}$

Property 1 in Definition A.11.1 establishes that i does act as a square root[2] of -1, and property 2 establishes what we mean by the 'principal square root' of a negative real number. In property 2, it is important to remember the restriction on c. For example, it is perfectly acceptable to say $\sqrt{-4} = i\sqrt{4} = i(2) = 2i$. However, $\sqrt{-(-4)} \neq i\sqrt{-4}$, otherwise, we'd get

$$2 = \sqrt{4} = \sqrt{-(-4)} = i\sqrt{-4} = i(2i) = 2i^2 = 2(-1) = -2,$$

[1] Some Technical Mathematics textbooks label it 'j'. While it carries the adjective 'imaginary', these numbers have essential real-world implications. For example, every electronic device owes its existence to the study of 'imaginary' numbers.

[2] Note the use of the indefinite article 'a'. Whatever beast is chosen to be i, $-i$ is the other square root of -1.

which is unacceptable. The moral of this story is that the general properties of radicals do not apply for even roots of negative quantities. With Definition A.11.1 in place, we can define the set of **complex numbers**.

Definition A.11.2. A **complex number** is a number of the form $a + bi$, where a and b are real numbers and i is the imaginary unit. The set of complex numbers is denoted $\mathbb{C}$.

Complex numbers include things you'd normally expect, like $3 + 2i$ and $\frac{2}{5} - i\sqrt{3}$. However, don't forget that a or b could be zero, which means numbers like $3i$ and 6 are also complex numbers. In other words, don't forget that the complex numbers *include* the real numbers,[3] so 0 and $\pi - \sqrt{21}$ are both considered complex numbers. The arithmetic of complex numbers is as you would expect. The only things you need to remember are the two properties in Definition A.11.1. The next example should help recall how these animals behave.

Example A.11.1. Perform the indicated operations.

1. $(1 - 2i) - (3 + 4i)$
2. $(1 - 2i)(3 + 4i)$
3. $\dfrac{1 - 2i}{3 - 4i}$
4. $\sqrt{-3}\sqrt{-12}$
5. $\sqrt{(-3)(-12)}$
6. $(x - [1 + 2i])(x - [1 - 2i])$

Solution.

1. As mentioned earlier, we treat expressions involving i as we would any other radical. We distribute and combine like terms:

$$\begin{aligned} (1 - 2i) - (3 + 4i) &= 1 - 2i - 3 - 4i && \text{(Distribute)} \\ &= -2 - 6i && \text{(Gather like terms)} \end{aligned}$$

[3] To use the language of Section A.1.2, $\mathbb{R} \subseteq \mathbb{C}$.

Technically, we'd have to rewrite our answer $-2-6i$ as $(-2)+(-6)i$ to be (in the strictest sense) 'in the form $a+bi$'. That being said, even pedants have their limits, so $-2-6i$ is good enough.

2. Using the Distributive Property (a.k.a. F.O.I.L.), we get

$$\begin{aligned}
(1-2i)(3+4i) &= (1)(3)+(1)(4i)-(2i)(3)-(2i)(4i) && \text{(F.O.I.L.)}\\
&= 3+4i-6i-8i^2 \\
&= 3-2i-8(-1) && (i^2=-1)\\
&= 3-2i+8 \\
&= 11-2i
\end{aligned}$$

3. How in the world are we supposed to simplify $\frac{1-2i}{3-4i}$? Well, we deal with the denominator $3-4i$ as we would any other denominator containing two terms, one of which is a square root.[4] We multiply both numerator and denominator by $3+4i$, the (complex) conjugate of $3-4i$. Doing so produces

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1-2i}{3-4i} &= \frac{(1-2i)(3+4i)}{(3-4i)(3+4i)} && \text{(Equivalent Fractions)}\\
&= \frac{3+4i-6i-8i^2}{9-16i^2} && \text{(F.O.I.L.)}\\
&= \frac{3-2i-8(-1)}{9-16(-1)} && (i^2=-1)\\
&= \frac{11-2i}{25} \\
&= \frac{11}{25}-\frac{2}{25}i
\end{aligned}$$

[4] See subsection A.13.1 for a more thorough treatment of this type of maneuver.

4. We use property 2 of Definition A.11.1 first, then apply the rules of radicals applicable to real numbers to get $\sqrt{-3}\sqrt{-12} = \left(i\sqrt{3}\right)\left(i\sqrt{12}\right) = i^2\sqrt{3 \cdot 12} = -\sqrt{36} = -6$.

5. We adhere to the order of operations here and perform the multiplication before the radical to get $\sqrt{(-3)(-12)} = \sqrt{36} = 6$.

6. We brute force multiply using the distributive property and find that

$$\begin{aligned}
(x - [1+2i])(x - [1-2i]) &= x^2 - x[1-2i] - x[1+2i] + [1-2i][1+2i] && \text{(F.O.I.L.)} \\
&= x^2 - x + 2ix - x - 2ix + 1 - 2i + 2i - 4i^2 && \text{(Distribute)} \\
&= x^2 - 2x + 1 - 4(-1) && \text{(Gather like terms; } i^2 = -1\text{)} \\
&= x^2 - 2x + 5
\end{aligned}$$

This type of factoring will be revisited in Section **??**. □

In the previous example, we used the 'conjugate' idea from Section A.13 to divide two complex numbers. More generally, the **complex conjugate** of a complex number $a + bi$ is the number $a - bi$. The notation commonly used for complex conjugation is a 'bar': $\overline{a + bi} = a - bi$. For example, $\overline{3 + 2i} = 3 - 2i$ and $\overline{3 - 2i} = 3 + 2i$. To find $\overline{6}$, we note that $\overline{6} = \overline{6 + 0i} = 6 - 0i = 6$, so $\overline{6} = 6$. Similarly, $\overline{4i} = -4i$, since $\overline{4i} = \overline{0 + 4i} = 0 - 4i = -4i$. Note that $\overline{3 + \sqrt{5}} = 3 + \sqrt{5}$, not $3 - \sqrt{5}$, since $\overline{3 + \sqrt{5}} = \overline{3 + \sqrt{5} + 0i} = 3 + \sqrt{5} - 0i = 3 + \sqrt{5}$. Here, the conjugation specified by the 'bar' notation involves reversing the sign before $i = \sqrt{-1}$, not before $\sqrt{5}$. The properties of the conjugate are summarized in the following theorem.

Theorem A.11.1. Properties of the Complex Conjugate: Let z and w be complex numbers.

- $\overline{\overline{z}} = z$
- $\overline{z + w} = \overline{z} + \overline{w}$
- $\overline{zw} = \overline{z}\,\overline{w}$
- $\overline{z^n} = (\overline{z})^n$, for any natural number n
- z is a real number if and only if $\overline{z} = z$.

Theorem A.11.1 says in part that complex conjugation works well with addition, multiplication and powers. The proofs of these properties can best be achieved by writing out $z = a + bi$ and $w = c + di$ for real numbers a, b, c and d. Next, we compute the left and right sides of each equation and verify that they are the same.

The proof of the first property is a very quick exercise.[5] To prove the second property, we compare $\overline{z + w}$ with $\overline{z} + \overline{w}$. We have $\overline{z} + \overline{w} = \overline{a + bi} + \overline{c + di} = a - bi + c - di$. To find $\overline{z + w}$, we first compute

$$z + w = (a + bi) + (c + di) = (a + c) + (b + d)i$$

so

$$\overline{z + w} = \overline{(a + c) + (b + d)i} = (a+c)-(b+d)i = a+c-bi-di = a-bi+c-di = \overline{z}+\overline{w}$$

As such, we have established $\overline{z + w} = \overline{z} + \overline{w}$. The proof for multiplication works similarly. The proof that the conjugate works well with powers can be viewed as a repeated application of the product rule, and is best proved using a technique called Mathematical Induction.[6] The last property is a characterization of real numbers. If z is real, then $z = a+0i$, so $\overline{z} = a-0i = a = z$. On the other hand, if $z = \overline{z}$, then $a+bi = a-bi$ which means $b = -b$ so $b = 0$. Hence, $z = a + 0i = a$ and is real.

We now return to the business of solving quadratic equations. Consider $x^2 - 2x + 5 = 0$. The discriminant $b^2 - 4ac = -16$ is negative, so we

[5] Trust us on this.

[6] See Section **??**.

know by Theorem A.10.2 there are no *real* solutions, since the Quadratic Formula would involve the term $\sqrt{-16}$. Complex numbers, however, are built just for such situations, so we can go ahead and apply the Quadratic Formula to get:

$$x = \frac{-(-2) \pm \sqrt{(-2)^2 - 4(1)(5)}}{2(1)} = \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{-16}}{2} = \frac{2 \pm 4i}{2} = 1 \pm 2i.$$

Example A.11.2. Find the complex solutions to the following equations.[7]

1. $\dfrac{2x}{x+1} = x + 3$
2. $2t^4 = 9t^2 + 5$
3. $z^3 + 1 = 0$

Solution.

1. Clearing fractions yields a quadratic equation so we then proceed as in Section A.10.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{2x}{x+1} &= x+3 \\
2x &= (x+3)(x+1) && \text{(Multiply by } (x+1) \text{ to clear denominators)} \\
2x &= x^2 + x + 3x + 3 && \text{(F.O.I.L.)} \\
2x &= x^2 + 4x + 3 && \text{(Gather like terms)} \\
0 &= x^2 + 2x + 3 && \text{(Subtract } 2x\text{)}
\end{aligned}$$

From here, we apply the Quadratic Formula

[7] Remember, all real numbers are complex numbers, so 'complex solutions' means both real and non-real answers.

$$\begin{aligned}
x &= \frac{-2 \pm \sqrt{2^2 - 4(1)(3)}}{2(1)} && \text{(Quadratic Formula)}\\
&= \frac{-2 \pm \sqrt{-8}}{2} && \text{(Simplify)}\\
&= \frac{-2 \pm i\sqrt{8}}{2} && \text{(Definition of } i\text{)}\\
&= \frac{-2 \pm i2\sqrt{2}}{2} && \text{(Product Rule for Radicals)}\\
&= \frac{\cancel{2}(-1 \pm i\sqrt{2})}{\cancel{2}} && \text{(Factor and reduce)}\\
&= -1 \pm i\sqrt{2}
\end{aligned}$$

We get two answers: $x = -1 + i\sqrt{2}$ and its conjugate $x = -1 - i\sqrt{2}$. Checking both of these answers reviews all of the salient points about complex number arithmetic and is therefore strongly encouraged.

2. Since we have three terms, and the exponent on one term ('4' on t^4) is exactly twice the exponent on the other ('2' on t^2), we have a Quadratic in Disguise. We proceed accordingly.

$$\begin{aligned}
rclr2t^4 &= 9t^2 + 5\\
2t^4 - 9t^2 - 5 &= 0 && \text{(Subtract } 9t^2 \text{ and 5)}\\
(2t^2 + 1)(t^2 - 5) &= 0 && \text{(Factor)}\\
2t^2 + 1 = 0 &\text{ or } t^2 = 5 && \text{(Zero Product Property)}
\end{aligned}$$

From $2t^2 + 1 = 0$ we get $2t^2 = -1$, or $t^2 = -\frac{1}{2}$. We extract square roots as follows:

$$t = \pm\sqrt{-\frac{1}{2}} = \pm i\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}} = \pm i\frac{\sqrt{1}}{\sqrt{2}} = \pm i\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \pm\frac{i\sqrt{2}}{2},$$

where we have rationalized the denominator per convention. From $t^2 = 5$, we get $t = \pm\sqrt{5}$. In total, we have four complex solutions - two real: $t = \pm\sqrt{5}$ and two non-real: $t = \pm\frac{i\sqrt{2}}{2}$.

3. To find the *real* solutions to $z^3 + 1 = 0$, we can subtract the 1 from both sides and extract cube roots: $z^3 = -1$, so $z = \sqrt[3]{-1} = -1$. It turns out there are two more non-real complex number solutions to this equation. To get at these, we factor:

$$\begin{aligned} z^3 + 1 &= 0 \\ (z+1)(z^2 - z + 1) &= 0 \qquad \text{(Factor—Sum of Two Cubes)} \\ z + 1 = 0 \text{ or } z^2 - z + 1 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

From $z + 1 = 0$, we get our real solution $z = -1$. From $z^2 - z + 1 = 0$, we apply the Quadratic Formula to get:

$$z = \frac{-(-1) \pm \sqrt{(-1)^2 - 4(1)(1)}}{2(1)} = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{-3}}{2} = \frac{1 \pm i\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

Thus we get *three* solutions to $z^3 + 1 = 0$ - one real: $z = -1$ and two non-real: $z = \frac{1 \pm i\sqrt{3}}{2}$. As always, the reader is encouraged to test their algebraic mettle and check these solutions. $\square$

It is no coincidence that the non-real solutions to the equations in Example A.11.2 appear in complex conjugate pairs. Any time we use the Quadratic Formula to solve an equation with real coefficients, the answers will form a complex conjugate pair owing to the $\pm$ in the Quadratic Formula. This leads us to a generalization of Theorem A.10.2 which we state below.

Theorem A.11.2. Discriminant Theorem: Given a Quadratic Equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where a, b and c are real numbers, let $D = b^2 - 4ac$ be the discriminant.

- If $D > 0$, there are two distinct real number solutions to the equation.
- If $D = 0$, there is one (repeated) real number solution.
  Note: 'Repeated' here comes from the fact that 'both' solutions $\frac{-b \pm 0}{2a}$ reduce to $-\frac{b}{2a}$.
- If $D < 0$, there are two non-real solutions which form a complex conjugate pair.

We will have much more to say about complex solutions to equations in Section **??** and we will revisit Theorem A.11.2 then.

A.11.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 10., use the given complex numbers z and w to find and simplify the following.

- $z + w$
- zw
- z^2
- $\frac{1}{z}$
- $\frac{z}{w}$
- $\frac{w}{z}$
- $\overline{z}$
- $z\overline{z}$
- $(\overline{z})^2$

1. $z = 2 + 3i$, $w = 4i$
2. $z = 1 + i$, $w = -i$
3. $z = i$, $w = -1 + 2i$
4. $z = 4i$, $w = 2 - 2i$
5. $z = 3 - 5i$, $w = 2 + 7i$
6. $z = -5 + i$, $w = 4 + 2i$
7. $z = \sqrt{2} - i\sqrt{2}$, $w = \sqrt{2} + i\sqrt{2}$
8. $z = 1 - i\sqrt{3}$, $w = -1 - i\sqrt{3}$
9. $z = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i$, $w = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i$
10. $z = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i$, $w = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i$

In Exercises 11. - 18., simplify the quantity.

11. $\sqrt{-49}$
12. $\sqrt{-9}$
13. $\sqrt{-25}\sqrt{-4}$
14. $\sqrt{(-25)(-4)}$
15. $\sqrt{-9}\sqrt{-16}$
16. $\sqrt{(-9)(-16)}$
17. $\sqrt{-(-9)}$
18. $-\sqrt{(-9)}$

We know that $i^2 = -1$ which means $i^3 = i^2 \cdot i = (-1) \cdot i = -i$ and $i^4 = i^2 \cdot i^2 = (-1)(-1) = 1$. In Exercises 19. - 26., use this information to simplify the given power of i.

19. i^5
20. i^6
21. i^7
22. i^8
23. i^{15}
24. i^{26}
25. i^{117}
26. i^{304}

In Exercises 27. - 35., find all complex solutions.

27. $3x^2 + 6 = 4x$
28. $15t^2 + 2t + 5 = 3t(t^2 + 1)$
29. $3y^2 + 4 = y^4$
30. $\frac{2}{1 - w} = w$

31. $\dfrac{y}{3} - \dfrac{3}{y} = y$

32. $\dfrac{x^3}{2x - 1} = \dfrac{x}{3}$

33. $x = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{5} - x}$

34. $\dfrac{5y^4 + 1}{y^2 - 1} = 3y^2$

35. $z^4 = 16$

36. Multiply and simplify: $\left(x - [3 - i\sqrt{23}]\right)\left(x - [3 + i\sqrt{23}]\right)$

A.11.2 Answers

1. For $z = 2 + 3i$ and $w = 4i$

   - $z + w = 2 + 7i$
   - $zw = -12 + 8i$
   - $z^2 = -5 + 12i$
   - $\frac{1}{z} = \frac{2}{13} - \frac{3}{13}i$
   - $\frac{z}{w} = \frac{3}{4} - \frac{1}{2}i$
   - $\frac{w}{z} = \frac{12}{13} + \frac{8}{13}i$
   - $\overline{z} = 2 - 3i$
   - $z\overline{z} = 13$
   - $(\overline{z})^2 = -5 - 12i$

2. For $z = 1 + i$ and $w = -i$

   - $z + w = 1$
   - $zw = 1 - i$
   - $z^2 = 2i$
   - $\frac{1}{z} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}i$
   - $\frac{z}{w} = -1 + i$
   - $\frac{w}{z} = -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}i$
   - $\overline{z} = 1 - i$
   - $z\overline{z} = 2$
   - $(\overline{z})^2 = -2i$

3. For $z = i$ and $w = -1 + 2i$

   - $z + w = -1 + 3i$
   - $zw = -2 - i$
   - $z^2 = -1$
   - $\frac{1}{z} = -i$
   - $\frac{z}{w} = \frac{2}{5} - \frac{1}{5}i$
   - $\frac{w}{z} = 2 + i$
   - $\overline{z} = -i$
   - $z\overline{z} = 1$
   - $(\overline{z})^2 = -1$

4. For $z = 4i$ and $w = 2 - 2i$

   - $z + w = 2 + 2i$
   - $zw = 8 + 8i$
   - $z^2 = -16$
   - $\frac{1}{z} = -\frac{1}{4}i$
   - $\frac{z}{w} = -1 + i$
   - $\frac{w}{z} = -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}i$
   - $\overline{z} = -4i$
   - $z\overline{z} = 16$
   - $(\overline{z})^2 = -16$

5. For $z = 3 - 5i$ and $w = 2 + 7i$

- $z + w = 5 + 2i$
- $zw = 41 + 11i$
- $z^2 = -16 - 30i$
- $\frac{1}{z} = \frac{3}{34} + \frac{5}{34}\,i$
- $\frac{z}{w} = -\frac{29}{53} - \frac{31}{53}\,i$
- $\frac{w}{z} = -\frac{29}{34} + \frac{31}{34}\,i$
- $\overline{z} = 3 + 5i$
- $z\overline{z} = 34$
- $(\overline{z})^2 = -16 + 30i$

6. For $z = -5 + i$ and $w = 4 + 2i$

- $z + w = -1 + 3i$
- $zw = -22 - 6i$
- $z^2 = 24 - 10i$
- $\frac{1}{z} = -\frac{5}{26} - \frac{1}{26}\,i$
- $\frac{z}{w} = -\frac{9}{10} + \frac{7}{10}\,i$
- $\frac{w}{z} = -\frac{9}{13} - \frac{7}{13}\,i$
- $\overline{z} = -5 - i$
- $z\overline{z} = 26$
- $(\overline{z})^2 = 24 + 10i$

7. For $z = \sqrt{2} - i\sqrt{2}$ and $w = \sqrt{2} + i\sqrt{2}$

- $z + w = 2\sqrt{2}$
- $zw = 4$
- $z^2 = -4i$
- $\frac{1}{z} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\,i$
- $\frac{z}{w} = -i$
- $\frac{w}{z} = i$
- $\overline{z} = \sqrt{2} + i\sqrt{2}$
- $z\overline{z} = 4$
- $(\overline{z})^2 = 4i$

8. For $z = 1 - i\sqrt{3}$ and $w = -1 - i\sqrt{3}$

- $z + w = -2i\sqrt{3}$
- $zw = -4$
- $z^2 = -2 - 2i\sqrt{3}$
- $\frac{1}{z} = \frac{1}{4} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\,i$
- $\frac{z}{w} = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\,i$
- $\frac{w}{z} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\,i$
- $\overline{z} = 1 + i\sqrt{3}$
- $z\overline{z} = 4$
- $(\overline{z})^2 = -2 + 2i\sqrt{3}$

9. For $z = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\,i$ and $w = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\,i$

- $z + w = i\sqrt{3}$
- $zw = -1$
- $z^2 = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\, i$
- $\frac{1}{z} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\, i$
- $\frac{z}{w} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\, i$
- $\frac{w}{z} = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\, i$
- $\overline{z} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\, i$
- $z\overline{z} = 1$
- $(\overline{z})^2 = -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\, i$

10. For $z = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\, i$ and $w = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\, i$

- $z + w = -\sqrt{2}$
- $zw = 1$
- $z^2 = -i$
- $\frac{1}{z} = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\, i$
- $\frac{z}{w} = -i$
- $\frac{w}{z} = i$
- $\overline{z} = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\, i$
- $z\overline{z} = 1$
- $(\overline{z})^2 = i$

11. $7i$
12. $3i$
13. -10
14. 10
15. -12
16. 12
17. 3
18. $-3i$
19. $i^5 = i^4 \cdot i = 1 \cdot i = i$
20. $i^6 = i^4 \cdot i^2 = 1 \cdot (-1) = -1$
21. $i^7 = i^4 \cdot i^3 = 1 \cdot (-i) = -i$
22. $i^8 = i^4 \cdot i^4 = \left(i^4\right)^2 = (1)^2 = 1$
23. $i^{15} = \left(i^4\right)^3 \cdot i^3 = 1 \cdot (-i) = -i$
24. $i^{26} = \left(i^4\right)^6 \cdot i^2 = 1 \cdot (-1) = -1$
25. $i^{117} = \left(i^4\right)^{29} \cdot i = 1 \cdot i = i$
26. $i^{304} = \left(i^4\right)^{76} = 1^{76} = 1$
27. $x = \dfrac{2 \pm i\sqrt{14}}{3}$
28. $t = 5, \pm\dfrac{i\sqrt{3}}{3}$
29. $y = \pm 2, \pm i$
30. $w = \dfrac{1 \pm i\sqrt{7}}{2}$
31. $y = \pm\dfrac{3i\sqrt{2}}{2}$
32. $x = 0, \dfrac{1 \pm i\sqrt{2}}{3}$
33. $x = \dfrac{\sqrt{5} \pm i\sqrt{3}}{2}$
34. $y = \pm i, \pm\dfrac{i\sqrt{2}}{2}$
35. $z = \pm 2, \pm 2i$
36. $x^2 - 6x + 32$

A.12 Rational Expressions and Equations

We now turn our attention to rational expressions - that is, algebraic fractions - and equations which contain them. The reader is encouraged to keep in mind the properties of fractions listed on page **??** because we will need them along the way. Before we launch into reviewing the basic arithmetic operations of rational expressions, we take a moment to review how to simplify them properly. As with numeric fractions, we 'cancel common *factors*,' not common *terms*. That is, in order to simplify rational expressions, we first *factor* the numerator and denominator. For example:

$$\frac{x^4 + 5x^3}{x^3 - 25x} \neq \frac{x^4 + 5\cancel{x^3}}{\cancel{x^3} - 25x}$$

but, rather

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{x^4 + 5x^3}{x^3 - 25x} &= \frac{x^3(x+5)}{x(x^2 - 25)} && \text{(Factor G.C.F.)} \\
&= \frac{x^3(x+5)}{x(x-5)(x+5)} && \text{(Difference of Squares)} \\
&= \frac{\overset{x^2}{\cancel{x^3}}\cancel{(x+5)}}{\cancel{x}(x-5)\cancel{(x+5)}} && \text{(Cancel common factors)} \\
&= \frac{x^2}{x-5}
\end{aligned}$$

This equivalence holds provided the factors being canceled aren't 0. Since a factor of x and a factor of $x + 5$ were canceled, $x \neq 0$ and $x + 5 \neq 0$, so $x \neq -5$. We usually stipulate this as:

$$\frac{x^4 + 5x^3}{x^3 - 25x} = \frac{x^2}{x-5}, \qquad \text{provided } x \neq 0,\ x \neq -5$$

While we're talking about common mistakes, please notice that

$$\frac{5}{x^2+9} \neq \frac{5}{x^2} + \frac{5}{9}$$

Just like their numeric counterparts, you don't add algebraic fractions by *adding denominators* of fractions with *common numerators* - it's the other way around:[1]

$$\frac{x^2+9}{5} = \frac{x^2}{5} + \frac{9}{5}$$

It's time to review the basic arithmetic operations with rational expressions.

Example A.12.1. Perform the indicated operations and simplify.

1. $\dfrac{2x^2-5x-3}{x^4-4} \div \dfrac{x^2-2x-3}{x^5+2x^3}$
2. $\dfrac{5}{w^2-9} - \dfrac{w+2}{w^2-9}$
3. $\dfrac{3}{y^2-8y+16} + \dfrac{y+1}{16y-y^3}$
4. $\dfrac{\dfrac{2}{4-(x+h)} - \dfrac{2}{4-x}}{h}$
5. $2t^{-3} - (3t)^{-2}$
6. $10x(x-3)^{-1} + 5x^2(-1)(x-3)^{-2}$

Solution.

1. As with numeric fractions, we divide rational expressions by 'inverting and multiplying'. Before we get too carried away however, we factor to see what, if any, factors cancel.

[1] One of the most common errors students make on college Mathematics placement tests is that they forget how to add algebraic fractions correctly. This places many students into remedial classes even though they are probably ready for college-level Math. We urge you to really study this section with great care so that you don't fall into that trap.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{2x^2-5x-3}{x^4-4} \div \frac{x^2-2x-3}{x^5+2x^3} &= \frac{2x^2-5x-3}{x^4-4} \cdot \frac{x^5+2x^3}{x^2-2x-3} \\
&\qquad\qquad \text{(Invert and multiply)} \\
&= \frac{(2x^2-5x-3)(x^5+2x^3)}{(x^4-4)(x^2-2x-3)} \\
&\qquad\qquad \text{(Multiply fractions)} \\
&= \frac{(2x+1)(x-3)x^3(x^2+2)}{(x^2-2)(x^2+2)(x-3)(x+1)} \\
&\qquad\qquad \text{(Factor)} \\
&= \frac{(2x+1)\cancel{(x-3)}x^3\cancel{(x^2+2)}}{(x^2-2)\cancel{(x^2+2)}\cancel{(x-3)}(x+1)} \\
&\qquad\qquad \text{(Cancel common factors)} \\
&= \frac{x^3(2x+1)}{(x+1)(x^2-2)} \quad \text{(Provided } x \neq 3\text{)}
\end{aligned}
$$

The '$x \neq 3$' is mentioned since a factor of $(x-3)$ was canceled as we reduced the expression. We also canceled a factor of (x^2+2). Why is there no stipulation as a result of canceling this factor? Because $x^2+2 \neq 0$ for all real x. (See Section A.11 for details.) At this point, we *could* go ahead and multiply out the numerator and denominator to get

$$\frac{x^3(2x+1)}{(x+1)(x^2-2)} = \frac{2x^4+x^3}{x^3+x^2-2x-2}$$

but for most of the applications where this kind of algebra is needed (solving equations, for instance), it is best to leave things factored. Your instructor will let you know whether to leave your answer in factored form or not.[2]

[2]Speaking of factoring, do you remember why x^2-2 can't be factored over the integers?

2. As with numeric fractions we need common denominators in order to subtract. This is already the case here so we proceed by subtracting the numerators.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{5}{w^2-9} - \frac{w+2}{w^2-9} &= \frac{5-(w+2)}{w^2-9} && \text{(Subtract fractions)}\\
&= \frac{5-w-2}{w^2-9} && \text{(Distribute)}\\
&= \frac{3-w}{w^2-9} && \text{(Combine like terms)}
\end{aligned}$$

At this point, we need to see if we can reduce this expression so we proceed to factor. It first appears as if we have no common factors among the numerator and denominator until we recall the property of 'factoring negatives' from Page 32: $3-w = -(w-3)$. This yields:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{3-w}{w^2-9} &= \frac{-(w-3)}{(w-3)(w+3)} && \text{(Factor)}\\
&= \frac{-\cancel{(w-3)}}{\cancel{(w-3)}(w+3)} && \text{(Cancel common factors)}\\
&= \frac{-1}{w+3} && \text{(Provided } w \neq 3\text{)}
\end{aligned}$$

The stipulation $w \neq 3$ comes from the cancellation of the $(w-3)$ factor.

3. In this next example, we are asked to add two rational expressions with *different* denominators. As with numeric fractions, we must first find a *common denominator*. To do so, we start by factoring each of the denominators.

$$\frac{3}{y^2-8y+16}+\frac{y+1}{16y-y^3} = \frac{3}{(y-4)^2}+\frac{y+1}{y(16-y^2)} \qquad \text{(Factor)}$$
$$= \frac{3}{(y-4)^2}+\frac{y+1}{y(4-y)(4+y)} \qquad \text{(Factor some more)}$$

To find the common denominator, we examine the factors in the first denominator and note that we need a factor of $(y-4)^2$. We now look at the second denominator to see what other factors we need. We need a factor of y and $(4+y) = (y+4)$. What about $(4-y)$? As mentioned in the last example, we can factor this as: $(4-y) = -(y-4)$. Using properties of negatives, we 'migrate' this negative out to the front of the fraction, turning the addition into subtraction. We find the (least) common denominator to be $(y-4)^2y(y+4)$. We can now proceed to multiply the numerator and denominator of each fraction by whatever factors are missing from their respective denominators to produce equivalent expressions with common denominators.

$$\frac{3}{(y-4)^2}+\frac{y+1}{y(4-y)(4+y)} = \frac{3}{(y-4)^2}+\frac{y+1}{y(-(y-4))(y+4)}$$
$$= \frac{3}{(y-4)^2}-\frac{y+1}{y(y-4)(y+4)}$$
$$= \frac{3}{(y-4)^2}\cdot\frac{y(y+4)}{y(y+4)}-\frac{y+1}{y(y-4)(y+4)}\cdot\frac{(y-4)}{(y-4)} \qquad \text{(Equivalent Fractions)}$$
$$= \frac{3y(y+4)}{(y-4)^2y(y+4)}-\frac{(y+1)(y-4)}{y(y-4)^2(y+4)} \qquad \text{(Multiply Fractions)}$$

At this stage, we can subtract numerators and simplify. We'll keep the denominator factored (in case we can reduce down later), but in the numerator, since there are no common factors, we proceed to perform the indicated multiplication and combine like terms.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{3y(y+4)}{(y-4)^2 y(y+4)} - \frac{(y+1)(y-4)}{y(y-4)^2(y+4)} &= \frac{3y(y+4)-(y+1)(y-4)}{(y-4)^2 y(y+4)} \\
&\qquad \text{(Subtract numerators)} \\
&= \frac{3y^2+12y-(y^2-3y-4)}{(y-4)^2 y(y+4)} \\
&\qquad \text{(Distribute)} \\
&= \frac{3y^2+12y-y^2+3y+4}{(y-4)^2 y(y+4)} \\
&\qquad \text{(Distribute)} \\
&= \frac{2y^2+15y+4}{y(y+4)(y-4)^2} \\
&\qquad \text{(Gather like terms)}
\end{aligned}$$

We would like to factor the numerator and cancel factors it has in common with the denominator. After a few attempts, it appears as if the numerator doesn't factor, at least over the integers. As a check, we compute the discriminant of $2y^2 + 15y + 4$ and get $15^2 - 4(2)(4) = 193$. This isn't a perfect square so we know that the quadratic equation $2y^2 + 15y + 4 = 0$ has irrational solutions. This means $2y^2 + 15y + 4$ can't factor over the integers[3] so we are done.

4. In this example, we have a compound fraction, and we proceed to simplify it as we did its numeric counterparts in Example A.2.1. Specifically, we start by multiplying the numerator and denominator of the 'big' fraction by the least common denominator of the 'little' fractions inside of it - in this case we need to use $(4-(x+h))(4-x)$ - to remove the compound nature of the 'big' fraction. Once we have

[3] See the remarks following Theorem A.10.2.

a more normal looking fraction, we can proceed as we have in the previous examples.

$$\frac{\dfrac{2}{4-(x+h)}-\dfrac{2}{4-x}}{h}=\frac{\left(\dfrac{2}{4-(x+h)}-\dfrac{2}{4-x}\right)}{h}\cdot\frac{(4-(x+h))(4-x)}{(4-(x+h))(4-x)}$$

(Equivalent fractions)

$$=\frac{\left(\dfrac{2}{4-(x+h)}-\dfrac{2}{4-x}\right)\cdot(4-(x+h))(4-x)}{h(4-(x+h))(4-x)}$$

(Multiply)

$$=\frac{\dfrac{2(4-(x+h))(4-x)}{4-(x+h)}-\dfrac{2(4-(x+h))(4-x)}{4-x}}{h(4-(x+h))(4-x)}$$

(Distribute)

$$=\frac{\dfrac{2\cancel{(4-(x+h))}(4-x)}{\cancel{(4-(x+h))}}-\dfrac{2(4-(x+h))\cancel{(4-x)}}{\cancel{(4-x)}}}{h(4-(x+h))(4-x)}$$

(Reduce)

$$=\frac{2(4-x)-2(4-(x+h))}{h(4-(x+h))(4-x)}$$

Now we can clean up and factor the numerator to see if anything cancels. (This why we kept the denominator factored.)

$$\frac{2(4-x)-2(4-(x+h))}{h(4-(x+h))(4-x)}=\frac{2[(4-x)-(4-(x+h))]}{h(4-(x+h))(4-x)}$$

(Factor out G.C.F.)

$$=\frac{2[4-x-4+(x+h)]}{h(4-(x+h))(4-x)}$$

(Distribute)

$$= \frac{2[4 - 4 - x + x + h]}{h(4 - (x + h))(4 - x)} \qquad \text{(Rearrange terms)}$$

$$= \frac{2h}{h(4 - (x + h))(4 - x)} \qquad \text{(Gather like terms)}$$

$$= \frac{2\cancel{h}}{\cancel{h}(4 - (x + h))(4 - x)} \qquad \text{(Reduce)}$$

$$= \frac{2}{(4 - (x + h))(4 - x)} \qquad \text{(Provided } h \neq 0\text{)}$$

Your instructor will let you know if you are to expand the denominator or not.[4]

5. At first glance, it doesn't seem as if there is anything that can be done with $2t^{-3} - (3t)^{-2}$ because the exponents on the variables are different. However, since the exponents are negative, these are actually rational expressions. In the first term, the -3 exponent applies to the t *only* but in the second term, the exponent -2 applies to *both* the 3 and the t, as indicated by the parentheses. One way to proceed is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 2t^{-3} - (3t)^{-2} &= \frac{2}{t^3} - \frac{1}{(3t)^2} \\ &= \frac{2}{t^3} - \frac{1}{9t^2} \end{aligned}$$

We see that we are being asked to subtract two rational expressions with different denominators, so we need to find a common denominator. The first fraction contributes a t^3 to the denominator, while

[4]We'll keep it factored because in Calculus it needs to be factored.

the second contributes a factor of 9. Thus our common denominator is $9t^3$, so we are missing a factor of '9' in the first denominator and a factor of 't' in the second.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{2}{t^3} - \frac{1}{9t^2} &= \frac{2}{t^3} \cdot \frac{9}{9} - \frac{1}{9t^2} \cdot \frac{t}{t} && \text{(Equivalent Fractions)} \\
&= \frac{18}{9t^3} - \frac{t}{9t^3} && \text{(Multiply)} \\
&= \frac{18 - t}{9t^3} && \text{(Subtract)}
\end{aligned}$$

We find no common factors among the numerator and denominator so we are done.

A second way to approach this problem is by factoring. We can extend the concept of the 'Polynomial G.C.F.' to these types of expressions and we can follow the same guidelines as set forth on page **??** to factor out the G.C.F. of these two terms. The key ideas to remember are that we take out each factor with the *smallest* exponent and that factoring is the same as dividing. We first note that $2t^{-3} - (3t)^{-2} = 2t^{-3} - 3^{-2}t^{-2}$ and we see that the smallest power on t is -3. Thus we want to factor out t^{-3} from both terms. It's clear that this will leave 2 in the first term, but what about the second term? Since factoring is the same as dividing, we would be dividing the second term by t^{-3} which thanks to the properties of exponents is the same as *multiplying* by $\frac{1}{t^{-3}} = t^3$. The same holds for 3^{-2}. Even though there are no factors of 3 in the first term, we can factor out 3^{-2} by multiplying it by $\frac{1}{3^{-2}} = 3^2 = 9$. We put these ideas together below.

$$\begin{aligned}
2t^{-3} - (3t)^{-2} &= 2t^{-3} - 3^{-2}t^{-2} && \text{(Properties of Exponents)} \\
&= 3^{-2}t^{-3}(2(3)^2 - t^1) && \text{(Factor)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{1}{3^2}\frac{1}{t^3}(18 - t) \qquad \text{(Rewrite)}$$

$$= \frac{18 - t}{9t^3} \qquad \text{(Multiply)}$$

While both ways are valid, one may be more of a natural fit than the other depending on the circumstances and temperament of the student.

6. As with the previous example, we show two different yet equivalent ways to approach simplifying $10x(x-3)^{-1}+5x^2(-1)(x-3)^{-2}$. First up is what we'll call the 'common denominator approach' where we rewrite the negative exponents as fractions and proceed from there.

   - *Common Denominator Approach*:

$$\begin{aligned}
10x(x-3)^{-1} + 5x^2(-1)(x-3)^{-2} &= \frac{10x}{x-3} + \frac{5x^2(-1)}{(x-3)^2} \\
&= \frac{10x}{x-3} \cdot \frac{x-3}{x-3} - \frac{5x^2}{(x-3)^2} \\
&\qquad \text{(Equivalent Fractions)} \\
&= \frac{10x(x-3)}{(x-3)^2} - \frac{5x^2}{(x-3)^2} \\
&\qquad \text{(Multiply)} \\
&= \frac{10x(x-3) - 5x^2}{(x-3)^2} \\
&\qquad \text{(Subtract)} \\
&= \frac{5x(2(x-3) - x)}{(x-3)^2} \\
&\qquad \text{(Factor out G.C.F.)} \\
&= \frac{5x(2x - 6 - x)}{(x-3)^2} \\
&\qquad \text{(Distribute)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{5x(x-6)}{(x-3)^2} \quad \text{(Combine like terms)}$$

Both the numerator and the denominator are completely factored with no common factors so we are done.

- *'Factoring Approach'*: In this case, the G.C.F. is $5x(x-3)^{-2}$. Factoring this out of both terms gives:

$$\begin{aligned}
10x(x-3)^{-1} + 5x^2(-1)(x-3)^{-2} &= 5x(x-3)^{-2}(2(x-3)^1 - x) && \text{(Factor)} \\
&= \frac{5x}{(x-3)^2}(2x-6-x) && \text{(Rewrite, distribute)} \\
&= \frac{5x(x-6)}{(x-3)^2} && \text{(Multiply)}
\end{aligned}$$

As expected, we got the same reduced fraction as before. □

Next, we review the solving of equations which involve rational expressions. As with equations involving numeric fractions, our first step in solving equations with algebraic fractions is to clear denominators. In doing so, we run the risk of introducing what are known as **extraneous** solutions - 'answers' which don't satisfy the original equation. As we illustrate the techniques used to solve these basic equations, see if you can find the step which creates the problem for us.

Example A.12.2. Solve the following equations.

1. $1 + \dfrac{1}{x} = x$
2. $\dfrac{t^3 - 2t + 1}{t - 1} = \dfrac{1}{2}t - 1$

3. $\dfrac{3}{1 - w\sqrt{2}} - \dfrac{1}{2w+5} = 0$

4. $3(x^2+4)^{-1} + 3x(-1)(x^2+4)^{-2}(2x) = 0$

5. Solve $x = \dfrac{2y+1}{y-3}$ for y.

6. Solve $\dfrac{1}{f} = \dfrac{1}{S_1} + \dfrac{1}{S_2}$ for S_1.

Solution.

1. Our first step is to clear the fractions by multiplying both sides of the equation by x. In doing so, we are implicitly assuming $x \neq 0$; otherwise, we would have no guarantee that the resulting equation is equivalent to our original equation.[5]

$$
\begin{aligned}
1 + \frac{1}{x} &= x \\
\left(1 + \frac{1}{x}\right) x &= (x)x && \text{(Provided } x \neq 0\text{)} \\
1(x) + \frac{1}{x}(x) &= x^2 && \text{(Distribute)} \\
x + \frac{x}{x} &= x^2 && \text{(Multiply)} \\
x + 1 &= x^2 \\
0 &= x^2 - x - 1 && \text{(Subtract } x\text{, subtract 1)} \\
x &= \frac{-(-1) \pm \sqrt{(-1)^2 - 4(1)(-1)}}{2(1)} && \text{(Quadratic Formula)} \\
x &= \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2} && \text{(Simplify)}
\end{aligned}
$$

We obtain two answers, $x = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2}$. Neither of these are 0 thus neither contradicts our assumption that $x \neq 0$. The reader is invited

[5]See page 85.

to check both of these solutions.[6]

2. To solve the equation, we clear denominators. Here, we need to assume $t-1 \neq 0$, or $t \neq 1$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{t^3-2t+1}{t-1} &= \frac{1}{2}t-1 \\
\left(\frac{t^3-2t+1}{t-1}\right)\cdot 2(t-1) &= \left(\frac{1}{2}t-1\right)\cdot 2(t-1) \quad \text{(Provided } t \neq 1\text{)} \\
\frac{(t^3-2t+1)(2\cancel{(t-1)})}{\cancel{(t-1)}} &= \frac{1}{\cancel{2}}t(\cancel{2}(t-1)) - 1(2(t-1)) \\
&\qquad \text{(Multiply, distribute)} \\
2(t^3-2t+1) &= t^2-t-2t+2 \quad \text{(Distribute)} \\
2t^3-4t+2 &= t^2-3t+2 \\
&\qquad \text{(Distribute, combine like terms)} \\
2t^3-t^2-t &= 0 \quad \text{(Subtract } t^2\text{, add } 3t\text{, subtract 2)} \\
t(2t^2-t-1) &= 0 \quad \text{(Factor)} \\
t = 0 \text{ or } 2t^2-t-1 &= 0 \\
&\qquad \text{(Zero Product Property)} \\
t = 0 \text{ or } (2t+1)(t-1) &= 0 \quad \text{(Factor)} \\
t = 0 \text{ or } 2t+1 = 0 \quad &\text{or} \quad t-1 = 0 \\
t &= 0,\ -\frac{1}{2} \text{ or } 1
\end{aligned}$$

We assumed that $t \neq 1$ in order to clear denominators. Sure enough, the candidate $t = 1$ doesn't check in the original equation since it causes division by 0. In this case, we call $t = 1$ an *extraneous* solution. Note that $t = 1$ *does* work in every equation *after* we clear

[6]The check relies on being able to 'rationalize' the denominator - a skill we haven't reviewed yet. (Come back after you've read Section A.13.1 if you want to!) Additionally, the positive solution to this equation is the famous Golden Ratio[7].

denominators. In general, multiplying by variable expressions can produce these 'extra' solutions, which is why checking our answers is always encouraged.[8] The other two candidates, $t = 0$ and $t = -\frac{1}{2}$, are solutions.

3. As before, we begin by clearing denominators. Here, we assume $1 - w\sqrt{2} \neq 0$ (so $w \neq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$) and $2w + 5 \neq 0$ (so $w \neq -\frac{5}{2}$).

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{3}{1 - w\sqrt{2}} - \frac{1}{2w+5} &= 0 \\
\left(\frac{3}{1 - w\sqrt{2}} - \frac{1}{2w+5}\right)(1 - w\sqrt{2})(2w+5) &= 0(1 - w\sqrt{2})(2w+5) \\
& w \neq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, -\frac{5}{2} \\
\frac{3\cancel{(1 - w\sqrt{2})}(2w+5)}{\cancel{(1 - w\sqrt{2})}} - \frac{1(1 - w\sqrt{2})\cancel{(2w+5)}}{\cancel{(2w+5)}} &= 0 \qquad \text{(Distribute)} \\
3(2w+5) - (1 - w\sqrt{2}) &= 0
\end{aligned}
$$

The result is a *linear* equation in w so we gather the terms with w on one side of the equation and put everything else on the other. We factor out w and divide by its coefficient.

$$
\begin{aligned}
3(2w+5) - (1 - w\sqrt{2}) &= 0 \\
6w + 15 - 1 + w\sqrt{2} &= 0 && \text{(Distribute)} \\
6w + w\sqrt{2} &= -14 && \text{(Subtract 14)} \\
(6 + \sqrt{2})w &= -14 && \text{(Factor)} \\
w &= -\frac{14}{6 + \sqrt{2}} && \text{(Divide by } 6 + \sqrt{2}\text{)}
\end{aligned}
$$

[8] Contrast this with what happened in Example A.9.3 when we divided by a variable and 'lost' a solution.

This solution is different than our excluded values, $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ and $-\frac{5}{2}$, so we keep $w = -\frac{14}{6+\sqrt{2}}$ as our final answer. The reader is invited to check this in the original equation.

4. To solve our next equation, we have two approaches to choose from: we could rewrite the quantities with negative exponents as fractions and clear denominators, or we can factor. We showcase each technique below.

   - *Clearing Denominators Approach*: We rewrite the negative exponents as fractions and clear denominators. In this case, we multiply both sides of the equation by $(x^2+4)^2$, which is never 0. (Think about that for a moment.) As a result, we need not exclude any x values from our solution set.

$$
\begin{aligned}
3(x^2+4)^{-1} + 3x(-1)(x^2+4)^{-2}(2x) &= 0 \\
\frac{3}{x^2+4} + \frac{3x(-1)(2x)}{(x^2+4)^2} &= 0 && \text{(Rewrite)} \\
\left(\frac{3}{x^2+4} - \frac{6x^2}{(x^2+4)^2}\right)(x^2+4)^2 &= 0(x^2+4)^2 && \text{(Multiply)} \\
\frac{3\cancelto{(x^2+4)}{(x^2+4)^2}}{\cancel{(x^2+4)}} - \frac{6x^2\cancel{(x^2+4)^2}}{\cancel{(x^2+4)^2}} &= 0 && \text{(Distribute)} \\
3(x^2+4) - 6x^2 &= 0 \\
3x^2 + 12 - 6x^2 &= 0 && \text{(Distribute)} \\
-3x^2 &= -12 \\
&\text{(Combine like terms, subtract 12)} \\
x^2 &= 4 && \text{(Divide by } -3\text{)} \\
x &= \pm\sqrt{4} = \pm 2 \\
&\text{(Extract square roots)}
\end{aligned}
$$

We leave it to the reader to show that both $x = -2$ and $x = 2$ satisfy the original equation.

- *Factoring Approach*: Since the equation is already set equal to 0, we're ready to factor. Following the guidelines presented in Example A.12.1, we factor out $3(x^2+4)^{-2}$ from both terms and look to see if more factoring can be done:

$$
\begin{aligned}
3(x^2+4)^{-1} + 3x(-1)(x^2+4)^{-2}(2x) &= 0 \\
3(x^2+4)^{-2}((x^2+4)^1 + x(-1)(2x)) &= 0 \qquad \text{(Factor)} \\
3(x^2+4)^{-2}(x^2+4-2x^2) &= 0 \\
3(x^2+4)^{-2}(4-x^2) &= 0 \quad \text{(Gather like terms)} \\
3(x^2+4)^{-2} = 0 \text{ or } 4 - x^2 &= 0 \\
&\text{(Zero Product Property)} \\
\frac{3}{x^2+4} = 0 \text{ or } 4 &= x^2
\end{aligned}
$$

The first equation yields no solutions (Think about this for a moment.) while the second gives us $x = \pm\sqrt{4} = \pm 2$ as before.

5. We are asked to solve this equation for y so we begin by clearing fractions with the stipulation that $y - 3 \neq 0$ or $y \neq 3$. We are left with a linear equation in the variable y. To solve this, we gather the terms containing y on one side of the equation and everything else on the other. Next, we factor out the y and divide by its coefficient, which in this case turns out to be $x - 2$. In order to divide by $x - 2$, we stipulate $x - 2 \neq 0$ or, said differently, $x \neq 2$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
x &= \frac{2y+1}{y-3} \\
x(y-3) &= \left(\frac{2y+1}{y-3}\right)(y-3) \qquad \text{(Provided } y \neq 3)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
xy - 3x &= \frac{(2y+1)\cancel{(y-3)}}{\cancel{(y-3)}} && \text{(Distribute, multiply)} \\
xy - 3x &= 2y + 1 \\
xy - 2y &= 3x + 1 && \text{(Add } 3x\text{, subtract } 2y\text{)} \\
y(x-2) &= 3x + 1 && \text{(Factor)} \\
y &= \frac{3x+1}{x-2} && \text{(Divide provided } x \neq 2\text{)}
\end{aligned}
$$

We highly encourage the reader to check the answer algebraically to see where the restrictions on x and y come into play.[9]

6. Our last example comes from physics and the world of photography.[10] We take a moment here to note that while superscripts in Mathematics indicate exponents (powers), subscripts are used primarily to distinguish one or more variables. In this case, S_1 and S_2 are two *different* variables (much like x and y) and we treat them as such. Our first step is to clear denominators by multiplying both sides by fS_1S_2 - provided each is nonzero. We end up with an equation which is linear in S_1 so we proceed as in the previous example.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{f} &= \frac{1}{S_1} + \frac{1}{S_2} \\
\left(\frac{1}{f}\right)(fS_1S_2) &= \left(\frac{1}{S_1} + \frac{1}{S_2}\right)(fS_1S_2) \\
& \qquad \text{(Provided } f \neq 0,\ S_1 \neq 0,\ S_2 \neq 0\text{)} \\
\frac{fS_1S_2}{f} &= \frac{fS_1S_2}{S_1} + \frac{fS_1S_2}{S_2} && \text{(Multiply, distribute)} \\
\frac{\cancel{f}S_1S_2}{\cancel{f}} &= \frac{f\cancel{S_1}S_2}{\cancel{S_1}} + \frac{fS_1\cancel{S_2}}{\cancel{S_2}} && \text{(Cancel)} \\
S_1S_2 &= fS_2 + fS_1
\end{aligned}
$$

[9] It involves simplifying a compound fraction!

[10] See this article on focal length[11].

$$\begin{aligned} S_1 S_2 - fS_1 &= fS_2 && \text{(Subtract } fS_1\text{)} \\ S_1(S_2 - f) &= fS_2 && \text{(Factor)} \\ S_1 &= \frac{fS_2}{S_2 - f} && \text{(Divide provided } S_2 \neq f\text{)} \end{aligned}$$

As always, the reader is highly encouraged to check the answer.[12]

□

[12]...and see what the restriction $S_2 \neq f$ means in terms of focusing a camera!

A.12.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 18., perform the indicated operations and simplify.

1. $\dfrac{x^2-9}{x^2} \cdot \dfrac{3x}{x^2-x-6}$
2. $\dfrac{t^2-2t}{t^2+1} \div (3t^2-2t-8)$
3. $\dfrac{4y-y^2}{2y+1} \div \dfrac{y^2-16}{2y^2-5y-3}$
4. $\dfrac{x}{3x-1} - \dfrac{1-x}{3x-1}$
5. $\dfrac{2}{w-1} - \dfrac{w^2+1}{w-1}$
6. $\dfrac{2-y}{3y} - \dfrac{1-y}{3y} + \dfrac{y^2-1}{3y}$
7. $b + \dfrac{1}{b-3} - 2$
8. $\dfrac{2x}{x-4} - \dfrac{1}{2x+1}$
9. $\dfrac{m^2}{m^2-4} + \dfrac{1}{2-m}$
10. $\dfrac{\frac{2}{x}-2}{x-1}$
11. $\dfrac{\frac{3}{2-h} - \frac{3}{2}}{h}$
12. $\dfrac{\frac{1}{x+h} - \frac{1}{x}}{h}$
13. $3w^{-1} - (3w)^{-1}$
14. $-2y^{-1} + 2(3-y)^{-2}$
15. $3(x-2)^{-1} - 3x(x-2)^{-2}$
16. $\dfrac{t^{-1}+t^{-2}}{t^{-3}}$
17. $\dfrac{2(3+h)^{-2} - 2(3)^{-2}}{h}$
18. $\dfrac{(7-x-h)^{-1} - (7-x)^{-1}}{h}$

In Exercises 19. - 27., find all real solutions. Be sure to check for extraneous solutions.

19. $\dfrac{x}{5x+4} = 3$
20. $\dfrac{3y-1}{y^2+1} = 1$
21. $\dfrac{1}{w+3} + \dfrac{1}{w-3} = \dfrac{w^2-3}{w^2-9}$
22. $\dfrac{2x+17}{x+1} = x+5$
23. $\dfrac{t^2-2t+1}{t^3+t^2-2t} = 1$
24. $\dfrac{-y^3+4y}{y^2-9} = 4y$
25. $w + \sqrt{3} = \dfrac{3w-w^3}{w-\sqrt{3}}$
26. $\dfrac{2}{x\sqrt{2}-1} - 1 = \dfrac{3}{x\sqrt{2}+1}$
27. $\dfrac{x^2}{(1+x\sqrt{3})^2} = 3$

In Exercises 28. - 30., use Theorem A.7.2 along with the techniques in this section to find all real solutions.

28. $\left|\dfrac{3n}{n-1}\right| = 3$

29. $\left|\dfrac{2x}{x^2-1}\right| = 2$

30. $\left|\dfrac{2t}{4-t^2}\right| = \left|\dfrac{2}{t-2}\right|$

In Exercises 31. - 33., find all real solutions and use a calculator to approximate your answers, rounded to two decimal places.

31. $2.41 = \dfrac{0.08}{4\pi R^2}$

32. $\dfrac{x^2}{(2.31-x)^2} = 0.04$

33. $1 - \dfrac{6.75 \times 10^{16}}{c^2} = \dfrac{1}{4}$

In Exercises 34. - 39., solve the given equation for the indicated variable.

34. Solve for y: $\dfrac{1-2y}{y+3} = x$

35. Solve for y: $x = 3 - \dfrac{2}{1-y}$

36.[13] Solve for T_2: $\dfrac{V_1}{T_1} = \dfrac{V_2}{T_2}$

37. Solve for t_0: $\dfrac{t_0}{1-t_0 t_1} = 2$

38. Solve for x: $\dfrac{1}{x-v_r} + \dfrac{1}{x+v_r} = 5$

39. Solve for R: $P = \dfrac{25R}{(R+4)^2}$

A.12.2 Answers

1. $\dfrac{3(x+3)}{x(x+2)}$, $x \neq 3$

2. $\dfrac{t}{(3t+4)(t^2+1)}$, $t \neq 2$

3. $-\dfrac{y(y-3)}{y+4}$, $y \neq -\dfrac{1}{2}, 3, 4$

4. $\dfrac{2x-1}{3x-1}$

5. $-w-1$, $w \neq 1$

6. $\dfrac{y}{3}$, $y \neq 0$

7. $\dfrac{b^2-5b+7}{b-3}$

8. $\dfrac{4x^2+x+4}{(x-4)(2x+1)}$

9. $\dfrac{m+1}{m+2}$, $m \neq 2$

10. $-\dfrac{2}{x}$, $x \neq 1$

11. $\dfrac{3}{4-2h}$, $h \neq 0$

12. $-\dfrac{1}{x(x+h)}$, $h \neq 0$

13. $\dfrac{8}{3w}$

14. $-\dfrac{2(y^2-7y+9)}{y(y-3)^2}$

15. $-\dfrac{6}{(x-2)^2}$

16. t^2+t, $t \neq 0$

17. $-\dfrac{2(h+6)}{9(h+3)^2}$, $h \neq 0$

18. $\dfrac{1}{(7-x)(7-x-h)}$, $h \neq 0$

19. $x = -\dfrac{6}{7}$

20. $y = 1, 2$

21. $w = -1$

22. $x = -6, 2$

23. No solution.

24. $y = 0, \pm 2\sqrt{2}$

25. $w = -\sqrt{3}, -1$

26. $x = -\dfrac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}, \sqrt{2}$

27. $x = -\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, -\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{4}$

28. $n = \dfrac{1}{2}$

29. $x = \dfrac{1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2}, \dfrac{-1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2}$

30. $t = -1$

31. $R = \pm\sqrt{\dfrac{0.08}{9.64\pi}} \approx \pm 0.05$

32. $x = -\dfrac{231}{400} \approx -0.58$, $x = \dfrac{77}{200} \approx 0.38$

33. $c = \pm\sqrt{\dfrac{4 \cdot 6.75 \times 10^{16}}{3}} = \pm 3.00 \times 10^{8}$ (You actually didn't *need* a calculator for this!)

34. $y = \dfrac{1 - 3x}{x + 2}$, $y \neq -3$, $x \neq -2$

35. $y = \dfrac{x - 1}{x - 3}$, $y \neq 1$, $x \neq 3$

36. $T_2 = \dfrac{V_2 T_1}{V_1}$, $T_1 \neq 0$, $T_2 \neq 0$, $V_1 \neq 0$

37. $t_0 = \dfrac{2}{2t_1 + 1}$, $t_1 \neq -\dfrac{1}{2}$

38. $x = \dfrac{1 \pm \sqrt{25v_r^2 + 1}}{5}$, $x \neq \pm v_r$.

39. $R = \dfrac{-(8P - 25) \pm \sqrt{(8P - 25)^2 - 64P^2}}{2P} = \dfrac{(25 - 8P) \pm 5\sqrt{25 - 16P}}{2P}$, $P \neq 0$, $R \neq -4$

A.13 Radical Equations

In this section we review simplifying expressions and solving equations involving radicals. In addition to the product, quotient and power rules stated in Theorem A.2.1 in Section A.2, we present the following result which states that n$^{\text{th}}$ roots and n$^{\text{th}}$ powers more or less 'undo' each other.[1]

Theorem A.13.1. Simplifying n$^{\text{th}}$ powers of n$^{\text{th}}$ roots and n$^{\text{th}}$ roots of n$^{\text{th}}$ powers: Suppose n is a natural number, a is a real number and $\sqrt[n]{a}$ is a real number. Then

- $(\sqrt[n]{a})^n = a$
- if n is odd, $\sqrt[n]{a^n} = a$; if n is even, $\sqrt[n]{a^n} = |a|$.

Since $\sqrt[n]{a}$ is *defined* so that $(\sqrt[n]{a})^n = a$, the first claim in the theorem is just a re-wording of Definition A.2.2. The second part of the theorem breaks down along odd/even exponent lines due to how exponents affect negatives. To see this, consider the specific cases of $\sqrt[3]{(-2)^3}$ and $\sqrt[4]{(-2)^4}$.

In the first case, $\sqrt[3]{(-2)^3} = \sqrt[3]{-8} = -2$, so we have an instance of when $\sqrt[n]{a^n} = a$. The reason that the cube root 'undoes' the third power in $\sqrt[3]{(-2)^3} = -2$ is because the negative is preserved when raised to the third (odd) power. In $\sqrt[4]{(-2)^4}$, the negative 'goes away' when raised to the fourth (even) power: $\sqrt[4]{(-2)^4} = \sqrt[4]{16}$. According to Definition A.2.2, the fourth root is defined to give only *non-negative* numbers, so $\sqrt[4]{16} = 2$. Here we have a case where $\sqrt[4]{(-2)^4} = 2 = |-2|$, not -2.

In general, we need the absolute values to simplify $\sqrt[n]{a^n}$ only when n is even because a negative to an even power is always positive. In particular, $\sqrt{x^2} = |x|$, not just 'x' (unless we *know* $x \geq 0$.)[2] We practice these formulas in the following example.

Example A.13.1. Perform the indicated operations and simplify.

---

[1] See Sections **??** and **??** for a more precise understanding of what we mean here.

[2] This discussion should sound familiar - see the discussion following Definition A.2.3 and the discussion following 'Extracting the Square Root' on page **??**.

1. $\sqrt{x^2+1}$
2. $\sqrt{t^2-10t+25}$
3. $\sqrt[3]{48x^{14}}$
4. $\sqrt[4]{\dfrac{\pi r^4}{L^8}}$
5. $2x\sqrt[3]{x^2-4}+2\left(\dfrac{1}{2(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2}\right)(2x)$
6. $\sqrt{(\sqrt{18y}-\sqrt{8y})^2+(\sqrt{20}-\sqrt{80})^2}$

Solution.

1. We told you back on page 50 that roots do not 'distribute' across addition and since x^2+1 cannot be factored over the real numbers, $\sqrt{x^2+1}$ cannot be simplified. It may seem silly to start with this example but it is extremely important that you understand what maneuvers are legal and which ones are not.[3]

2. Again we note that $\sqrt{t^2-10t+25} \neq \sqrt{t^2}-\sqrt{10t}+\sqrt{25}$, since radicals do *not* distribute across addition and subtraction.[4] In this case, however, we can factor the radicand and simplify as

$$\sqrt{t^2-10t+25} = \sqrt{(t-5)^2} = |t-5|$$

   Without knowing more about the value of t, we have no idea if $t-5$ is positive or negative so $|t-5|$ is our final answer.[5]

3. To simplify $\sqrt[3]{48x^{14}}$, we need to look for perfect cubes in the radicand. For the cofficient, we have $48 = 8\cdot 6 = 2^3\cdot 6$. To find the largest perfect cube factor in x^{14}, we divide 14 (the exponent on x) by 3 (since we are looking for a perfect *cube*). We get 4 with a remainder of 2. This means $14 = 4\cdot 3+2$, so $x^{14} = x^{4\cdot 3+2} = x^{4\cdot 3}x^2 = (x^4)^3x^2$. Putting this altogether gives:

[3] You really do need to understand this otherwise horrible evil will plague your future studies in Math. If you say something totally wrong like $\sqrt{x^2+1} = x+1$ then you may never pass Calculus. PLEASE be careful!

[4] Let $t=1$ and see what happens to $\sqrt{t^2-10t+25}$ versus $\sqrt{t^2}-\sqrt{10t}+\sqrt{25}$.

[5] In general, $|t-5| \neq |t|-|5|$ and $|t-5| \neq t+5$ so watch what you're doing!

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt[3]{48x^{14}} &= \sqrt[3]{2^3 \cdot 6 \cdot (x^4)^3 x^2} && \text{(Factor out perfect cubes)}\\ &= \sqrt[3]{2^3}\sqrt[3]{(x^4)^3}\sqrt[3]{6x^2} \\ & && \text{(Rearrange factors, Product Rule of Radicals)}\\ &= 2x^4\sqrt[3]{6x^2}\end{aligned}$$

4. In this example, we are looking for perfect fourth powers in the radicand. In the numerator r^4 is clearly a perfect fourth power. For the denominator, we take the power on the L, namely 12, and divide by 4 to get 3. This means $L^8 = L^{2 \cdot 4} = (L^2)^4$. We get

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt[4]{\frac{\pi r^4}{L^{12}}} &= \frac{\sqrt[4]{\pi r^4}}{\sqrt[4]{L^{12}}} && \text{(Quotient Rule of Radicals)}\\ &= \frac{\sqrt[4]{\pi}\sqrt[4]{r^4}}{\sqrt[4]{(L^2)^4}} && \text{(Product Rule of Radicals)}\\ &= \frac{\sqrt[4]{\pi}|r|}{|L^2|} && \text{(Simplify)}\end{aligned}$$

Without more information about r, we cannot simplify $|r|$ any further. However, we can simplify $|L^2|$. Regardless of the choice of L, $L^2 \geq 0$. Actually, $L^2 > 0$ because L is in the denominator which means $L \neq 0$. Hence, $|L^2| = L^2$. Our answer simplifies to:

$$\frac{\sqrt[4]{\pi}|r|}{|L^2|} = \frac{|r|\sqrt[4]{\pi}}{L^2}$$

5. After a quick cancellation (two of the 2's in the second term) we need to obtain a common denominator. Since we can view the first term

as having a denominator of 1, the common denominator is precisely the denominator of the second term, namely $(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2$. With common denominators, we proceed to add the two fractions. Our last step is to factor the numerator to see if there are any cancellation opportunities with the denominator.

$$2x\sqrt[3]{x^2-4}+2\left(\frac{1}{2(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2}\right)(2x)$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= 2x\sqrt[3]{x^2-4}+\cancel{2}\left(\frac{1}{\cancel{2}(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2}\right)(2x) && \text{(Reduce)}\\
&= 2x\sqrt[3]{x^2-4}+\frac{2x}{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2} && \text{(Mutiply)}\\
&= (2x\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})\cdot\frac{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2}{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2}+\frac{2x}{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2} && \\
& && \text{(Equivalent fractions)}\\
&= \frac{2x(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^3}{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2}+\frac{2x}{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2} && \text{(Multiply)}\\
&= \frac{2x(x^2-4)}{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2}+\frac{2x}{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2} && \text{(Simplify)}\\
&= \frac{2x(x^2-4)+2x}{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2} && \text{(Add)}\\
&= \frac{2x(x^2-4+1)}{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2} && \text{(Factor)}\\
&= \frac{2x(x^2-3)}{(\sqrt[3]{x^2-4})^2}
\end{aligned}
$$

We cannot reduce this any further because x^2-3 is irreducible over the rational numbers.

6. We begin by working inside each set of parentheses, using the product rule for radicals and combining like terms.

$$\sqrt{(\sqrt{18y}-\sqrt{8y})^2+(\sqrt{20}-\sqrt{80})^2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sqrt{(\sqrt{9\cdot 2y}-\sqrt{4\cdot 2y})^2+(\sqrt{4\cdot 5}-\sqrt{16\cdot 5})^2} \\
&= \sqrt{(\sqrt{9}\sqrt{2y}-\sqrt{4}\sqrt{2y})^2+(\sqrt{4}\sqrt{5}-\sqrt{16}\sqrt{5})^2} \\
&= \sqrt{(3\sqrt{2y}-2\sqrt{2y})^2+(2\sqrt{5}-4\sqrt{5})^2} \\
&= \sqrt{(\sqrt{2y})^2+(-2\sqrt{5})^2} \\
&= \sqrt{2y+(-2)^2(\sqrt{5})^2} \\
&= \sqrt{2y+4\cdot 5} \\
&= \sqrt{2y+20}
\end{aligned}$$

To see if this simplifies any further, we factor the radicand: $\sqrt{2y+20}=\sqrt{2(y+10)}$. Finding no perfect square factors, we are done. $\square$

Theorem A.13.1 allows us to generalize the process of 'Extracting Square Roots' to 'Extracting n$^{\text{th}}$ Roots' which in turn allows us to solve equations[6] of the form $X^n = c$.

Essentially, we solve $X^n = c$ by 'taking the n$^{\text{th}}$ root' of both sides: $\sqrt[n]{X^n} = \sqrt[n]{c}$. Simplifying the left side gives us just X if n is odd or $|X|$ if n is even. In the first case, $X = \sqrt[n]{c}$, and in the second, $X = \pm\sqrt[n]{c}$. Putting this together with the other part of Theorem A.13.1, namely $(\sqrt[n]{a})^n = a$, gives us a strategy for solving equations which involve n$^{\text{th}}$ powers and n^{th} roots.

[6] Well, not entirely. The equation $x^7 = 1$ has seven answers: $x = 1$ and six complex number solutions which we'll find using techniques in Section **??**.

Box A.13.1: Extracting n^{th} roots:

- If c is a real number and n is odd then the real number solution to $X^n = c$ is $X = \sqrt[n]{c}$.
- If $c \geq 0$ and n is even then the real number solutions to $X^n = c$ are $X = \pm\sqrt[n]{c}$.
  Note: If $c < 0$ and n is even then $X^n = c$ has no real number solutions.

Box A.13.2: Strategies for Solving Power and Radical Equations

- If the equation involves an n^{th} power and the variable appears in only one term, isolate the term with the n^{th} power and extract n^{th} roots.
- If the equation involves an n^{th} root and the variable appears in that n^{th} root, isolate the n^{th} root and raise both sides of the equation to the n^{th} power.
  Note: When raising both sides of an equation to an *even* power, be sure to check for extraneous solutions.

The note about 'extraneous solutions' can be demonstrated by the basic equation: $\sqrt{x} = -2$. This equation has no solution since, by definition, $\sqrt{x} \geq 0$ for all real numbers x. However, if we square both sides of this equation, we get $(\sqrt{x})^2 = (-2)^2$ or $x = 4$. However, $x = 4$ doesn't check in the original equation, since $\sqrt{4} = 2$, not -2. Once again, the root[7] of all of our problems lies in the fact that a *negative* number to an *even* power results in a *positive* number. In other words, raising both sides of an equation to an even power does *not* produce an equivalent equation, but rather, an equation which may possess *more* solutions than the original. Hence the cautionary remark above about extraneous solutions.

Example A.13.2. Solve the following equations.

[7] Pun intended!

1. $(5x+3)^4 = 16$
2. $1 - \frac{(5-2w)^3}{7} = 9$
3. $t + \sqrt{2t+3} = 6$
4. $\sqrt{2} - 3\sqrt[3]{2y+1} = 0$
5. $\sqrt{4x-1} + 2\sqrt{1-2x} = 1$
6. $\sqrt[4]{n^2+2} + n = 0$

For the remaining problems, assume that all of the variables represent positive real numbers.[8]

7. Solve for r: $V = \frac{4\pi}{3}(R^3 - r^3)$.
8. Solve for M_1: $\frac{r_1}{r_2} = \sqrt{\frac{M_2}{M_1}}$
9. Solve for v: $m = \frac{m_0}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$. Again, assume that no arithmetic rules are violated.

Solution.

1. In our first equation, the quantity containing x is already isolated, so we extract fourth roots. The exponent is even, so when the roots are extracted we need both the positive and negative roots.

$$\begin{aligned}
(5x+3)^4 &= 16 \\
5x+3 &= \pm\sqrt[4]{16} && \text{(Extract fourth roots)} \\
5x+3 &= \pm 2 \\
5x+3 = 2 &\text{ or } 5x+3 = -2 \\
x = -\frac{1}{5} &\text{ or } x = -1
\end{aligned}$$

We leave it to the reader to verify that both of these solutions satisfy the original equation.

[8] That is, you needn't worry that you're multiplying or dividing by 0 or that you're forgetting absolute value symbols.

2. In this example, we first need to isolate the quantity containing the variable w. Here, third (cube) roots are required and since the exponent (index) is odd, we do not need the $\pm$:

$$\begin{aligned}
1 - \frac{(5-2w)^3}{7} &= 9 && \\
-\frac{(5-2w)^3}{7} &= 8 && \text{(Subtract 1)} \\
(5-2w)^3 &= -56 && \text{(Multiply by } -7\text{)} \\
5-2w &= \sqrt[3]{-56} && \text{(Extract cube root)} \\
5-2w &= \sqrt[3]{(-8)(7)} && \\
5-2w &= \sqrt[3]{-8}\sqrt[3]{7} && \text{(Product Rule)} \\
5-2w &= -2\sqrt[3]{7} && \\
-2w &= -5-2\sqrt[3]{7} && \text{(Subtract 5)} \\
w &= \frac{-5-2\sqrt[3]{7}}{-2} && \text{(Divide by } -2\text{)} \\
w &= \frac{5+2\sqrt[3]{7}}{2} && \text{(Properties of Negatives)}
\end{aligned}$$

The reader should check the answer because it provides a hearty review of arithmetic.

3. To solve $t + \sqrt{2t+3} = 6$, we first isolate the square root, then proceed to square both sides of the equation. In doing so, we run the risk of introducing extraneous solutions so checking our answers here is a necessity.

$$\begin{aligned}
t + \sqrt{2t+3} &= 6 && \\
\sqrt{2t+3} &= 6 - t && \text{(Subtract } t\text{)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
(\sqrt{2t+3})^2 &= (6-t)^2 && \text{(Square both sides)}\\
2t+3 &= 36-12t+t^2 && \text{(F.O.I.L. / Perfect Square Trinomial)}\\
0 &= t^2-14t+33 && \text{(Subtract } 2t \text{ and 3)}\\
0 &= (t-3)(t-11) && \text{(Factor)}
\end{aligned}
$$

From the Zero Product Property, we know either $t-3=0$ (which gives $t=3$) or $t-11=0$ (which gives $t=11$). When checking our answers, we find $t=3$ satisfies the original equation, but $t=11$ does not.[9] So our final answer is $t=3$ only.

4. In our next example, we locate the variable (in this case y) beneath a cube root, so we first isolate that root and cube both sides.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sqrt{2}-3\sqrt[3]{2y+1} &= 0 && \\
-3\sqrt[3]{2y+1} &= -\sqrt{2} && \text{(Subtract } \sqrt{2}\text{)}\\
\sqrt[3]{2y+1} &= \frac{-\sqrt{2}}{-3} && \text{(Divide by } -3\text{)}\\
\sqrt[3]{2y+1} &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} && \text{(Properties of Negatives)}\\
(\sqrt[3]{2y+1})^3 &= \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}\right)^3 && \text{(Cube both sides)}\\
2y+1 &= \frac{(\sqrt{2})^3}{3^3} && \\
2y+1 &= \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{27} && \\
2y &= \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{27}-1 && \text{(Subtract 1)}
\end{aligned}
$$

[9]It is worth noting that when $t=11$ is substituted into the original equation, we get $11+\sqrt{25}=6$. If the $+\sqrt{25}$ were $-\sqrt{25}$, the solution would check. Once again, when squaring both sides of an equation, we lose track of $\pm$, which is what lets extraneous solutions in the door.

$$
\begin{aligned}
2y &= \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{27} - \frac{27}{27} && \text{(Common denominators)} \\
2y &= \frac{2\sqrt{2} - 27}{27} && \text{(Subtract fractions)} \\
y &= \frac{2\sqrt{2} - 27}{54} && \text{(Divide by 2 }\left(\text{multiply by } \tfrac{1}{2}\right)\text{)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since we raised both sides to an *odd* power, we don't need to worry about extraneous solutions but we encourage the reader to check the solution just for the fun of it.

5. In the equation $\sqrt{4x-1} + 2\sqrt{1-2x} = 1$, we have not one but two square roots. We begin by isolating one of the square roots and squaring both sides.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sqrt{4x-1} + 2\sqrt{1-2x} &= 1 \\
\sqrt{4x-1} &= 1 - 2\sqrt{1-2x} \\
& \qquad \text{(Subtract } 2\sqrt{1-2x} \text{ from both sides)} \\
(\sqrt{4x-1})^2 &= (1 - 2\sqrt{1-2x})^2 && \text{(Square both sides)} \\
4x - 1 &= 1 - 4\sqrt{1-2x} + (2\sqrt{1-2x})^2 \\
& \qquad \text{(F.O.I.L. / Perfect Square Trinomial)} \\
4x - 1 &= 1 - 4\sqrt{1-2x} + 4(1-2x) \\
4x - 1 &= 1 - 4\sqrt{1-2x} + 4 - 8x && \text{(Distribute)} \\
4x - 1 &= 5 - 8x - 4\sqrt{1-2x} && \text{(Gather like terms)}
\end{aligned}
$$

At this point, we have just one square root so we proceed to isolate it and square both sides a second time.[10]

[10] To avoid complications with fractions, we'll forego dividing by the coefficient of $\sqrt{1-2x}$, namely -4. This is perfectly fine so long as we don't forget to square it when we square both sides of the equation.

$$
\begin{aligned}
4x - 1 &= 5 - 8x - 4\sqrt{1-2x} & \\
12x - 6 &= -4\sqrt{1-2x} & \text{(Subtract 5, add } 8x\text{)} \\
(12x-6)^2 &= (-4\sqrt{1-2x})^2 & \text{(Square both sides)} \\
144x^2 - 144x + 36 &= 16(1-2x) & \\
144x^2 - 144x + 36 &= 16 - 32x & \\
144x^2 - 112x + 20 &= 0 & \text{(Subtract 16, add } 32x\text{)} \\
4(36x^2 - 28x + 5) &= 0 & \text{(Factor)} \\
4(2x-1)(18x-5) &= 0 & \text{(Factor some more)}
\end{aligned}
$$

From the Zero Product Property, we know either $2x - 1 = 0$ or $18x - 5 = 0$. The former gives $x = \frac{1}{2}$ while the latter gives us $x = \frac{5}{18}$. Since we squared both sides of the equation (twice!), we need to check for extraneous solutions. We find $x = \frac{5}{18}$ to be extraneous, so our only solution is $x = \frac{1}{2}$.

6. As usual, our first step in solving $\sqrt[4]{n^2+2} + n = 0$ is to isolate the radical. We then proceed to raise both sides to the fourth power to eliminate the fourth root:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sqrt[4]{n^2+2} + n &= 0 & \\
\sqrt[4]{n^2+2} &= -n & \text{(Subtract } n\text{)} \\
(\sqrt[4]{n^2+2})^4 &= (-n)^4 & \text{(Raise both sides to the } 4^{\text{th}} \text{ power)} \\
n^2 + 2 &= n^4 & \text{(Properties of Negatives)} \\
0 &= n^4 - n^2 - 2 & \text{(Subtract } n^2 \text{ and 2)} \\
0 &= (n^2-2)(n^2+1) & \\
& & \text{(Factor - this is a `Quadratic in Disguise')}
\end{aligned}
$$

At this point, the Zero Product Property gives either $n^2 - 2 = 0$ or $n^2 + 1 = 0$. From $n^2 - 2 = 0$, we get $n^2 = 2$, so $n = \pm\sqrt{2}$. From $n^2+1 = 0$, we get $n^2 = -1$, which gives no real solutions.[11] Since we raised both sides to an even (the fourth) power, we need to check for extraneous solutions. We find that $n = -\sqrt{2}$ works but $n = \sqrt{2}$ is extraneous.

7. In this problem, we are asked to solve for r. While there are a lot of letters in this equation[12], r appears in only one term: r^3. Our strategy is to isolate r^3 then extract the cube root.

$$\begin{aligned}
V &= \frac{4\pi}{3}(R^3 - r^3) \\
3V &= 4\pi(R^3 - r^3) && \text{(Multiply by 3 to clear fractions)} \\
3V &= 4\pi R^3 - 4\pi r^3 && \text{(Distribute)} \\
3V - 4\pi R^3 &= -4\pi r^3 && \text{(Subtract } 4\pi R^3\text{)} \\
\frac{3V - 4\pi R^3}{-4\pi} &= r^3 && \text{(Divide by } -4\pi\text{)} \\
\frac{4\pi R^3 - 3V}{4\pi} &= r^3 && \text{(Properties of Negatives)} \\
\sqrt[3]{\frac{4\pi R^3 - 3V}{4\pi}} &= r && \text{(Extract the cube root)}
\end{aligned}$$

The check is, as always, left to the reader and highly encouraged.

8. The equation we are asked to solve in this example is from the world of Chemistry and is none other than Graham's Law of Effusion[13]. As was mentioned in Example A.12.2, subscripts in Mathematics are used to distinguish between variables and have no arithmetic

[11] Why is that again?

[12] including a Greek letter, no less!

[13] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Graham's_law

significance. In this example, r_1, r_2, M_1 and M_2 are as different as x, y, z and 117. Since we are asked to solve for M_1, we locate M_1 and see it is in the denominator of a fraction which is inside of a square root. We eliminate the square root by squaring both sides and proceed from there.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{r_1}{r_2} &= \sqrt{\frac{M_2}{M_1}} \\
\left(\frac{r_1}{r_2}\right)^2 &= \left(\sqrt{\frac{M_2}{M_1}}\right)^2 && \text{(Square both sides)} \\
\frac{r_1^2}{r_2^2} &= \frac{M_2}{M_1} \\
r_1^2 M_1 &= M_2 r_2^2 \\
&\text{(Multiply by } r_2^2 M_1 \text{ to clear fractions, assume } r_2, M_1 \neq 0) \\
M_1 &= \frac{M_2 r_2^2}{r_1^2} && \text{(Divide by } r_1^2\text{, assume } r_1 \neq 0)
\end{aligned}
$$

As the reader may expect, checking the answer amounts to a good exercise in simplifying rational and radical expressions. The fact that we are assuming all of the variables represent positive real numbers comes in to play, as well.

9. Our last equation to solve comes from Einstein's Special Theory of Relativity and relates the mass of an object to its velocity as it moves.[14] We are asked to solve for v which is located in just one term, namely v^2, which happens to lie in a fraction underneath a square root which is itself a denominator. We have quite a lot of work ahead of us!

[14] See this article on the Lorentz Factor[15].

$$m = \frac{m_0}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$$

$$m\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}} = m_0 \quad \text{(Multiply by } \sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}} \text{ to clear fractions)}$$

$$\left(m\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}\right)^2 = m_0^2 \quad \text{(Square both sides)}$$

$$m^2\left(1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}\right) = m_0^2 \quad \text{(Properties of Exponents)}$$

$$m^2 - \frac{m^2v^2}{c^2} = m_0^2 \quad \text{(Distribute)}$$

$$-\frac{m^2v^2}{c^2} = m_0^2 - m^2 \quad \text{(Subtract } m^2\text{)}$$

$$m^2v^2 = -c^2(m_0^2 - m^2) \quad \text{(Multiply by } -c^2 \ (c^2 \neq 0)\text{)}$$

$$m^2v^2 = -c^2m_0^2 + c^2m^2 \quad \text{(Distribute)}$$

$$v^2 = \frac{c^2m^2 - c^2m_0^2}{m^2}$$

(Rearrange terms, divide by m^2 ($m^2 \neq 0$))

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{c^2m^2 - c^2m_0^2}{m^2}}$$

(Extract Square Roots, $v > 0$ so no $\pm$)

$$v = \frac{\sqrt{c^2(m^2 - m_0^2)}}{\sqrt{m^2}}$$

(Properties of Radicals, factor)

$$v = \frac{|c|\sqrt{m^2 - m_0^2}}{|m|}$$

$$v = \frac{c\sqrt{m^2 - m_0^2}}{m}$$

($c > 0$ and $m > 0$ so $|c| = c$ and $|m| = m$)

Checking the answer algebraically would earn the reader great honor and respect on the Algebra battlefield so it is highly recommended.

A.13.1 Rationalizing Denominators and Numerators

In Section A.10, there were a few instances where we needed to 'rationalize' a denominator - that is, take a fraction with radical in the denominator and re-write it as an equivalent fraction without a radical in the denominator. There are various reasons for wanting to do this,[16] but the most pressing reason is that rationalizing denominators - and numerators as well - gives us an opportunity for more practice with fractions and radicals. To refresh your memory, we rationalize a denominator and a numerator below:

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{4}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{7\sqrt[3]{4}}{3} = \frac{7\sqrt[3]{4}\sqrt[3]{2}}{3\sqrt[3]{2}} = \frac{7\sqrt[3]{8}}{3\sqrt[3]{2}} = \frac{7 \cdot 2}{3\sqrt[3]{2}} = \frac{14}{3\sqrt[3]{2}}$$

In general, if the fraction contains either a single term numerator or denominator with an undesirable n^{th} root, we multiply the numerator and denominator by whatever is required to obtain a perfect n^{th} power in the radicand that we want to eliminate. If the fraction contains two terms the situation is somewhat more complicated. To see why, consider the fraction $\frac{3}{4-\sqrt{5}}$. Suppose we wanted to rid the denominator of the $\sqrt{5}$ term. We could try as above and multiply numerator and denominator by $\sqrt{5}$ but that just yields:

$$\frac{3}{4-\sqrt{5}} = \frac{3\sqrt{5}}{(4-\sqrt{5})\sqrt{5}} = \frac{3\sqrt{5}}{4\sqrt{5}-\sqrt{5}\sqrt{5}} = \frac{3\sqrt{5}}{4\sqrt{5}-5}$$

We haven't removed $\sqrt{5}$ from the denominator - we've just shuffled it over to the other term in the denominator. As you may recall, the strategy here

[16] Before the advent of the handheld calculator, rationalizing denominators made it easier to get decimal approximations to fractions containing radicals. However, some (admittedly more abstract) applications remain today – one of which we'll explore in Section A.11; one you'll see in Calculus.

is to multiply both the numerator and the denominator by what's called the **conjugate**.

Definition A.13.1. Congugate of a Square Root Expression: If a, b and c are real numbers with $c > 0$ then the quantities $(a + b\sqrt{c})$ and $(a - b\sqrt{c})$ are **conjugates** of one another.[a] Conjugates multiply according to the Difference of Squares Formula:

$$(a + b\sqrt{c})(a - b\sqrt{c}) = a^2 - (b\sqrt{c})^2 = a^2 - b^2c$$

[a] As are $(b\sqrt{c} - a)$ and $(b\sqrt{c} + a)$ because $(b\sqrt{c} - a)(b\sqrt{c} + a) = b^2c - a^2$.

That is, to get the conjugate of a two-term expression involving a square root, you change the '$-$' to a '+,' or vice-versa. For example, the conjugate of $4 - \sqrt{5}$ is $4 + \sqrt{5}$, and when we multiply these two factors together, we get $(4 - \sqrt{5})(4 + \sqrt{5}) = 4^2 - (\sqrt{5})^2 = 16 - 5 = 11$. Hence, to eliminate the $\sqrt{5}$ from the denominator of our original fraction, we multiply both the numerator and the denominator by the *conjugate* of $4 - \sqrt{5}$ to get:

$$\frac{3}{4 - \sqrt{5}} = \frac{3(4 + \sqrt{5})}{(4 - \sqrt{5})(4 + \sqrt{5})} = \frac{3(4 + \sqrt{5})}{4^2 - (\sqrt{5})^2} = \frac{3(4 + \sqrt{5})}{16 - 5} = \frac{12 + 3\sqrt{5}}{11}$$

What if we had $\sqrt[3]{5}$ instead of $\sqrt{5}$? We could try multiplying $4 - \sqrt[3]{5}$ by $4 + \sqrt[3]{5}$ to get

$$(4 - \sqrt[3]{5})(4 + \sqrt[3]{5}) = 4^2 - (\sqrt[3]{5})^2 = 16 - \sqrt[3]{25},$$

which leaves us with a cube root. What we need to undo the cube root is a perfect cube, which means we look to the Difference of Cubes Formula for inspiration: $a^3 - b^3 = (a - b)(a^2 + ab + b^2)$. If we take $a = 4$ and $b = \sqrt[3]{5}$, we multiply

$$\begin{aligned}(4 - \sqrt[3]{5})(4^2 + 4\sqrt[3]{5} + (\sqrt[3]{5})^2) &= 4^3 + 4^2\sqrt[3]{5} + 4\sqrt[3]{5} - 4^2\sqrt[3]{5} - 4(\sqrt[3]{5})^2 - (\sqrt[3]{5})^3 \\ &= 64 - 5 \\ &= 59\end{aligned}$$

So if we were charged with rationalizing the denominator of $\frac{3}{4-\sqrt[3]{5}}$, we'd have:

$$\frac{3}{4-\sqrt[3]{5}} = \frac{3(4^2+4\sqrt[3]{5}+(\sqrt[3]{5})^2)}{(4-\sqrt[3]{5})(4^2+4\sqrt[3]{5}+(\sqrt[3]{5})^2)} = \frac{48+12\sqrt[3]{5}+3\sqrt[3]{25}}{59}$$

This sort of thing extends to n$^{\text{th}}$ roots since $(a-b)$ is a factor of a^n-b^n for all natural numbers n, but in practice, we'll stick with square roots with just a few cube roots thrown in for a challenge.[17]

Example A.13.3. Rationalize the indicated numerator or denominator:

1. Rationalize the denominator: $\dfrac{3}{\sqrt[5]{24x^2}}$
2. Rationalize the numerator: $\dfrac{\sqrt{9+h}-3}{h}$

Solution.

1. We are asked to rationalize the denominator, which in this case contains a fifth root. That means we need to work to create fifth powers of each of the factors of the radicand. To do so, we first factor the radicand: $24x^2 = 8\cdot 3\cdot x^2 = 2^3\cdot 3\cdot x^2$. To obtain fifth powers, we need to multiply by $2^2\cdot 3^4\cdot x^3$ inside the radical.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{3}{\sqrt[5]{24x^2}} &= \frac{3}{\sqrt[5]{2^3\cdot 3\cdot x^2}} \\
&= \frac{3\sqrt[5]{2^2\cdot 3^4\cdot x^3}}{\sqrt[5]{2^3\cdot 3\cdot x^2}\sqrt[5]{2^2\cdot 3^4\cdot x^3}} && \text{(Equivalent Fractions)} \\
&= \frac{3\sqrt[5]{2^2\cdot 3^4\cdot x^3}}{\sqrt[5]{2^3\cdot 3\cdot x^2\cdot 2^2\cdot 3^4\cdot x^3}} && \text{(Product Rule)} \\
&= \frac{3\sqrt[5]{2^2\cdot 3^4\cdot x^3}}{\sqrt[5]{2^5\cdot 3^5\cdot x^5}} && \text{(Property of Exponents)}
\end{aligned}$$

[17] To see what to do about fourth roots, use long division to find $(a^4-b^4)\div(a-b)$, and apply this to $4-\sqrt[4]{5}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{3\sqrt[5]{2^2 \cdot 3^4 \cdot x^3}}{\sqrt[5]{2^5}\sqrt[5]{3^5}\sqrt[5]{x^5}} && \text{(Product Rule)} \\
&= \frac{3\sqrt[5]{2^2 \cdot 3^4 \cdot x^3}}{2 \cdot 3 \cdot x} && \text{(Product Rule)} \\
&= \frac{\cancel{3}\sqrt[5]{4 \cdot 81 \cdot x^3}}{2 \cdot \cancel{3} \cdot x} && \text{(Reduce)} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt[5]{324x^3}}{2x} && \text{(Simplify)}
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Here, we are asked to rationalize the *numerator*. Since it is a two term numerator involving a square root, we multiply both numerator and denominator by the conjugate of $\sqrt{9+h}-3$, namely $\sqrt{9+h}+3$. After simplifying, we find an opportunity to reduce the fraction:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\sqrt{9+h}-3}{h} &= \frac{(\sqrt{9+h}-3)(\sqrt{9+h}+3)}{h(\sqrt{9+h}+3)} && \text{(Equivalent Fractions)} \\
&= \frac{(\sqrt{9+h})^2 - 3^2}{h(\sqrt{9+h}+3)} && \text{(Difference of Squares)} \\
&= \frac{(9+h)-9}{h(\sqrt{9+h}+3)} && \text{(Simplify)} \\
&= \frac{h}{h(\sqrt{9+h}+3)} && \text{(Simplify)} \\
&= \frac{\cancelto{1}{h}}{\cancel{h}(\sqrt{9+h}+3)} && \text{(Reduce)} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{9+h}+3}
\end{aligned}
$$

We close this section with an awesome example from Calculus.

Example A.13.4. Simplify the compound fraction $\dfrac{\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2(x+h)+1}} - \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2x+1}}}{h}$ then rationalize the numerator of the result.

Solution. We start by multiplying the top and bottom of the 'big' fraction by $\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2(x+h)+1}} - \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2x+1}}}{h} \\
&= \frac{\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2x+2h+1}} - \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2x+1}}}{h} \\
&= \frac{\left(\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2x+2h+1}} - \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2x+1}}\right)\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}}{h\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}} \\
&= \frac{\dfrac{\cancel{\sqrt{2x+2h+1}}\sqrt{2x+1}}{\cancel{\sqrt{2x+2h+1}}} - \dfrac{\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\cancel{\sqrt{2x+1}}}{\cancel{\sqrt{2x+1}}}}{h\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2x+1} - \sqrt{2x+2h+1}}{h\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}}
\end{aligned}$$

Next, we multiply the numerator and denominator by the conjugate of $\sqrt{2x+1} - \sqrt{2x+2h+1}$, namely $\sqrt{2x+1} + \sqrt{2x+2h+1}$, simplify and reduce:

$$\frac{\sqrt{2x+1} - \sqrt{2x+2h+1}}{h\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{(\sqrt{2x+1} - \sqrt{2x+2h+1})(\sqrt{2x+1} + \sqrt{2x+2h+1})}{h\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}(\sqrt{2x+1} + \sqrt{2x+2h+1})} \\
&= \frac{(\sqrt{2x+1})^2 - (\sqrt{2x+2h+1})^2}{h\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}(\sqrt{2x+1} + \sqrt{2x+2h+1})} \\
&= \frac{(2x+1) - (2x+2h+1)}{h\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}(\sqrt{2x+1} + \sqrt{2x+2h+1})} \\
&= \frac{2x+1-2x-2h-1}{h\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}(\sqrt{2x+1} + \sqrt{2x+2h+1})} \\
&= \frac{-2\cancel{h}}{\cancel{h}\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}(\sqrt{2x+1} + \sqrt{2x+2h+1})} \\
&= \frac{-2}{\sqrt{2x+2h+1}\sqrt{2x+1}(\sqrt{2x+1} + \sqrt{2x+2h+1})}
\end{aligned}$$

While the denominator is quite a bit more complicated than what we started with, we have done what was asked of us. In the interest of full disclosure, the reason we did all of this was to cancel the original 'h' from the denominator. That's an awful lot of effort to get rid of just one little h, but you'll see the significance of this in Calculus. □

A.13.2 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 13., perform the indicated operations and simplify.

1. $\sqrt{9x^2}$
2. $\sqrt[3]{8t^3}$
3. $\sqrt{50y^6}$
4. $\sqrt{4t^2+4t+1}$
5. $\sqrt{w^2-16w+64}$
6. $\sqrt{(\sqrt{12x}-\sqrt{3x})^2+1}$
7. $\sqrt{\dfrac{c^2-v^2}{c^2}}$
8. $\sqrt[3]{\dfrac{24\pi r^5}{L^3}}$
9. $\sqrt[4]{\dfrac{32\pi\varepsilon^8}{\rho^{12}}}$
10. $\sqrt{x}-\dfrac{x+1}{\sqrt{x}}$
11. $3\sqrt{1-t^2}+3t\left(\dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{1-t^2}}\right)(-2t)$
12. $2\sqrt[3]{1-z}+2z\left(\dfrac{1}{3\left(\sqrt[3]{1-z}\right)^2}\right)(-1)$
13. $\dfrac{3}{\sqrt[3]{2x-1}}+(3x)\left(-\dfrac{1}{3\left(\sqrt[3]{2x-1}\right)^4}\right)(2)$

In Exercises 14. - 25., find all real solutions.

14. $(2x+1)^3+8=0$
15. $\dfrac{(1-2y)^4}{3}=27$
16. $\dfrac{1}{1+2t^3}=4$
17. $\sqrt{3x+1}=4$
18. $5-\sqrt[3]{t^2+1}=1$
19. $x+1=\sqrt{3x+7}$
20. $y+\sqrt{3y+10}=-2$
21. $3t+\sqrt{6-9t}=2$
22. $2x-1=\sqrt{x+3}$
23. $w=\sqrt[4]{12-w^2}$
24. $\sqrt{x-2}+\sqrt{x-5}=3$
25. $\sqrt{2x+1}=3+\sqrt{4-x}$

In Exercises 26. - 29., solve each equation for the indicated variable. Assume all quantities represent positive real numbers.

26. Solve for h: $I=\dfrac{bh^3}{12}$.
27. Solve for a: $I_0=\dfrac{5\sqrt{3}a^4}{16}$
28. Solve for g: $T=2\pi\sqrt{\dfrac{L}{g}}$
29. Solve for v: $L=L_0\sqrt{1-\dfrac{v^2}{c^2}}$.

In Exercises 30. - 35., rationalize the numerator or denominator, and simplify.

30. $\dfrac{4}{3-\sqrt{2}}$

31. $\dfrac{7}{\sqrt[3]{12x^7}}$

32. $\dfrac{\sqrt{x}-\sqrt{c}}{x-c}$

33. $\dfrac{\sqrt{2x+2h+1}-\sqrt{2x+1}}{h}$

34. $\dfrac{\sqrt[3]{x+1}-2}{x-7}$

35. $\dfrac{\sqrt[3]{x+h}-\sqrt[3]{x}}{h}$

A.13.3 Answers

1. $3|x|$
2. $2t$
3. $5|y^3|\sqrt{2}$
4. $|2t+1|$
5. $|w-8|$
6. $\sqrt{3x+1}$
7. $\dfrac{\sqrt{c^2-v^2}}{|c|}$
8. $\dfrac{2r\sqrt[3]{3\pi r^2}}{L}$
9. $\dfrac{2\varepsilon^2\sqrt[4]{2\pi}}{|\rho^3|}$
10. $-\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$
11. $\dfrac{3-6t^2}{\sqrt{1-t^2}}$
12. $\dfrac{6-8z}{3(\sqrt[3]{1-z})^2}$
13. $\dfrac{4x-3}{(2x-1)\sqrt[3]{2x-1}}$
14. $x=-\dfrac{3}{2}$
15. $y=-1,2$
16. $t=-\dfrac{\sqrt[3]{3}}{2}$
17. $x=5$
18. $t=\pm 3\sqrt{7}$
19. $x=3$
20. $y=-3$
21. $t=-\dfrac{1}{3},\dfrac{2}{3}$
22. $x=\dfrac{5+\sqrt{57}}{8}$
23. $w=\sqrt{3}$
24. $x=6$
25. $x=4$
26. $h=\sqrt[3]{\dfrac{12I}{b}}$
27. $a=\dfrac{2\sqrt[4]{I_0}}{\sqrt[4]{5\sqrt{3}}}$
28. $g=\dfrac{4\pi^2 L}{T^2}$
29. $v=\dfrac{c\sqrt{L_0^2-L^2}}{L_0}$
30. $\dfrac{12+4\sqrt{2}}{7}$
31. $\dfrac{7\sqrt[3]{18x^2}}{6x^3}$
32. $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}+\sqrt{c}}$
33. $\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{2x+2h+1}+\sqrt{2x+1}}$
34. $\dfrac{1}{(\sqrt[3]{x+1})^2+2\sqrt[3]{x+1}+4}$
35. $\dfrac{1}{(\sqrt[3]{x+h})^2+\sqrt[3]{x+h}\sqrt[3]{x}+(\sqrt[3]{x})^2}$

A.14 Variation

In many instances in the sciences, equations are encountered as a result of fundamental natural laws which are typically a result of assuming certain basic relationships between variables. These basic relationships are summarized in the definition below.

Definition A.14.1. Suppose x, y and z are variable quantities. We say

- y **varies directly with** (or is **directly proportional to**) x if there is a constant k such that

$$y = kx$$

- y **varies inversely with** (or is **inversely proportional to**) x if there is a constant k such that

$$y = \frac{k}{x}$$

- z **varies jointly with** (or is **jointly proportional to**) x and y if there is a constant k such that

$$z = kxy$$

The constant k in the above definitions is called the **constant of proportionality**.

Example A.14.1. Translate the following into mathematical equations using Definition A.14.1.

1. Hooke's Law[1]: The force F exerted on a spring is directly proportional the extension x of the spring.

2. Boyle's Law[2]: At a constant temperature, the pressure P of an ideal

[1] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hooke's_law
[2] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boyle's_law

gas is inversely proportional to its volume V. (We explore this one more deeply in Example **??**.

3. The volume V of a right circular cone varies jointly with the height h of the cone and the square of the radius r of the base.

4. Ohm's Law[3]: The current I through a conductor between two points is directly proportional to the voltage V between the points and inversely proportional to the resistance R between the points.

5. Newton's Law of Universal Gravitation[4]: Suppose two objects, one of mass m and one of mass M, are positioned so that the distance between their centers of mass is r. The gravitational force F exerted on the two objects varies directly with the product of the two masses and inversely with the square of the distance between their centers of mass.

Solution.

1. Applying the definition of direct variation, we get $F = kx$ for some constant k.

2. Since P and V are inversely proportional, we write $P = \frac{k}{V}$.

3. There is a bit of ambiguity here. It's clear that the volume and the height of the cone are represented by the quantities V and h, respectively, but does r represent the radius of the base or the square of the radius of the base? It is the former. Usually, if an algebraic operation is specified (like squaring), it is meant to be expressed in the formula. We apply Definition A.14.1 to get $V = khr^2$.

4. Even though the problem doesn't use the phrase 'varies jointly', it is implied by the fact that the current I is related to two different quantities. Since I varies directly with V but inversely with R, we write $I = \frac{kV}{R}$.

[3] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ohm's_law

[4] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Law_of_universal_gravitation

5. We write the product of the masses mM and the square of the distance as r^2. We have that F varies directly with mM and inversely with r^2, so $F = \frac{kmM}{r^2}$. □

A note about units is in order. The formulas given in Example A.14.1 above all have quantities from the "real world" and we would disappoint our friends who teach Science if we didn't remind you to pay attention to units when working with these equations. The natural question that arises is "What units does k have?" The answer is "whatever works" and by that we mean the units on k will be whatever it takes to make the equation have the same units on both sides.

For example, in Hooke's Law we have that $F = kx$. If F is in newtons and x is in meters then k must be in $\frac{\text{newton}}{\text{meter}}$. This can lead to some odd sounding units, such as the units on the constant R in the Ideal Gas Law $PV = nRT$ (see Exercise 11) or no units at all (see Exercise 9a). Unit conversions can mess things up as well - see Exercise 9b for a sample of that kind of nonsense!

We end this section with an example that first requires us to find the value of k and then use it to solve another problem.

Example A.14.2. Suppose it takes 11 pounds of force to hold a spring 2 inches beyond its natural length. What force is required to hold it 7 inches beyond natural length?

Solution. Using Hooke's Law with $F = 11$ pounds and $x = 2$ inches we solve $11 = k * 2$ for k and find $k = 5.5\frac{\text{pound}}{\text{inch}}$. Setting $x = 7$ in Hooke's Law with $k = 5.5$ yields $F = 5.5 * 7 = 38.5$ pounds of force. (Check the units to convince yourself that this worked!)

A.14.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1 - 6, translate the following into mathematical equations.

1. At a constant pressure, the temperature T of an ideal gas is directly proportional to its volume V. (This is Charles's Law[5])

2. The frequency of a wave f is inversely proportional to the wavelength of the wave λ.

3. The density d of a material is directly proportional to the mass of the object m and inversely proportional to its volume V.

4. The square of the orbital period of a planet P is directly proportional to the cube of the semi-major axis of its orbit a. (This is Kepler's Third Law of Planetary Motion [6])

5. The drag of an object traveling through a fluid D varies jointly with the density of the fluid ρ and the square of the velocity of the object ν.

6. Suppose two electric point charges, one with charge q and one with charge Q, are positioned r units apart. The electrostatic force F exerted on the charges varies directly with the product of the two charges and inversely with the square of the distance between the charges. (This is Coulomb's Law[7])

7. According to this webpage[8], the frequency f of a vibrating string is given by $f = \dfrac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\dfrac{T}{\mu}}$ where T is the tension, μ is the linear mass[9] of the string and L is the length of the vibrating part of the string. Express this relationship using the language of variation.

8. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention www.cdc.gov[10], a person's Body Mass Index B is directly proportional to his weight

[5] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles's_law

[6] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kepler

[7] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Electrostatic#Coulomb.27s_law

[8] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vibrating_string

[9] Also known as the linear density. It is simply a measure of mass per unit length.

[10] http://www.cdc.gov

W in pounds and inversely proportional to the square of his height h in inches.

(a) Express this relationship as a mathematical equation.

(b) If a person who was 5 feet, 10 inches tall weighed 235 pounds had a Body Mass Index of 33.7, what is the value of the constant of proportionality?

(c) Rewrite the mathematical equation found in part 8a to include the value of the constant found in part 8b and then find your Body Mass Index.

9. This exercise refers back to the volume of a right circular cone formula found in Example A.14.1.

   (a) First assume that V, h and r are all measured using the same unit of length. Work with your classmates to show that in this case, the k needed for the volume formula $V = khr^2$ has no units on it.

   (b) Now assume that V is measured in milliliters, h is measured in meters and r is measured in yards. Work with your classmates to find the units on k so that the volume formula $V = khr^2$ makes sense.

10. We know that the circumference of a circle varies directly with its radius with 2π as the constant of proportionality. (That is, we know $C = 2\pi r$.) With the help of your classmates, compile a list of other basic geometric relationships which can be seen as variations.

11. Research the Ideal Gas Law $PV = nRT$ to see what sorts of units are used for the constant R. What other formulations of this law did you find in your research?

A.14.2 Answers

1. $T = kV$
2. [11] $f = \dfrac{k}{\lambda}$
3. $d = \dfrac{km}{V}$
4. $P^2 = ka^3$
5. [12] $D = k\rho\nu^2$
6. [13] $F = \dfrac{kqQ}{r^2}$
7. Rewriting $f = \dfrac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\dfrac{T}{\mu}}$ as $f = \dfrac{\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{T}}{L\sqrt{\mu}}$ we see that the frequency f varies directly with the square root of the tension and varies inversely with the length and the square root of the linear mass.
8. (a) $B = \dfrac{kW}{h^2}$ (b)[14] $k = 702.68$ (c) $B = \dfrac{702.68W}{h^2}$

[11] The character λ is the lower case Greek letter 'lambda.'

[12] The characters ρ and ν are the lower case Greek letters 'rho' and 'nu,' respectively.

[13] Note the similarity to this formula and Newton's Law of Universal Gravitation as discussed in Example 5.

[14] The CDC uses 703.

Appendix B

Geometry Review

The authors really wanted the Trigonometry portion of Precalculus, Episode IV to start with the definitions of the circular functions so one purpose of this Geometry Review Appendix is to find a home for the material that is prerequisite to those definitions. Another reason for this Appendix is to further support a "co-requisite" approach to teaching a Precalculus[1] class. As is the case with the Algebra Review Appendix, this chapter is not designed for students who have never seen this material before. In fact, our treatment of Geometry is even more brief than that of Algebra because we assume a student who is taking a stand alone college-level Trigonometry class is already proficient in College Algebra, and those learning the Trigonometry portion of a full Precalculus class have ostensibly survived the College Algebra portion. Thus we review only some very basic concepts covered in a typical high school Geometry course. Where appropriate, we have referenced specific sections of the main body of the Precalculus text in an effort to assist faculty who would like to assign the Appendix

[1] Remember how we define "Precalculus" - to us, Precalculus = College Algebra + College Trigonometry without formal limits. In order to fully support a "co-requisite" approach to a class that has Trigonometry in it, we felt it necessary to provide some material to assist students who have gaps in their Geometry background. The careful reader will note that all of this material was in the main body of our third edition so it can be included nearly seemlessly into a regular Trigonometry class.

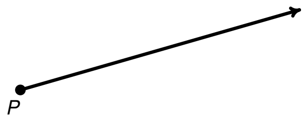
as “just in time” review reading to their students. This Appendix contains two sections which are briefly described below:

Section B.1 (Angles in Degrees) is a brief review of some of the terminology and concepts from a typical high school Geometry course. Radian measure is deferred until Chapter **??**.

Section B.2 (Basic Right Triangle Trigonometry) defines the trigonometric functions in the context of a right triangle using angles measured in degrees. Basic applications are discussed and a proof of the Pythagorean Theorem is given but trigonometric identities are deferred until Chapter **??**.

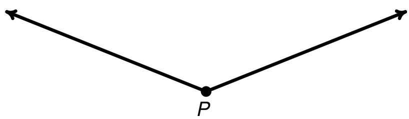
B.1 Angles in Degrees

This section serves as a review of the concept of 'angle' and the use of the degree system to measure angles. Recall that a **ray** is usually described as a 'half-line' and can be thought of as a line segment in which one of the two endpoints is pushed off infinitely distant from the other, as pictured below. The point from which the ray originates is called the **initial point** of the ray.

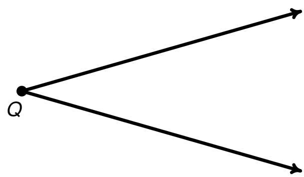


A ray with initial point P.

When two rays share a common initial point they form an **angle** and the common initial point is called the **vertex** of the angle. Two examples of what are commonly thought of as angles are

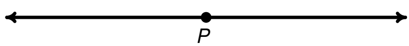


An angle with vertex P.

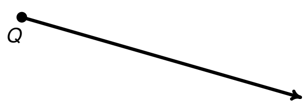


An angle with vertex Q.

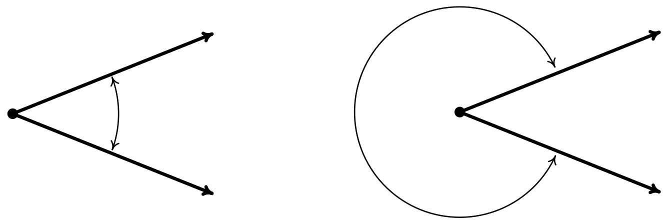
However, the two figures below also depict angles - albeit these are, in some sense, extreme cases. In the first case, the two rays are directly opposite each other forming what is known as a **straight angle**; in the second, the rays are identical so the 'angle' is indistinguishable from the ray itself.



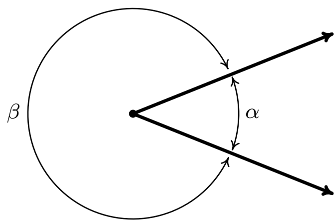
A straight angle.



The **measure of an angle** is a number which indicates the amount of rotation that separates the rays of the angle. There is one immediate problem with this, as pictured below.



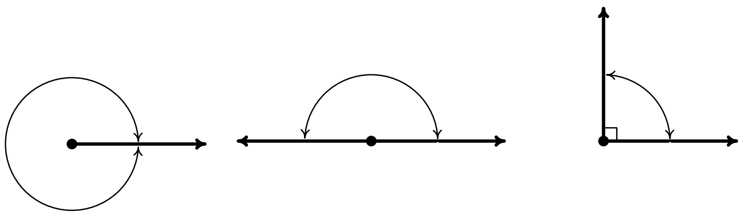
Which amount of rotation are we attempting to quantify? What we have just discovered is that we have at least two angles described by this diagram.[1] Clearly these two angles have different measures because one appears to represent a larger rotation than the other, so we must label them differently. In this book, we use lower case Greek letters such as α (alpha), β (beta), γ (gamma) and θ (theta) to label angles. So, for instance, we have



One system to measure angles is **degree measure**. Quantities measured in degrees are denoted by the symbol '$^\circ$.' One complete revolution as shown below is 360°, and parts of a revolution are measured proportionately.[2] Thus half of a revolution (a straight angle) measures $\frac{1}{2}(360^\circ) = 180^\circ$, a quarter of a revolution (a **right angle**) measures $\frac{1}{4}(360^\circ) = 90^\circ$ and so on.

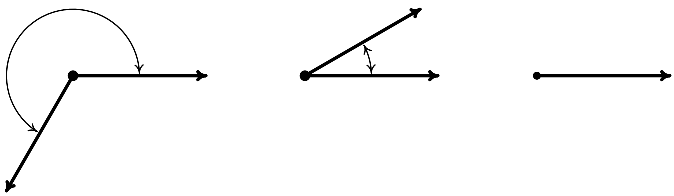
[1] The phrase 'at least' will be justified in short order.

[2] The choice of '360' is most often attributed to the Babylonians[3].



One revolution $\leftrightarrow$ 360° 180° 90°

Note that in the above figure, we have used the small square '$\square$' to denote a right angle, as is commonplace in Geometry. Recall that if an angle measures strictly between 0° and 90° it is called an **acute angle** and if it measures strictly between 90° and 180° it is called an **obtuse angle**. It is important to note that, theoretically, we can know the measure of any angle as long as we know the proportion it represents of entire revolution.[4] For instance, the measure of an angle which represents a rotation of $\frac{2}{3}$ of a revolution would measure $\frac{2}{3}(360^\circ) = 240^\circ$, the measure of an angle which constitutes only $\frac{1}{12}$ of a revolution measures $\frac{1}{12}(360^\circ) = 30^\circ$ and an angle which indicates no rotation at all is measured as 0°.



240° 30° 0°

Using our definition of degree measure, we have that 1° represents the measure of an angle which constitutes $\frac{1}{360}$ of a revolution. Even though it may be hard to draw, it is nonetheless not difficult to imagine an angle with measure smaller than 1°. There are two ways to subdivide degrees. The first, and most familiar, is **decimal degrees**. For example, an angle with

[4] This is how a protractor is graded.

a measure of 30.5° would represent a rotation halfway between 30° and 31°, or equivalently, $\frac{30.5}{360} = \frac{61}{720}$ of a full rotation. This can be taken to the limit using Calculus so that measures like $\sqrt{2}^\circ$ make sense.[5] The second way to divide degrees is the **Degree - Minute - Second** (**DMS**) system. In this system, one degree is divided equally into sixty minutes, and in turn, each minute is divided equally into sixty seconds.[6] In symbols, we write $1^\circ = 60'$ and $1' = 60''$, from which it follows that $1^\circ = 3600''$. To convert a measure of 42.125° to the DMS system, we start by noting that $42.125^\circ = 42^\circ + 0.125^\circ$. Converting the partial amount of degrees to minutes, we find $0.125^\circ \left(\frac{60'}{1^\circ}\right) = 7.5' = 7' + 0.5'$. Converting the partial amount of minutes to seconds gives $0.5' \left(\frac{60''}{1'}\right) = 30''$. Putting it all together yields

$$\begin{aligned}
42.125^\circ &= 42^\circ + 0.125^\circ \\
&= 42^\circ + 7.5' \\
&= 42^\circ + 7' + 0.5' \\
&= 42^\circ + 7' + 30'' \\
&= 42^\circ 7' 30''
\end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, to convert $117^\circ 15' 45''$ to decimal degrees, we first compute $15' \left(\frac{1^\circ}{60'}\right) = \frac{1}{4}^\circ$ and $45'' \left(\frac{1^\circ}{3600''}\right) = \frac{1}{80}^\circ$. Then we find

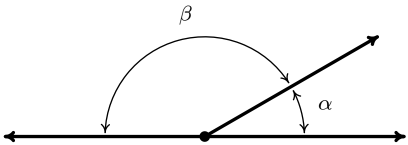
$$\begin{aligned}
117^\circ 15' 45'' &= 117^\circ + 15' + 45'' \\
&= 117^\circ + \frac{1}{4}^\circ + \frac{1}{80}^\circ \\
&= \frac{9381}{80}^\circ \\
&= 117.2625^\circ
\end{aligned}$$

Recall that two acute angles are called **complementary angles** if their measures add to 90°. Two angles, either a pair of right angles or one acute angle and one obtuse angle, are called **supplementary angles** if

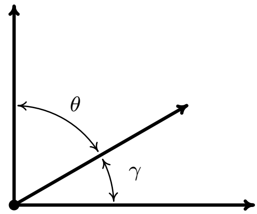
[5] Awesome math pun aside, this is the same idea behind defining irrational exponents in Section **??**.

[6] Does this kind of system seem familiar?

their measures add to 180°. In the diagram below, the angles α and β are supplementary angles while the pair γ and θ are complementary angles.



Supplementary Angles



Complementary Angles

In practice, the distinction between the angle itself and its measure is blurred so that the sentence 'α is an angle measuring 42°' is often abbreviated as '$\alpha = 42^\circ$.' It is now time for an example.

Example B.1.1. Let $\alpha = 111.371^\circ$ and $\beta = 37^\circ 28' 17''$.

1. Convert α to the DMS system. Round your answer to the nearest second.

2. Convert β to decimal degrees. Round your answer to the nearest thousandth of a degree.

3. Sketch α and β.

4. Find a supplementary angle for α.

5. Find a complementary angle for β.

Solution.

1. To convert α to the DMS system, we start with $111.371^\circ = 111^\circ + 0.371^\circ$. Next we convert $0.371^\circ \left(\frac{60'}{1^\circ}\right) = 22.26'$. Writing $22.26' = 22' + 0.26'$, we convert $0.26' \left(\frac{60''}{1'}\right) = 15.6''$. Hence,

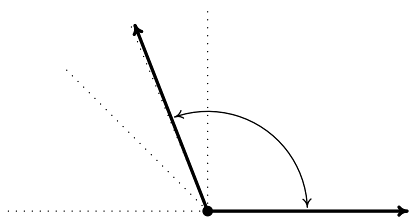
$$
\begin{aligned}
111.371^\circ &= 111^\circ + 0.371^\circ \\
&= 111^\circ + 22.26' \\
&= 111^\circ + 22' + 0.26' \\
&= 111^\circ + 22' + 15.6'' \\
&= 111^\circ 22' 15.6''
\end{aligned}
$$

Rounding to seconds, we obtain $\alpha \approx 111^\circ 22' 16''$.

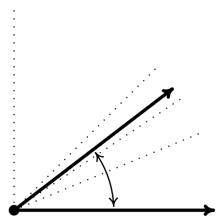
2. To convert β to decimal degrees, we convert $28' \left(\frac{1^\circ}{60'}\right) = \frac{7}{15}^\circ$ and $17'' \left(\frac{1^\circ}{3600'}\right) = \frac{17}{3600}^\circ$. Putting it all together, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
37^\circ 28' 17'' &= 37^\circ + 28' + 17'' \\
&= 37^\circ + \frac{7}{15}^\circ + \frac{17}{3600}^\circ \\
&= \frac{134897}{3600}^\circ \\
&\approx 37.471^\circ
\end{aligned}
$$

3. To sketch α, we first note that $90^\circ < \alpha < 180^\circ$. Dividing this range in half, we get $90^\circ < \alpha < 135^\circ$, and once more, we have $90^\circ < \alpha < 112.5^\circ$. This gives us a pretty good estimate for α, as shown below.[7] Proceeding similarly for β, we find $0^\circ < \beta < 90^\circ$, then $0^\circ < \beta < 45^\circ$, $22.5^\circ < \beta < 45^\circ$, and lastly, $33.75^\circ < \beta < 45^\circ$.



Angle α



Angle β

[7] If this process seems hauntingly familiar, it should. Compare this method to the Bisection Method introduced in Section **??**.

4. To find a supplementary angle for α, we seek an angle θ so that $\alpha + \theta = 180^\circ$. We get $\theta = 180^\circ - \alpha = 180^\circ - 111.371^\circ = 68.629^\circ$.

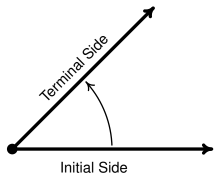
5. To find a complementary angle for β, we seek an angle γ so that $\beta + \gamma = 90^\circ$. We get $\gamma = 90^\circ - \beta = 90^\circ - 37^\circ 28' 17''$. While we could reach for the calculator to obtain an approximate answer, we choose instead to do a bit of sexagesimal[8] arithmetic. We first rewrite $90^\circ = 90^\circ 0' 0'' = 89^\circ 60' 0'' = 89^\circ 59' 60''$. In essence, we are 'borrowing' $1^\circ = 60'$ from the degree place, and then borrowing $1' = 60''$ from the minutes place.[9] This yields, $\gamma = 90^\circ - 37^\circ 28' 17'' = 89^\circ 59' 60'' - 37^\circ 28' 17'' = 52^\circ 31' 43''$. □

Up to this point, we have discussed only angles which measure between 0° and 360°, inclusive. Ultimately, we want to use the arsenal of Algebra which we have stockpiled in Chapters **??** through **??** to not only solve geometric problems involving angles, but also to extend their applicability to other real-world phenomena. A first step in this direction is to extend our notion of 'angle' from merely measuring an extent of rotation to quantities which indicate an amount of rotation along with a **direction**. To that end, we introduce the concept of an **oriented angle**. As its name suggests, in an oriented angle, the direction of the rotation is important. We imagine the angle being swept out starting from an **initial side** and ending at a **terminal side**, as shown below. When the rotation is counter-clockwise[10] from initial side to terminal side, we say that the angle is **positive**; when the rotation is clockwise, we say that the angle is **negative**.

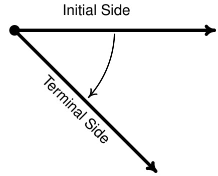
[8] Like 'latus rectum,' this is also a real math term.

[9] This is the exact same kind of 'borrowing' you used to do in Elementary School when trying to find $300 - 125$. Back then, you were working in a base ten system; here, it is base sixty.

[10] 'widdershins'

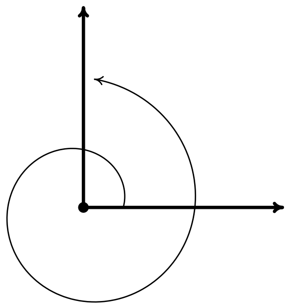


A positive angle, 45°



A negative angle, -45°

At this point, we also extend our allowable rotations to include angles which encompass more than one revolution. For example, to sketch an angle with measure 450° we start with an initial side, rotate counter-clockwise one complete revolution (to take care of the 'first' 360°) then continue with an additional 90° counter-clockwise rotation, as seen below.

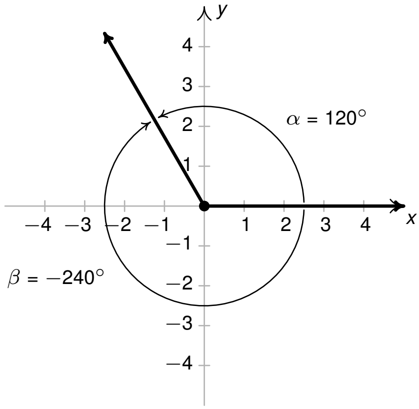


450°

To further connect angles with the Algebra which has come before, we shall often overlay an angle diagram on the coordinate plane. An angle is said to be in **standard position** if its vertex is the origin and its initial side coincides with the positive horizontal (usually labeled as the x-) axis. Angles in standard position are classified according to where their terminal side lies. For instance, an angle in standard position whose terminal side lies in Quadrant I is called a 'Quadrant I angle'. If the terminal side of an angle lies on one of the coordinate axes, it is called a **quadrantal angle**. Two angles in standard position are called **coterminal** if they share the same terminal side.[11] In the figure below, $\alpha = 120^\circ$ and $\beta = -240^\circ$

[11] Note that by being in standard position they automatically share the same initial side which is the positive x-axis.

are two coterminal Quadrant II angles drawn in standard position. Note that $\alpha = \beta + 360^\circ$, or equivalently, $\beta = \alpha - 360^\circ$. We leave it as an exercise to the reader to verify that coterminal angles always differ by a multiple of 360°.[12] More precisely, if α and β are coterminal angles, then $\beta = \alpha + 360^\circ \cdot k$ where k is an integer.[13]



Two coterminal angles, $\alpha = 120^\circ$ and $\beta = -240^\circ$, in standard position.

Example B.1.2. Graph each of the (oriented) angles below in standard position and classify them according to where their terminal side lies. Find three coterminal angles, at least one of which is positive and one of which is negative.

1. $\alpha = 60^\circ$ 2. $\beta = -225^\circ$ 3. $\gamma = 540^\circ$ 4. $\phi = -750^\circ$

Solution.

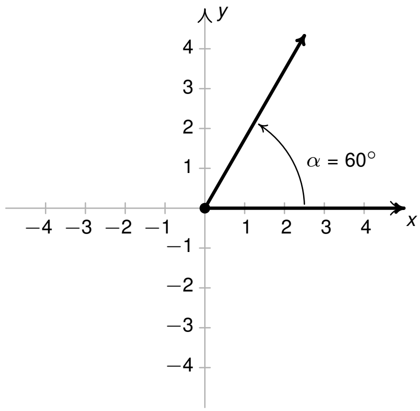
1. To graph $\alpha = 60^\circ$, we draw an angle with its initial side on the positive x-axis and rotate counter-clockwise $\frac{60^\circ}{360^\circ} = \frac{1}{6}$ of a revolution. We see that α is a Quadrant I angle. To find angles which are coterminal, we look for angles θ of the form $\theta = \alpha + 360^\circ \cdot k$, for some integer k. When $k = 1$, we get $\theta = 60^\circ + 360^\circ = 420^\circ$. Substituting

[12]It is worth noting that all of the pathologies of Analytic Trigonometry result from this innocuous fact.

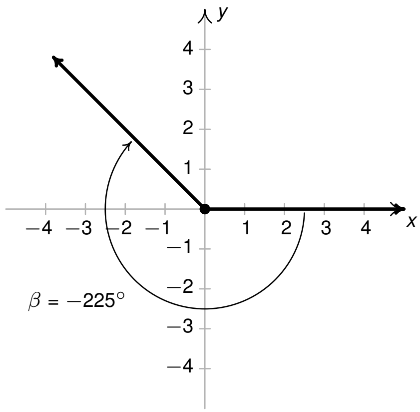
[13]Recall that this means $k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$.

$k = -1$ gives $\theta = 60^\circ - 360^\circ = -300^\circ$. Finally, if we let $k = 2$, we get $\theta = 60^\circ + 720^\circ = 780^\circ$.

2. Since $\beta = -225^\circ$ is negative, we start at the positive x-axis and rotate *clockwise* $\frac{225^\circ}{360^\circ} = \frac{5}{8}$ of a revolution. We see that β is a Quadrant II angle. To find coterminal angles, we proceed as before and compute $\theta = -225^\circ + 360^\circ \cdot k$ for integer values of k. We find 135°, -585° and 495° are all coterminal with -225°.



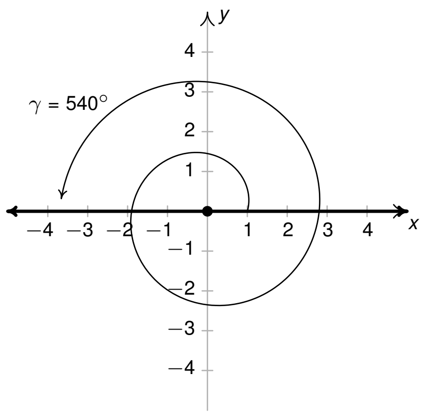
$\alpha = 60^\circ$ in standard position.



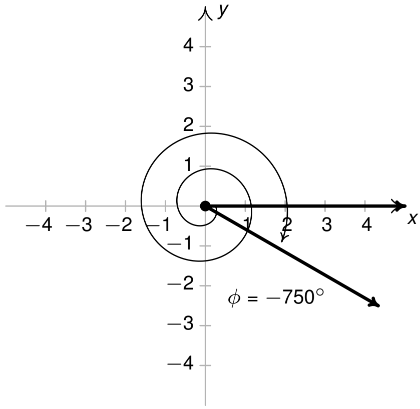
$\beta = -225^\circ$ in standard position.

3. Since $\gamma = 540^\circ$ is positive, we rotate counter-clockwise from the positive x-axis. One full revolution accounts for 360°, with 180°, or $\frac{1}{2}$ of a revolution remaining. Since the terminal side of γ lies on the negative x-axis, γ is a quadrantal angle. All angles coterminal with γ are of the form $\theta = 540^\circ + 360^\circ \cdot k$, where k is an integer. Working through the arithmetic, we find three such angles: 180°, -180° and 900°.

4. The Greek letter ϕ is pronounced 'fee' or 'fie' and since ϕ is negative, we begin our rotation clockwise from the positive x-axis. Two full revolutions account for 720°, with just 30° or $\frac{1}{12}$ of a revolution to go. We find that ϕ is a Quadrant IV angle. To find coterminal angles, we compute $\theta = -750^\circ + 360^\circ \cdot k$ for a few integers k and obtain -390°, -30° and 330°.



$\gamma = 540^\circ$ in standard position.



$\phi = -750^\circ$ in standard position.

□

Note that since there are infinitely many integers, any given angle has infinitely many coterminal angles, and the reader is encouraged to plot the few sets of coterminal angles found in Example B.1.2 to see this.

As we'll see in Section B.2 and throughout Chapter **??**, degree measure is very popular for many applications involving geometry and modeling physical forces. In Section **??**, we'll introduce a different method of measuring angles, **radian measure**, which is tied directly to arc length and is useful in other applications involving circular motion and periodic phenomenon.

B.1.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 4., convert the angles into the DMS system. Round each of your answers to the nearest second.

1. 63.75°	2. 200.325°	3. -317.06°	4. 179.999°

In Exercises 5. - 8., convert the angles into decimal degrees. Round each of your answers to three decimal places.

5. $125^\circ 50'$	6. $-32^\circ 10' 12''$	7. $502^\circ 35'$	8. $237^\circ 58' 43''$

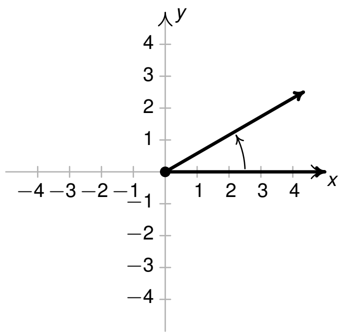
In Exercises 1. - 12., graph the oriented angle in standard position. Classify each angle according to where its terminal side lies and then give two coterminal angles, one of which is positive and the other negative.

1. 30°	2. 120°	3. 225°	4. 330°
5. -30°	6. -135°	7. -240°	8. -270°
9. 405°	10. 840°	11. -510°	12. -900°

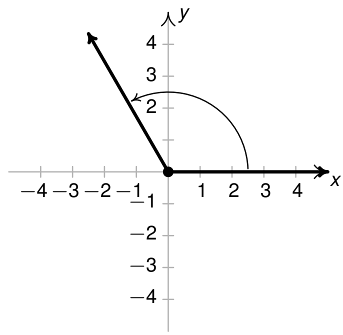
13. With help from your classmates, explain why if (x, y) is a point on the terminal side of an angle α in standard position, then so is $(r\,x, r\,y)$ for any number $r > 0$. What happens if $r < 0$?

B.1.2 Answers

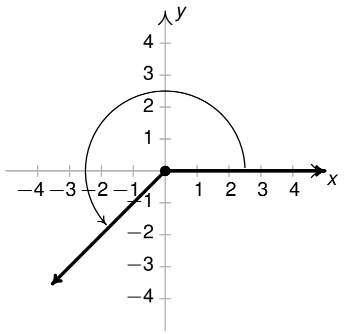
1. $63^\circ 45'$
2. $200^\circ 19' 30''$
3. $-317^\circ 3' 36''$
4. $179^\circ 59' 56''$
5. 125.833°
6. -32.17°
7. 502.583°
8. 237.979°
9. 30° is a Quadrant I angle coterminal with 390° and -330°



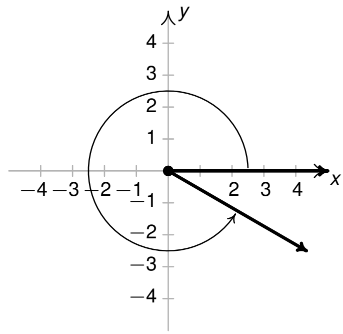
10. 120° is a Quadrant II angle coterminal with 480° and -240°



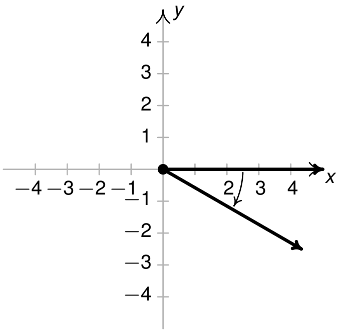
11. 225° is a Quadrant III angle coterminal with 585° and -135°



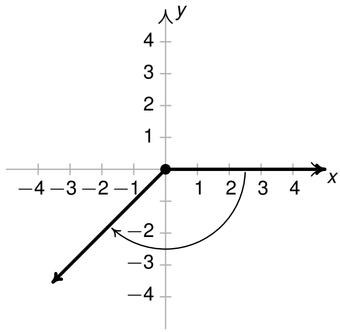
12. 330° is a Quadrant IV angle coterminal with 690° and -30°



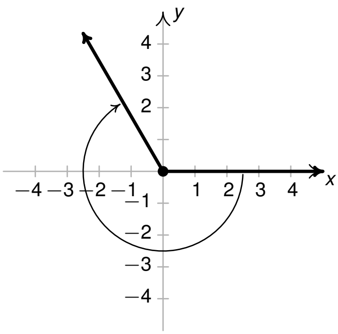
13. $-30°$ is a Quadrant IV angle coterminal with $330°$ and $-390°$



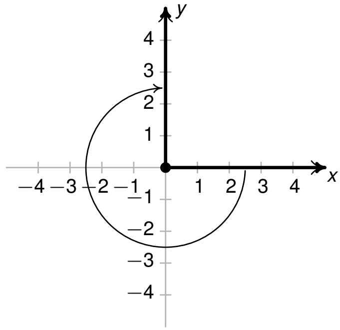
14. $-135°$ is a Quadrant III angle coterminal with $225°$ and $-495°$



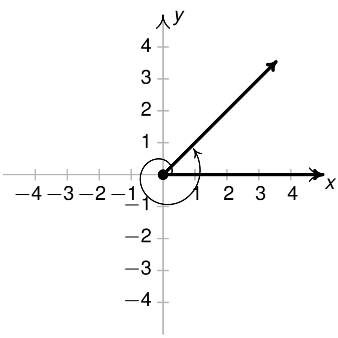
15. $-240°$ is a Quadrant II angle coterminal with $120°$ and $-600°$



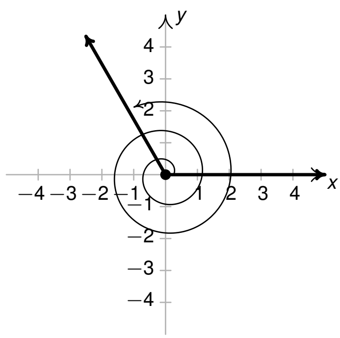
16. $-270°$ is a quadrantal angle coterminal with $90°$ and $-630°$



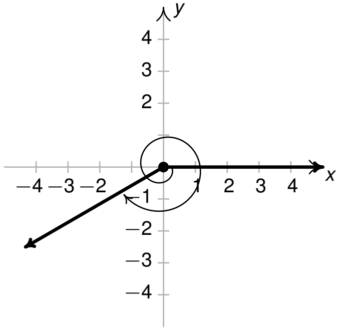
17. $405°$ is a Quadrant I angle coterminal with $45°$ and $-315°$



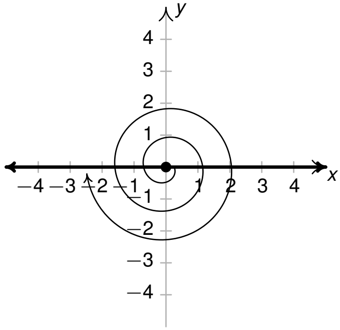
18. $840°$ is a Quadrant II angle coterminal with $120°$ and $-240°$



19. -510° is a Quadrant III angle coterminal with -150° and 210°

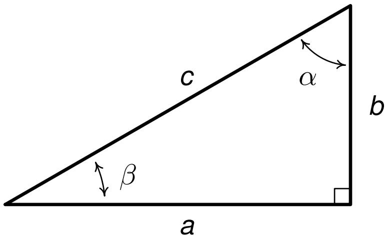


20. -900° is a quadrantal angle coterminal with -180° and 180°



B.2 Right Triangle Trigonometry

The word 'trigonometry' literally means 'measuring triangles,' so naturally most students' first introduction to trigonometry focuses on triangles. This section focuses on **right triangles**, triangles in which one angle measures 90°. Consider the right triangle below, where, as usual, the small square '$\square$' denotes the right angle, the labels 'a,' 'b,' and 'c' denote the lengths of the sides of the triangle, and α and β represent the (measure of) the non-right angles. As you may recall, the side opposite the right angle is called the **hypotenuse** of the right triangle. Also note that since the sum of the measures of all angles in a triangle must add to 180°, we have $\alpha + \beta + 90^\circ = 180^\circ$, or $\alpha + \beta = 90^\circ$. Said differently, the non-right angles in a right triangle are *complements*.



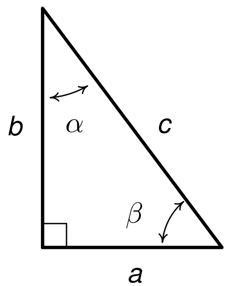
We now state and prove the most famous result about right triangles: **The Pythagorean Theorem**.

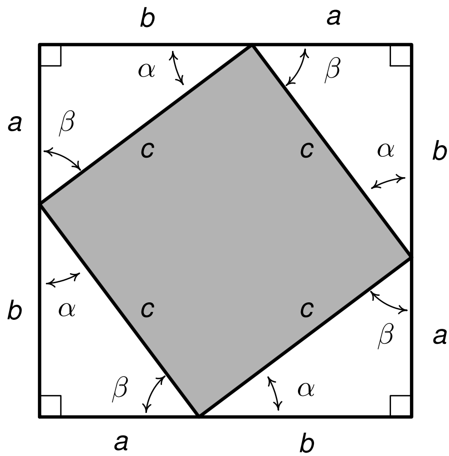
> **Theorem B.2.1.** (**The Pythagorean Theorem**) The square of the length of the hypotenuse of a right triangle is equal to the sums of the squares of the other two sides. More specifically, if c is the length of the hypotenuse of a right triangle and a and b are the lengths of the other two sides, then $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$.

There are several proofs of the Pythagorean Theorem,[1] but the one we choose to reproduce here showcases a nice interplay between algebra and geometry. Consider taking four copies of the right triangle below on

[1] Including one by Mentor, Ohio native President James Garfield[2].

the left and arranging them as seen below on the right.





It should be clear that we have produced a large square with a side length of $(a + b)$. What is also true, but may not be obvious, is that the shaded quadrilateral is also a square. We can readily see the shaded quadrilateral has equal sides of length c. Moreover, since $\alpha + \beta = 90°$, we get the interior angles of the shaded quadrilateral are each $90°$. Hence, the shaded quadrilateral is indeed a square.

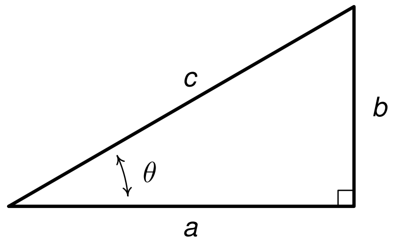
We finish the proof by computing the area of the of the large square in two ways. First, we square the length of its side: $(a + b)^2$. Next, we add up the areas of the four triangles, each having area $\frac{1}{2}ab$ along with the area of the shaded square, c^2. Equating these to expressions gives: $(a+b)^2 = 4\left(\frac{1}{2}ab\right) + c^2$. Since $(a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$ and $4\left(\frac{1}{2}ab\right) = 2ab$, we have $a^2 + 2ab + b^2 = 2ab + c^2$ or $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$, as required.

It should be noted that the converse of the Pythagorean Theorem is also true. That is if a, b, and c are the lengths of sides of a triangle and $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$, then c the triangle is a right triangle.[3]

[3]We will prove this in Section **??** by generalizing the Pythagorean Theorem to a formula that works for *all* triangles.

A list of integers (a, b, c) which satisfy the relationship $a^2+b^2 = c^2$ is called a **Pythagorean Triple**. Some of the more common triples are: $(3, 4, 5)$, $(5, 12, 13)$, $(7, 24, 25)$, and $(8, 15, 17)$. We leave it to the reader to verify these integers satisfy the equation $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ and suggest committing these triples to memory.

Next, we set about defining characteristic ratios associated with acute angles. Given any acute angle θ, we can imagine θ being an interior angle of a right triangle as seen below.

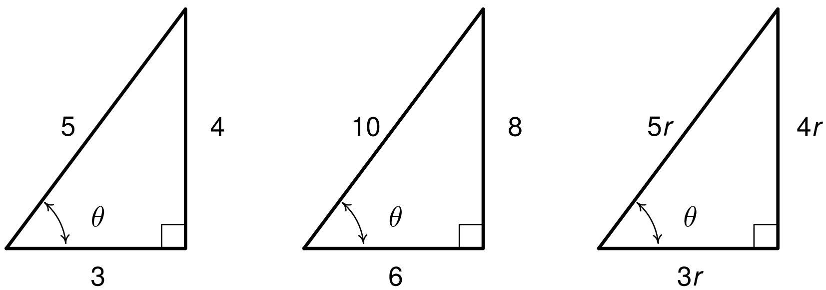


Focusing on the arrangement of the sides of the triangle with respect to the angle θ, we make the following definitions: the side with length a is called the side of the triangle which is **adjacent** to θ and the side with length b is called the side of the triangle **opposite** θ. As usual, the side labeled 'c' (the side opposite the right angle) is the hypotenuse. Using this diagram, we define three important **trigonometric ratios** of θ.

Definition B.2.1. Suppose θ is an acute angle residing in a right triangle as depicted above.

- The **sine** of θ, denoted $\sin(\theta)$ is defined by the ratio: $\sin(\theta) = \dfrac{b}{c}$, or $\dfrac{\text{'length of opposite'}}{\text{'length of hypotenuse'}}$.
- The **cosine** of θ, denoted $\cos(\theta)$ is defined by the ratio: $\cos(\theta) = \dfrac{a}{c}$, or $\dfrac{\text{'length of adjacent'}}{\text{'length of hypotenuse'}}$.
- The **tangent** of θ, denoted $\tan(\theta)$ is defined by the ratio: $\tan(\theta) = \dfrac{b}{a}$, or $\dfrac{\text{'length of opposite'}}{\text{'length of adjacent'}}$.

For example, consider the angle θ indicated in the triangle below on the left. Using Definition B.2.1, we get $\sin(\theta) = \frac{4}{5}$, $\cos(\theta) = \frac{3}{5}$, and $\tan(\theta) = \frac{4}{3}$. One may well wonder if these trigonometric ratios we've found for θ change if the triangle containing θ changes. For example, if we scale all the sides of the triangle below on the left by a factor of 2, we produce the **similar triangle** below in the middle.[4] Using this triangle to compute our ratios for θ, we find $\sin(\theta) = \frac{8}{10} = \frac{4}{5}$, $\cos(\theta) = \frac{6}{10} = \frac{3}{5}$, and $\tan(\theta) = \frac{8}{6} = \frac{4}{3}$. Note that the scaling factor, here 2, is common to all sides of the triangle, and, hence, cancels from the numerator and denominator when simplifying each of the ratios.

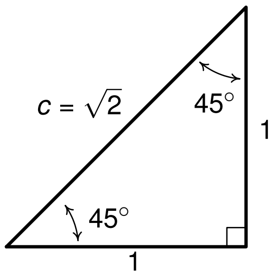


In general, thanks to the Angle Angle Similarity Postulate[5], any two *right* triangles which contain our angle θ are similar which means there is a positive constant r so that the sides of the triangle are $3r$, $4r$, and $5r$ as seen above on the right. Hence, regardless of the right triangle in which we choose to imagine θ, $\sin(\theta) = \frac{4r}{5r} = \frac{4}{5}$, $\cos(\theta) = \frac{3r}{5r} = \frac{3}{5}$, and $\tan(\theta) = \frac{4r}{3r} = \frac{4}{3}$. Generalizing this same argument to any acute angle θ assures us that the ratios as described in Definition B.2.1 are independent of the triangle we use.

Our next objective is to determine the values of $\sin(\theta)$, $\cos(\theta)$, and $\tan(\theta)$ for some of the more commonly used angles. We begin with 45° as shown in Figure B.2.1. In a right triangle, if one of the non-right angles measures 45°, then the other measures 45° as well. It follows that the two legs of

[4]That is, a triangle with the same 'shape' - that is, the same angles.

[5]https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/AA_postulate



- $\sin(45^\circ) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$
- $\cos(45^\circ) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$
- $\tan(45^\circ) = \dfrac{1}{1} = 1$

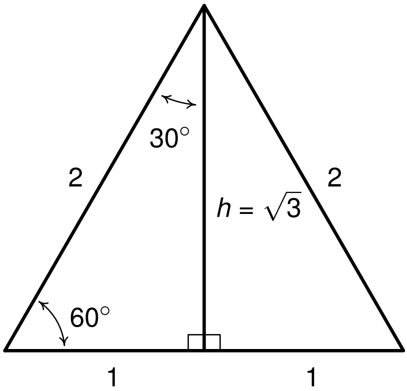
Figure B.2.1: Trigonometric ratios for 45°

the triangle must be congruent. Since we may choose any right triangle containing a 45° angle for our computations, we choose the length of one (hence both) of the legs to be 1. The Pythagorean Theorem gives the hypotenuse is: $c^2 = 1^2 + 1^2 = 2$, so $c = \sqrt{2}$. (We take only the positive square root here since c represents the length of the hypotenuse here, so, necessarily $c > 0$.) From this, we obtain the values shown by the side, and suggest committing them to memory.

Note that we have 'rationalized' here to avoid the irrational number $\sqrt{2}$ appearing in the denominator. This is a common convention in trigonometry, and we will adhere to it unless extremely inconvenient.

Next, we investigate 60° and 30° angles. Consider the equilateral triangle in Figure B.2.2 each of whose sides measures 2 units. Each of its interior angles is necessarily 60°, so if we drop an altitude, we produce two $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$ triangles each having a base measuring 1 unit and a hypotenuse of 2 units. Using the Pythagorean Theorem, we can find the height, h of these triangles: $1^2 + h^2 = 2^2$ so $h^2 = 3$ or $h = \sqrt{3}$. Using these, we can find the values of the trigonometric ratios for both 60° and 30°. Again, we recommend committing these values to memory.

Since 30° and 60° are complements, the side *adjacent* to the 60° angle is the side *opposite* the 30° and the side *opposite* the 60° angle is the side *adjacent* to the 30° . This sort of 'swapping' is true of all complementary angles and will be generalized in Section **??**, Theorem **??**.



- $\sin(60^\circ) = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$
- $\cos(60^\circ) = \dfrac{1}{2}$
- $\tan(60^\circ) = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{1} = \sqrt{3}$
- $\sin(30^\circ) = \dfrac{1}{2}$
- $\cos(30^\circ) = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$
- $\tan(30^\circ) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}} = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$

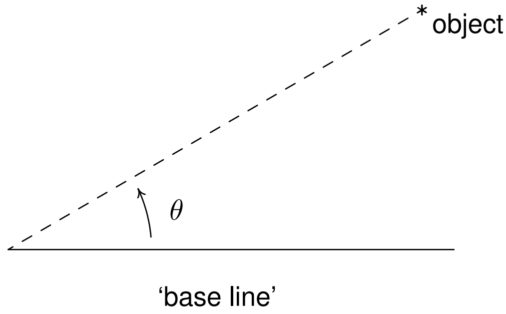
Figure B.2.2: Trigonometric ratios for 60° and 30°

Note that the values of the trigonometric ratios we have derived for 30°, 45°, and 60° angles are the *exact* values of these ratios. For these angles, we can conveniently express the exact values of their sines, cosines, and tangents resorting, at worst, to using square roots. The reader may well wonder if, for instance, we can express the exact value of, say, $\sin(42^\circ)$ in terms of radicals. The answer in this case is 'yes' (see here[6]), but, in general, we will not take the time to pursue such representations.[7] Hence, if a problem requests an 'exact' answer involving $\sin(42^\circ)$, we will leave it written as '$\sin(42^\circ)$' and use a calculator to produce a suitable approximation as the situation warrants.

Our first example requires the concept of an 'angle of inclination.' The angle of inclination (or angle of elevation) of an object refers to the angle whose initial side is some kind of base-line (say, the ground), and whose terminal side is the line-of-sight to an object above the base-line. Schematically:

[6] https://math.la.asu.edu/~surgent/mat170/Exact_Trig_Values.pdf

[7] We will do a little of this in Section **??**.



The angle of inclination from the base line to the object is θ

Example B.2.1.

1. The angle of inclination from a point on the ground 30 feet away to the top of Lakeland's Armington Clocktower[8] is 60°. Find the height of the Clocktower to the nearest foot.

2. The Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) stipulates the incline on an accessibility ramp be 5°. If a ramp is to be built so that it replaces stairs that measure 21 inches tall, how long does the ramp need to be? Round your answer to the nearest inch.

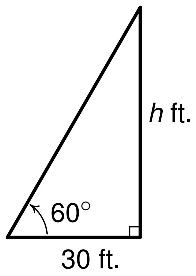
3. In order to determine the height of a California Redwood tree, two sightings from the ground, one 200 feet directly behind the other, are made. If the angles of inclination were 45° and 30°, respectively, how tall is the tree to the nearest foot?

Solution.

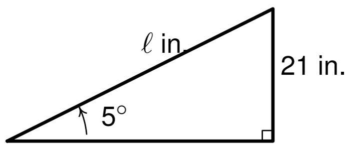
1. We can represent the problem situation using a right triangle as shown below on the left. If we let h denote the height of the tower, then we have $\tan(60^\circ) = \frac{h}{30}$. From this we get an exact answer of $h = 30\tan(60^\circ) = 30\sqrt{3}$ feet. Using a calculator, we get the approximation 51.96 which, when rounded to the nearest foot, gives us our answer of 52 feet.

[8]Named in honor of Raymond Q. Armington, Lakeland's Clocktower has been a part of campus since 1972.

2. We diagram the situation below on the left using ℓ to represent the unknown length of the ramp. We have $\sin(5^\circ) = \frac{21}{\ell}$ so that $\ell = \frac{21}{\sin(5^\circ)} \approx 240.95$ inches. Hence, the ramp is 241 inches long.

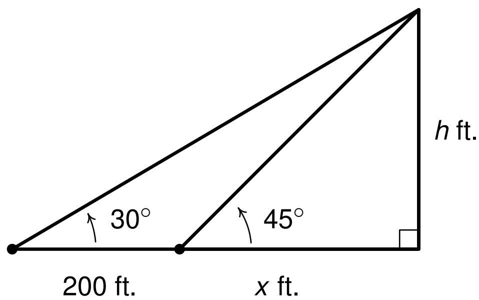


Finding the height of the Clocktower



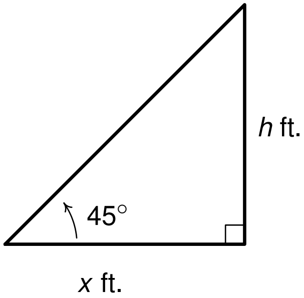
Finding the length of an accessibility ramp.

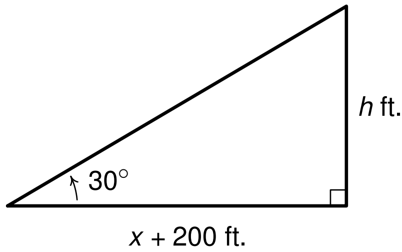
3. Sketching the problem situation below, we find ourselves with two unknowns: the height h of the tree and the distance x from the base of the tree to the first observation point.



Finding the height of a California Redwood

Luckily, we have two right triangles to help us find each unknown, as shown below. From the triangle below on the left, we get $\tan(45^\circ) = \frac{h}{x}$. From the triangle below on the right, we see $\tan(30^\circ) = \frac{h}{x+200}$.





Since $\tan(45^\circ) = 1$, the first equation gives $\frac{h}{x} = 1$, or $x = h$. Substituting this into the second equation gives $\frac{h}{h+200} = \tan(30^\circ) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$. Clearing fractions, we get $3h = (h+200)\sqrt{3}$. The result is a linear equation for h, so we expand the right hand side and gather all the terms involving h to one side.

$$\begin{aligned} 3h &= (h+200)\sqrt{3} \\ 3h &= h\sqrt{3} + 200\sqrt{3} \\ 3h - h\sqrt{3} &= 200\sqrt{3} \\ (3-\sqrt{3})h &= 200\sqrt{3} \\ h &= \frac{200\sqrt{3}}{3-\sqrt{3}} \approx 273.20 \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the tree is approximately 273 feet tall. □

There are three more trigonometric ratios which are commonly used and they are defined in the same manner the ratios in Definition B.2.1 are defined. They are listed below.

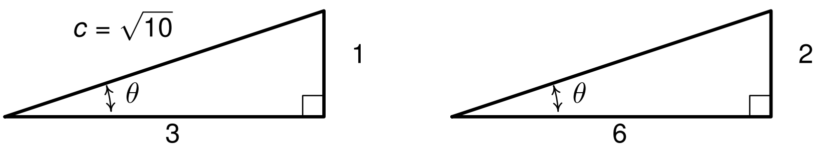
Definition B.2.2. Suppose θ is an acute angle residing in a right triangle as depicted on page 291.

- The **cosecant** of θ, denoted $\csc(\theta)$ is defined by the ratio: $\csc(\theta) = \dfrac{c}{b}$, or $\dfrac{\text{‘length of hypotenuse’}}{\text{‘length of opposite’}}$.
- The **secant** of θ, denoted $\sec(\theta)$ is defined by the ratio: $\sec(\theta) = \dfrac{c}{a}$, or $\dfrac{\text{‘length of hypotenuse’}}{\text{‘length of adjacent’}}$.
- The **cotangent** of θ, denoted $\cot(\theta)$ is defined by the ratio: $\cot(\theta) = \dfrac{a}{b}$, or $\dfrac{\text{‘length of adjacent’}}{\text{‘length of opposite’}}$.

We practice these definitions in the following example.

Example B.2.2. Suppose θ is an acute angle with $\cot(\theta) = 3$. Find the values of the remaining five trigonometric ratios: $\sin(\theta)$, $\cos(\theta)$, $\tan(\theta)$, $\csc(\theta)$, and $\sec(\theta)$.

Solution. We are given $\cot(\theta) = 3$. So, to proceed, we construct a right triangle in which the length of the side adjacent to θ and the length of the side opposite of θ has a ratio of $3 = \frac{3}{1}$. Note there are infinitely many such right triangles - we have produced two below for reference. We will focus our attention on the triangle below on the left and encourage the reader to work through the details using the triangle below on the right to verify the choice of triangle doesn't matter.



From the diagram, we see immediately $\tan(\theta) = \frac{1}{3}$, but in order to determine the remaining four trigonometric ratios, we need to first find the value of the hypotenuse. The Pythagorean Theorem gives $1^2 + 3^2 = c^2$ so $c^2 = 10$ or $c = \sqrt{10}$. Rationalizing denominators, we find $\sin(\theta) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{10}} = \frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}$, $\cos(\theta) = \frac{3}{\sqrt{10}} = \frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10}$, $\csc(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{10}}{1} = \sqrt{10}$ and $\sec(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{10}}{3}$. $\square$

While we learned all about the trigonometric ratios of θ in Example B.2.2, the identity of θ remains unknown. Since $\sin(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{10}}{10} \approx 0.316$ is decidedly less than $\sin(30^\circ) = \frac{1}{2} = 0.5$, it stands to reason that $\theta < 30^\circ$. It turns out the calculator can provide for us a decimal approximation of θ by way of the '$\sin^{-1}(x)$' function. Here, the '-1' exponent denotes an inverse function (see Section **??**) does **not** mean reciprocal.[9] That is, $\sin^{-1}(x)$ (read 'sine-inverse of x') gives an angle whose sine is x. Hence, we may write $\theta = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}\right) \approx 18.43^\circ$. The functions $\cos^{-1}(x)$ and $\tan^{-1}(x)$ work similarly. Indeed,

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}\right) = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{3}\right),$$

and the reader is encouraged to use a calculator to verify these statements.

Please note there is **much** more to these inverse functions than the 'angle finder' description use here.[10] That being said, we finish this section showcasing a use for the $\tan^{-1}(x)$ function below.

Example B.2.3. [11] The roof on the house below has a '6/12 pitch'. This means that when viewed from the side, the roof line has a rise of 6 feet over a run of 12 feet. Find the angle of inclination from the bottom of the roof to the top of the roof. Round your answer to the nearest hundredth of a degree.

Front View

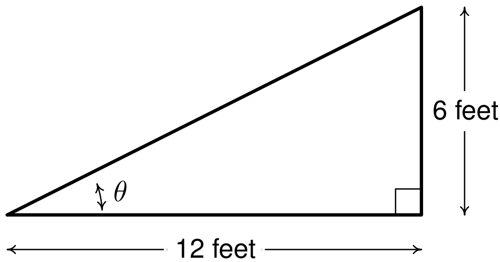
Side View

[9]That is, $\sin^{-1}(x) \neq \frac{1}{\sin(x)}$. That being said, $(\sin(x))^{-1} = \frac{1}{\sin(x)} = \csc(x)$.

[10]See Section **??** for all of the pedantic details.

[11]The authors would like to thank Dan Stitz for this problem and associated graphics.

Solution. If we divide the side view of the house down the middle, we find that the roof line forms the hypotenuse of a right triangle with legs of length 6 feet and 12 feet as depicted below.

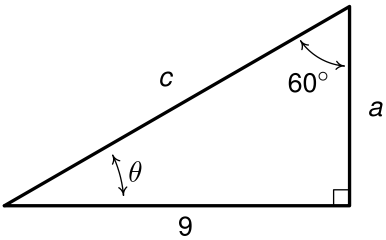


The angle of inclination, θ, satisfies $\tan(\theta) = \frac{6}{12} = \frac{1}{2}$. Hence, $\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \approx 26.56^{\circ}$. $\square$

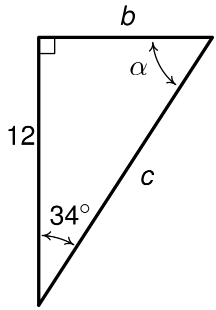
B.2.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1. - 4., find the requested quantities.

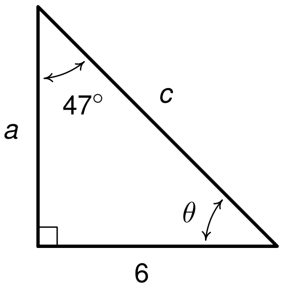
1. Find θ, *a*, and *c*.



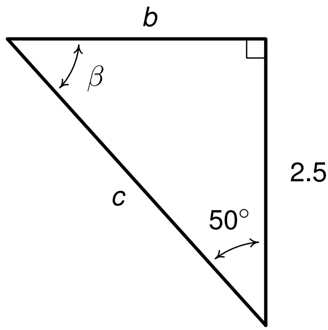
2. Find α, *b*, and *c*.



3. Find θ, *a*, and *c*.



4. Find β, *b*, and *c*.



In Exercises 5. - 10., answer the following questions assuming θ is an angle in a right triangle.

5. If $\theta = 30^\circ$ and the side opposite θ has length 4, how long is the side adjacent to θ?
6. If $\theta = 15^\circ$ and the hypotenuse has length 10, how long is the side opposite θ?
7. If $\theta = 87^\circ$ and the side adjacent to θ has length 2, how long is the side opposite θ?
8. If $\theta = 38.2^\circ$ and the side opposite θ has lengh 14, how long is the hypoteneuse?
9. If $\theta = 2.05^\circ$ and the hypotenuse has length 3.98, how long is the side adjacent to θ?

10. If $\theta = 42^\circ$ and the side adjacent to θ has length 31, how long is the side opposite θ?

In Exercises 11. - 13., find the two acute angles in the right triangle whose sides have the given lengths. Express your answers using degree measure rounded to two decimal places.

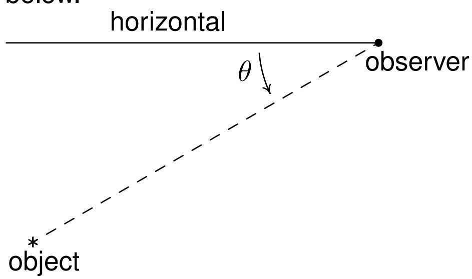
11. 3, 4 and 5
12. 5, 12 and 13
13. 336, 527 and 625

In Exercises 14. - 28., θ is an acute angle. Use the given trigonometric ratio to find the exact values of the remaining trigonometric ratios of θ. Find a decimal approximation to θ, rounded to two decimal places.

14. $\sin(\theta) = \dfrac{3}{5}$
15. $\tan(\theta) = \dfrac{12}{5}$
16. $\csc(\theta) = \dfrac{25}{24}$
17. $\sec(\theta) = 7$
18. $\csc(\theta) = \dfrac{10\sqrt{91}}{91}$
19. $\cot(\theta) = 23$
20. $\tan(\theta) = 2$
21. $\sec(\theta) = 4$
22. $\cot(\theta) = \sqrt{5}$
23. $\cos(\theta) = \dfrac{1}{3}$
24. $\cot(\theta) = 2$
25. $\csc(\theta) = 5$
26. $\tan(\theta) = \sqrt{10}$
27. $\sec(\theta) = 2\sqrt{5}$
28. $\cos(\theta) = 0.4$

29. A tree standing vertically on level ground casts a 120 foot long shadow. The angle of elevation from the end of the shadow to the top of the tree is 21.4°. Find the height of the tree to the nearest foot. With the help of your classmates, research the term *umbra versa* and see what it has to do with the shadow in this problem.
30. The broadcast tower for radio station WSAZ (Home of "Algebra in the Morning with Carl and Jeff") has two enormous flashing red lights on it: one at the very top and one a few feet below the top. From a point 5000 feet away from the base of the tower on level ground the angle of elevation to the top light is 7.970° and to the second light is 7.125°. Find the distance between the lights to the nearest foot.

31. On page 294 we defined the angle of inclination (also known as the angle of elevation) and in this exercise we introduce a related angle - the angle of depression (also known as the angle of declination). The angle of depression of an object refers to the angle whose initial side is a horizontal line above the object and whose terminal side is the line-of-sight to the object below the horizontal. This is represented schematically below.



The angle of depression from the horizontal to the object is θ

(a) Show that if the horizontal is above and parallel to level ground then the angle of depression (from observer to object) and the angle of inclination (from object to observer) will be congruent because they are alternate interior angles.

(b) From a firetower 200 feet above level ground in the Sasquatch National Forest, a ranger spots a fire off in the distance. The angle of depression to the fire is 2.5°. How far away from the base of the tower is the fire?

(c) The ranger in part (b) sees a Sasquatch running directly from the fire towards the firetower. The ranger takes two sightings. At the first sighting, the angle of depression from the tower to the Sasquatch is 6°. The second sighting, taken just 10 seconds later, gives the the angle of depression as 6.5°. How far did the Saquatch travel in those 10 seconds? Round your answer to the nearest foot. How fast is it running in miles per hour? Round your answer to the nearest mile per hour. If the Sasquatch keeps up this pace, how long will it take for the Sasquatch to reach the firetower from his location at the second sighting? Round your answer to the nearest minute.

32. When I stand 30 feet away from a tree at home, the angle of elevation to the top of the tree is 50° and the angle of depression to the base of the tree is 10°. What is the height of the tree? Round your answer to the nearest foot.
33. From the observation deck of the lighthouse at Sasquatch Point 50 feet above the surface of Lake Ippizuti, a lifeguard spots a boat out on the lake sailing directly toward the lighthouse. The first sighting had an angle of depression of 8.2° and the second sighting had an angle of depression of 25.9°. How far had the boat traveled between the sightings?
34. A guy wire 1000 feet long is attached to the top of a tower. When pulled taut it makes a 43° angle with the ground. How tall is the tower? How far away from the base of the tower does the wire hit the ground?
35. A guy wire 1000 feet long is attached to the top of a tower. When pulled taut it touches level ground 360 feet from the base of the tower. What angle does the wire make with the ground? Express your answer using degree measure rounded to one decimal place.
36. At Cliffs of Insanity Point, The Great Sasquatch Canyon is 7117 feet deep. From that point, a fire is seen at a location known to be 10 miles away from the base of the sheer canyon wall. What angle of depression is made by the line of sight from the canyon edge to the fire? Express your answer using degree measure rounded to one decimal place.
37. Shelving is being built at the Utility Muffin Research Library which is to be 14 inches deep. An 18-inch rod will be attached to the wall and the underside of the shelf at its edge away from the wall, forming a right triangle under the shelf to support it. What angle, to the nearest degree, will the rod make with the wall?
38. A parasailor is being pulled by a boat on Lake Ippizuti. The cable is 300 feet long and the parasailor is 100 feet above the surface of the water. What is the angle of elevation from the boat to the parasailor? Express your answer using degree measure rounded to one decimal place.

39. A tag-and-release program to study the Sasquatch population of the eponymous Sasquatch National Park is begun. From a 200 foot tall tower, a ranger spots a Sasquatch lumbering through the wilderness directly towards the tower. Let θ denote the angle of depression from the top of the tower to a point on the ground. If the range of the rifle with a tranquilizer dart is 300 feet, find the smallest value of θ for which the corresponding point on the ground is in range of the rifle. Round your answer to the nearest hundreth of a degree.
40. The rule of thumb for safe ladder use states that the length of the ladder should be at least four times as long as the distance from the base of the ladder to the wall. Assuming the ladder is resting against a wall which is 'plumb' (that is, makes a 90° angle with the ground), determine the acute angle the ladder makes with the ground, rounded to the nearest tenth of a degree.

As you may have already noticed in working through the exercises, since the six trigonometric ratios are all defined in terms of the three sides of a right triangle, there are several relationships between them. In Exercises 41. - 49., use the diagram on page 291 along with Definitions B.2.1 and B.2.2 to show the following relationships hold for all acute angles.[12]

41. $\tan(\theta) = \dfrac{\sin(\theta)}{\cos(\theta)}$
42. $\csc(\theta) = \dfrac{1}{\sin(\theta)}$
43. $\sec(\theta) = \dfrac{1}{\cos(\theta)}$

For Exercises 44. - 46., it may be helpful to recall that $90^\circ - \theta$ is the measure of the 'other' acute angle in the right triangle besides θ.

44. $\cos(\theta) = \sin\left(90^\circ - \theta\right)$
45. $\csc(\theta) = \sec\left(90^\circ - \theta\right)$
46. $\cot(\theta) = \tan\left(90^\circ - \theta\right)$

For Exercises 47. - 49., it may be helpful to remember that $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$:

47. $(\cos(\theta))^2 + (\sin(\theta))^2 = 1$
48. $1 + (\tan(\theta))^2 = (\sec(\theta))^2$
49. $1 + (\cot(\theta))^2 = (\csc(\theta))^2$

[12] These are called trigonometric *identities* and will be studied in greater detail in Section **??**.

B.2.2 Answers

1. $\theta = 30^\circ$, $a = 3\sqrt{3}$, $c = \sqrt{108} = 6\sqrt{3}$
2. $\alpha = 56^\circ$, $b = 12\tan(34^\circ) = 8.094$, $c = 12\sec(34^\circ) = \dfrac{12}{\cos(34^\circ)} \approx 14.475$
3. $\theta = 43^\circ$, $a = 6\cot(47^\circ) = \dfrac{6}{\tan(47^\circ)} \approx 5.595$, $c = 6\csc(47^\circ) = \dfrac{6}{\sin(47^\circ)} \approx 8.204$
4. $\beta = 40^\circ$, $b = 2.5\tan(50^\circ) \approx 2.979$, $c = 2.5\sec(50^\circ) = \dfrac{2.5}{\cos(50^\circ)} \approx 3.889$
5. The side adjacent to θ has length $4\sqrt{3} \approx 6.928$
6. The side opposite θ has length $10\sin(15^\circ) \approx 2.588$
7. The side opposite θ is $2\tan(87^\circ) \approx 38.162$
8. The hypoteneuse has length $14\csc(38.2^\circ) = \dfrac{14}{\sin(38.2^\circ)} \approx 22.639$
9. The side adjacent to θ has length $3.98\cos(2.05^\circ) \approx 3.977$
10. The side opposite θ has length $31\tan(42^\circ) \approx 27.912$
11. 36.87° and 53.13°
12. 22.62° and 67.38°
13. 32.52° and 57.48°
14. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{3}{5}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{4}{5}, \tan(\theta) = \frac{3}{4}, \csc(\theta) = \frac{5}{3}, \sec(\theta) = \frac{5}{4}, \cot(\theta) = \frac{4}{3}$, $\theta \approx 36.87^\circ$
15. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{12}{13}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{5}{13}, \tan(\theta) = \frac{12}{5}, \csc(\theta) = \frac{13}{12}, \sec(\theta) = \frac{13}{5}, \cot(\theta) = \frac{5}{12}$, $\theta \approx 67.38^\circ$
16. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{24}{25}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{7}{25}, \tan(\theta) = \frac{24}{7}, \csc(\theta) = \frac{25}{24}, \sec(\theta) = \frac{25}{7}, \cot(\theta) = \frac{7}{24}$, $\theta \approx 73.74^\circ$
17. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{4\sqrt{3}}{7}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{1}{7}, \tan(\theta) = 4\sqrt{3}, \csc(\theta) = \frac{7\sqrt{3}}{12}, \sec(\theta) = 7, \cot(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{12}$, $\theta \approx 81.79^\circ$

18. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{91}}{10}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{3}{10}, \tan(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{91}}{3}, \csc(\theta) = \frac{10\sqrt{91}}{91}, \sec(\theta) = \frac{10}{3}, \cot(\theta) = \frac{3\sqrt{91}}{91}$, $\theta \approx 72.54^\circ$

19. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{530}}{530}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{23\sqrt{530}}{530}, \tan(\theta) = \frac{1}{23}, \csc(\theta) = \sqrt{530}, \sec(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{530}}{23}, \cot(\theta) = 23$, $\theta \approx 2.49^\circ$

20. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}, \tan(\theta) = 2, \csc(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}, \sec(\theta) = \sqrt{5}, \cot(\theta) = \frac{1}{2}$, $\theta \approx 63.43^\circ$

21. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{1}{4}, \tan(\theta) = \sqrt{15}, \csc(\theta) = \frac{4\sqrt{15}}{15}, \sec(\theta) = 4, \cot(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{15}}{15}$, $\theta \approx 75.52^\circ$

22. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{6}}{6}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{30}}{6}, \tan(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}, \csc(\theta) = \sqrt{6}, \sec(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{30}}{5}, \cot(\theta) = \sqrt{5}$, $\theta \approx 24.09^\circ$

23. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{1}{3}, \tan(\theta) = 2\sqrt{2}, \csc(\theta) = \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{4}, \sec(\theta) = 3, \cot(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$, $\theta \approx 70.53^\circ$

24. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}, \tan(\theta) = \frac{1}{2}, \csc(\theta) = \sqrt{5}, \sec(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}, \cot(\theta) = 2$, $\theta \approx 26.57^\circ$

25. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{1}{5}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}, \tan(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{6}}{12}, \csc(\theta) = 5, \sec(\theta) = \frac{5\sqrt{6}}{12}, \cot(\theta) = 2\sqrt{6}$, $\theta \approx 11.54^\circ$

26. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{110}}{11}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{11}}{11}, \tan(\theta) = \sqrt{10}, \csc(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{110}}{10}, \sec(\theta) = \sqrt{11}, \cot(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}$, $\theta \approx 72.45^\circ$

27. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{95}}{10}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{10}, \tan(\theta) = \sqrt{19}, \csc(\theta) = \frac{2\sqrt{95}}{19}, \sec(\theta) = 2\sqrt{5}, \cot(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{19}}{19}$, $\theta \approx 77.08^\circ$

28. $\sin(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{21}}{5}, \cos(\theta) = \frac{2}{5}, \tan(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{21}}{2}, \csc(\theta) = \frac{5\sqrt{21}}{21}, \sec(\theta) = \frac{5}{2}, \cot(\theta) = \frac{2\sqrt{21}}{21}$, $\theta \approx 66.42^\circ$

29. The tree is about 47 feet tall.

30. The lights are about 75 feet apart.

31. (b) The fire is about 4581 feet from the base of the tower.

(c) The Sasquatch ran $200\cot(6^\circ) - 200\cot(6.5^\circ) \approx 147$ feet in those 10 seconds. This translates to ≈ 10 miles per hour. At the scene of the second sighting, the Sasquatch was ≈ 1755 feet from the tower, which means, if it keeps up this pace, it will reach the tower in about 2 minutes.

32. The tree is about 41 feet tall.

33. The boat has traveled about 244 feet.

34. The tower is about 682 feet tall. The guy wire hits the ground about 731 feet away from the base of the tower.

35. 68.9°

36. 7.7°

37. 51°

38. 19.5°

39. 41.81°

40. 75.5°.